

CDS INSIDE

C O L L E C T I O N

# JAPANESE

The Complete Course for Beginners

Junko Ogawa and  
Fumitsugu Enokida



MASTER THE EVERYDAY  
LANGUAGE



UP-TO-DATE CULTURAL  
SITUATIONS



ACCESSIBLE AND  
THOROUGH

ROUTLEDGE



## CD ONE

### Introduction

1. Introduction
2. Pronunciation – vowels
3. Pronunciation – K, G, S, Sh and Zj
4. Pronunciation – T, Ch, Ts, D, Ji and Z
5. Pronunciation – N, H, F
6. Pronunciation – B, P, M, Y
7. Pronunciation – R, W, N
8. Pronunciation – combined sounds
9. Pronunciation – the double consonant character
10. Pronunciation – long vowel sounds
11. Pronunciation – devoiced sounds
12. Pronunciation – syllable N
13. Pronunciation – high-low accent

### Unit 1

14. Dialogue 1
15. Dialogue 2
16. Dialogue 3
17. Exercise 6
18. Exercise 8

### Unit 2

19. Dialogue 1
20. Exercise 1
21. Exercise 3
22. Dialogue 2
23. Exercise 5
24. Dialogue 3
25. Exercise 8

### Unit 3

26. Dialogue 1
27. Exercise 3
28. Dialogue 2
29. Exercise 5
30. Dialogue 3
31. Exercise 7

### Unit 4

32. Dialogue 1
33. Dialogue 2
34. Exercise 4
35. Dialogue 3
36. Exercise 8

### Unit 5

37. Dialogue 1
38. Dialogue 2
39. Dialogue 3
40. Exercise 7
41. Exercise 8

### Unit 6

42. Dialogue 1
43. Exercise 3
44. Dialogue 2
45. Exercise 5
46. Dialogue 3

**Colloquial**

# Japanese

*Colloquial Japanese* provides a step-by-step course in Japanese as it is written and spoken today. This new edition has been completely rewritten by experienced teachers; it combines a user-friendly approach with a thorough treatment of the language, equipping learners with the essential skills needed to communicate confidently and effectively in Japanese in a broad range of situations. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

Key features include:

- progressive coverage of speaking, listening, reading and writing skills
- jargon-free explanations of grammar, with key structures presented through user-friendly diagrams
- coverage of the different writing systems of Japanese: hiragana, katakana and kanji
- an extensive range of focused and stimulating exercises
- realistic and entertaining dialogues covering a broad variety of scenarios
- useful vocabulary lists throughout the text
- additional resources available at the back of the book, including a full answer key, a grammar summary, a verb/adjective list with conjugation aid, bilingual glossaries and English translations of dialogues.

Balanced, comprehensive and rewarding, *Colloquial Japanese* will be an indispensable resource both for independent learners and for students taking courses in Japanese.

Supplementary exercise sheets for hiragana, katakana and kanji and two additional units are available for free download at [www.routledge.com/9780415593304/](http://www.routledge.com/9780415593304/). The units cover more advanced features of Japanese and incorporate a wide assortment of supporting exercises.

Accompanying audio material is available to purchase separately on two CDs or in MP3 format, or comes included in the great value *Colloquial Japanese* pack. Recorded by native speakers, the audio material complements the book and will help enhance learners' listening and speaking skills.

By the end of this course, you will be at Level B1 of the Common European Framework for Languages and at the Intermediate-Mid level on the ACTFL proficiency scales.

## THE COLLOQUIAL SERIES

Series Adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Afrikaans	Greek	Romanian
Albanian	Gujarati	Russian
Amharic	Hebrew	Scottish Gaelic
Arabic (Levantine)	Hindi	Serbian
Arabic of Egypt	Hungarian	Slovak
Arabic of the Gulf	Icelandic	Slovene
Basque	Indonesian	Somali
Bengali	Irish	Spanish
Breton	Italian	Spanish of
Bulgarian	Japanese	Latin America
Cambodian	Kazakh	Swahili
Cantonese	Korean	Swedish
Catalan	Latvian	Tamil
Chinese (Mandarin)	Lithuanian	Thai
Croatian	Malay	Tibetan (forthcoming)
Czech	Mongolian	Turkish
Danish	Norwegian	Ukrainian
Dutch	Panjabi	Urdu
English	Persian	Vietnamese
Estonian	Polish	Welsh
Finnish	Portuguese	Yiddish
French	Portuguese of	Yoruba
German	Brazil	Zulu (forthcoming)

### COLLOQUIAL 2s series: *The Next Step in Language Learning*

Chinese	German	Russian
Dutch	Italian	Spanish
French	Portuguese of Brazil	Spanish of Latin America

# Colloquial Japanese

The Complete Course  
for Beginners

Junko Ogawa and Fumitsugu Enokida

Third edition published 2014  
by Routledge  
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

and by Routledge  
711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017

*Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business*

© 2014 Junko Ogawa and Fumitsugu Enokida

The right of Junko Ogawa and Fumitsugu Enokida to be identified as authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

*Trademark notice:* Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

First edition published by Routledge 1981  
Second edition published by Routledge 2003

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data*

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

*Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data*

Ogawa, Junko author

Colloquial Japanese : the complete course for beginners / Junko Ogawa and Fumitsugu Enokida. – New Edition.

audio disc – (The Colloquial Series)

Previous ed. : Colloquial Japanese, by H.D.B. Ckarke and Motoko Hamamura, 2003; 2nd ed. Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. Japanese language–Textbooks for foreign speakers–English. 2. Japanese language–Spoken Japanese. 3. Japanese language–Sound recordings for English speakers. 4. Japanese language–Self-instruction. I. Enokida, Fumitsugu author. II. Title.

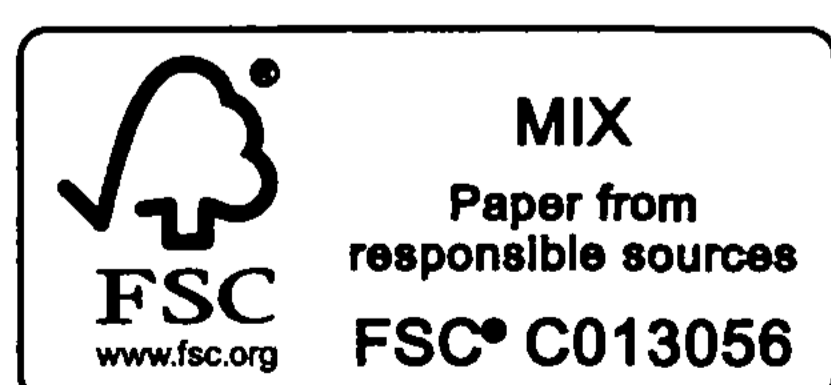
PL539.O323 2014

495.683'421–dc23

2013012026

ISBN: 978-0-415-59331-1 (pack)  
ISBN: 978-0-415-59330-4 (pbk)  
ISBN: 978-1-315-88977-1 (ebk)  
ISBN: 978-0-415-59332-8 (CDs)  
ISBN: 978-0-415-59333-5 (MP3s)

Typeset in Avant Garde and Helvetica  
by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong



Printed and bound in Great Britain by  
TJ International Ltd, Padstow, Cornwall

# Contents

Introduction xi

**Japanese scripts and pronunciation 1**

**1 Watashi wa Nihon-jin desu 9**

I am Japanese

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- how to introduce yourself (name, nationality, occupation)
- Basic Japanese structure: **X wa Y desu**
- Japanese names and **-san** (Mr, Mrs, Ms, Miss)
- asking and answering yes/no questions
- numbers up to 10
- giving and asking for telephone numbers
- hiragana of Unit 1

あいうえお かきくけこ がぎぐげご

**2 Tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka 22**

When is your birthday?

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- family terms
- numbers 11–99
- how to talk about someone's age
- time-related expressions (date and month, day of the week, etc.)
- how to give and ask for months and dates
- hiragana of Unit 2

さしすせそ たちつてと ざじずぜぞ だちづでど

### 3 Otearai wa doko desu ka 34

Where is the toilet?

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- indicating places: **koko**, **soko**, **asoko**
- asking and answering about places: **doko**
- o'clock and minutes: **-ji** and **-pun/-fun**
- telling and asking the time: **nan-ji**
- from and till: **kara** and **made**
- hiragana of Unit 3

なにぬねの はひふへほ ばびぶべぼ ぱぴぷぺぽ

### 4 Ano kamera wa ikura desu ka 44

How much is that camera over there?

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- indicating things with the demonstrative words **kore** "this", **sore** "that" and **are** "that over there"
- asking questions with the interrogatives **dore** "which one?", **dare** "who?" and **dare no** "whose?"
- giving and asking a price, using **ikura** "how much?"
- numbers up to 1,000,000
- hiragana of Unit 4

まみむめも やゆよ らりるれろ わをん

### 5 Donna ongaku ga suki desu ka 55

What kind of music do you like?

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- two types of adjectives: **i**-adjectives and **na**-adjectives
- how to describe things/places/people using adjectives
- adverbs of degree: very/not really . . .
- how to connect sentences using **soshite**, **demo** and **ga**
- how to talk about one's likes and dislikes
- hiragana of Unit 5

きゃ きゅ きょ しゃ しゅ しょ ちゃ ちゅ ちょ  
にゃ にゅ によ ひゃ ひゅ ひょ みゃ みゅ みよ



## 6 **Watashi wa rainen Nihon e ikimasu** 68

I will go to Japan next year

### In this unit you will learn about:

- how to conjugate a verb (non-past and past)
- how to talk about where one goes, comes and returns to
- saying “to” (somewhere), “by” (method of transportation) and “with” (someone)
- terms for places, methods of transportation and time
- hiragana: double consonant sound and long vowel sound

## 7 **Watashi wa yoku sūpā de hiru-gohan o kaimasu** 80

I often buy lunch at the supermarket

### In this unit you will learn about:

- describing one’s daily activities (various verbs)
- describing when and where an action takes place
- saying “nothing”, “no one” and “nowhere”
- how to ask the meaning of an unknown word
- terms of frequency
- katakana of Unit 7

アイウエオ	カキクケコ	サシスセソ
ガギグゲゴ	ザジズゼゾ	

## 8 **Ōsaka ni yūmēna (o)shiro ga arimasu** 92

There is a famous castle in Osaka

### In this unit you will learn about:

- describing the existence of things and people using **arimasu** and **imasu**
- listing more than two nouns by using **ya** “and so on”
- counting objects or people: numerals (suffix counters)
- terms of location (on, below, in front of, behind, etc.)
- katakana of Unit 8

タチツテト	ナニヌネノ	ハヒフヘホ
ダヂヅデド	バビブベボ	パピプペポ

**9 Nichi-yōbi isscho ni ēga o mimasen ka** **104**  
 Won't you watch a film with me on Sunday?

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- talking about holidays and travel
- saying “Have you already...?” and “Not yet”
- how to express one's desire using [Verb-stem] + **tai**
- how to state the purpose of going to a certain place
- how to invite someone to do something
- katakana of Unit 9

マミムメモ ヤユヨ ラリルレロ ワヲン

**10 Dōshite atarashī pasokon ga hoshī desu ka** **116**  
 Why do you want to have a new PC?

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- how to express one's desire to possess an object
- giving and asking reasons
- talking about one's illness
- stating what one owns, using **X wa Y ga arimasu**
- expressing one's gratitude
- giving and receiving things
- katakana of Unit 10: combined sounds

**11 Shinjuku Gyoen wa hirokute kirēna kōen desu** **128**  
 Shinjuku Gyoen is a spacious and beautiful park

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- more adjectives
- how to connect sentences which contain i-adjectives, **na**-adjectives and nouns
- talking about the weather
- how to express a change of state, using adjective + **narimasu**
- how to change adjectives into adverbs
- kanji of Unit 11

一、二、三、四、五、六、七、  
 八、九、十、百、千、万、円

**12 Musuko-san wa se ga takai desu ne** 141

Your son is tall, isn't he?

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- how to describe one's physical features, using the **X wa Y ga** + adjective structure
- comparative and superlative expressions
- terms for body parts and colours
- kanji of Unit 12

人、山、川、女、子、口、上、下、大、小

**13 Koko ni suwatte mo ī desu ka** 152

May I sit down here?

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- verb grouping: Group 1, Group 2, Group 3
- how to make the **te**-form of a verb ([V-**te**]) from the **masu**-form ([V-**masu**])
- how to make a polite request using [V-**te**] + **kudasai**
- saying "how to . . ."
- how to ask, grant and deny permission
- kanji of Unit 13

日、月、火、水、木、土、今、友、少、分

**14 Kinō no yoru 8-ji goro ēga o mite imashita** 165

I was watching a film at around 8 p.m. yesterday

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- stating a sequence of actions, using [V-**te**] and [V-**te**] + **kara**
- describing an action in progress: [V-**te**] + **imasu**
- describing a present state: [V-**te**] + **imasu**
- describing habitual actions: [V-**te**] + **imasu**
- kanji of Unit 14

手、中、外、左、右、文、父、母、田、目

- 15 Pūru de oyoidari, toshokan de hon o karitari shimasu 177**  
I do various things such as swimming in the pool and borrowing books from the library

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- vocabulary for clothes and accessories
- how to make the **ta**-form of a verb: [V-**ta**]
- how to link verb sentences using the [V-**ta**] + **ri** [V-**ta**] + **ri** . . . pattern
- saying “after . . .” using [V-**ta**] + **ato de**
- talking about one’s experiences in the past
- kanji of Unit 15

本、先、生、学、好、何、字、年、車、毎

- 16 Sukoshi dake Supein-go o hanasu koto ga dekimasu 189**  
I can speak a little bit of Spanish

**In this unit you will learn about:**

- talking about one’s hobbies and leisure activities
- how to make the dictionary form of a verb ([V-dic.])
- how to change a verb into a noun, using [V-dic.] + **koto**
- describing one’s ability or possibility: [V-dic.] + **koto ga dekimasu**
- kanji of Unit 16

姉、妹、兄、弟、男、前、後、金、週、曜

<b>Translations of dialogues</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>Grammar summary</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>Appendix</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>Key to exercises</b>	<b>239</b>
<b>Japanese–English glossary</b>	<b>258</b>
<b>English–Japanese glossary</b>	<b>272</b>
<b>Index of language points</b>	<b>281</b>

# Introduction

## About Japan and the Japanese language

Japan is a long country with a population of 127 million (in 2013). It consists of four major islands (Hokkaido, Honshu, Shikoku and Kyushu) but the total number of islands is more than 4,000, if smaller ones are included. The area of Japan is 377,950 square kilometres, which is about the same as that of Germany or Zimbabwe. Japan is divided into 47 prefectures including Tokyo, the capital. Japan has four seasons: spring (March–May), summer (June–August), autumn (September–November) and winter (December–February). Each season offers various beautiful scenery and attractions. For example, people enjoy **o-hanami** (cherry blossom viewing parties) in spring, fireworks and local festivals in summer, red leaves in autumn and winter sports in winter. As for language, English is taught as a compulsory foreign language at junior and high schools and bilingual signs can be seen in big cities. However, the primary language is still Japanese. Therefore, if you would like to appreciate Japan and its cultural heritage, it is best to learn Japanese.

Japanese has various dialects such as the Kansai dialect and the Tohoku dialect but the Tokyo dialect is recognized as standard and taught in Japanese language classes. According to a survey conducted by the Japan Foundation (2009), the number of Japanese language learners has continued to increase since 1979 and over 36.5 million people are learning Japanese worldwide. The motivation to learn Japanese varies from “I am interested in the Japanese language itself” to “I want to communicate with people in Japanese,” to “I am a big fan of Japanese anime/manga.” Whatever your reason for learning Japanese, knowledge of the language will give you a passport to access the rich Japanese culture and broaden your horizons!

# Colloquial Japanese

## Course content

This course is for anyone who wishes to acquire the ability to speak, understand, read and write basic Japanese for daily use. It consists of 16 units, covering a wide range of topics including introducing yourself, family, food, transportation, work, hobbies, etc. Each unit has two or three dialogues which introduce frequently used vocabulary and grammar points. You will notice the majority of the grammar points are explained not only explicitly but also visually with diagrams which indicate the key structure. This is to help you to grasp the structure at a glance. The grammar explanation is followed by a range of exercises (reading, listening and writing). If you study Japanese in class, we advise you to use the topics given for speaking practice with your classmates, as well.

The textbook uses transliterated Japanese (i.e. romanized Japanese) throughout the units so that you can read and understand Japanese from the beginning. At the same time, you will be gradually introduced to the scripts (hiragana, katakana and kanji) from Unit 1 and the use of Japanese scripts will increase as you study further to encourage you to decode them. We advise you to write the exercise answers in Japanese scripts even if the exercise itself uses transliteration. Writing Japanese scripts will help you to read and write them much more easily and quickly.

The transliteration of Japanese in this course follows the pronunciation, not the actual spelling. Although the majority of Japanese spelling matches its pronunciation, there are some cases where a discrepancy exists between them. See “Long vowel sounds” (pages 7 and 78) for further explanation.

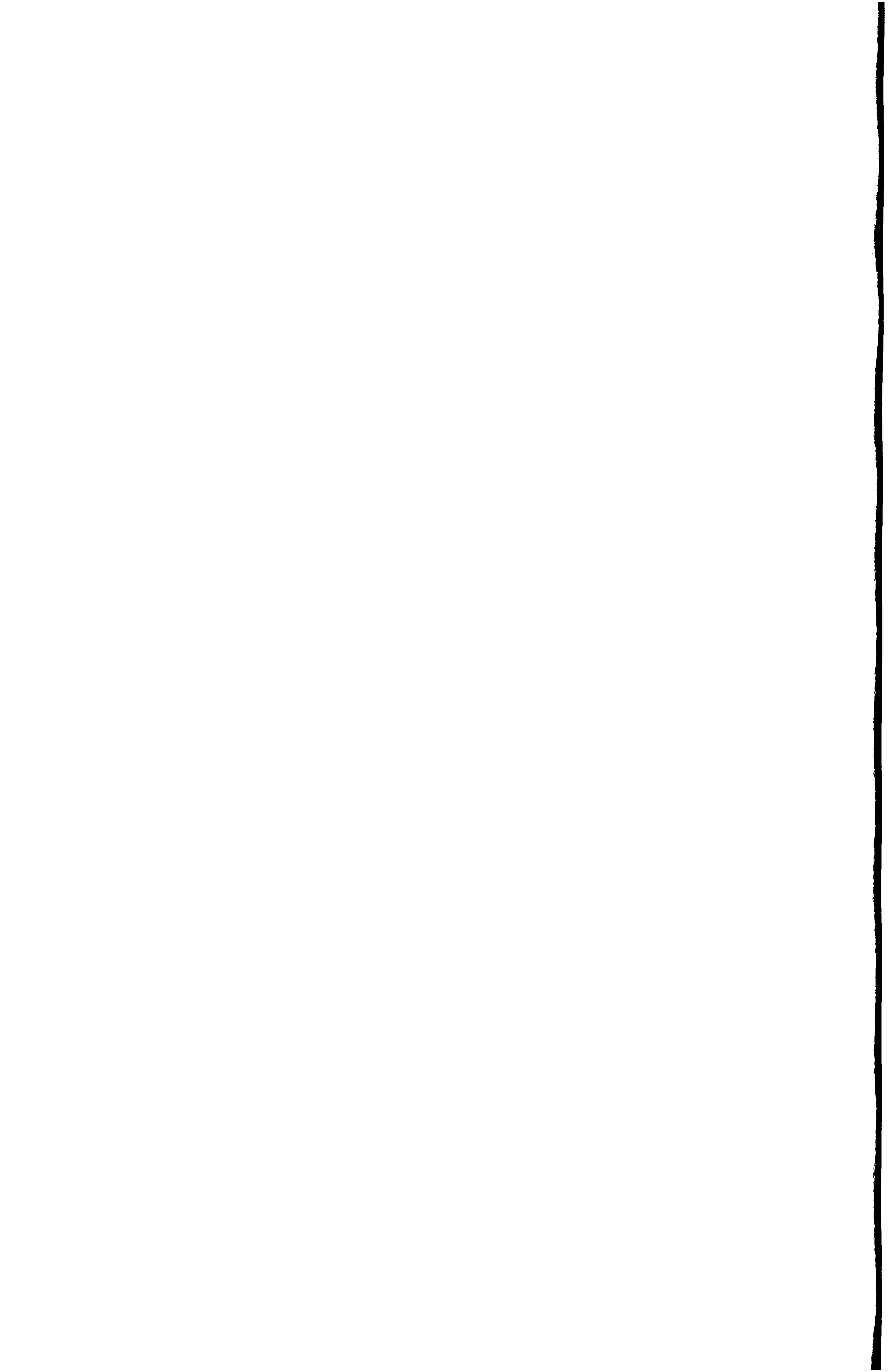
## Key features of the Japanese language

- Nouns in Japanese have no singular/plural distinction.
- Japanese predicates have two tenses: past and non-past. The future tense is indicated by the non-past plus a time-related expression such as “tomorrow”.

- Japanese predicates have either the affirmative or negative form.
- As for word order, a Japanese sentence always ends with a predicate such as a verb or adjective. Apart from that, the word order is flexible. For example, “I went to the supermarket yesterday” could be [I/yesterday/supermarket/went], [Yesterday/I/supermarket/went], or [I/supermarket/yesterday/went].
- Due to the flexibility of the word order, the function of each word in a sentence is marked by a particle (similar to an English preposition). Particles always come after the word to which they relate.
- Words which are obvious from the context or have already been mentioned are often omitted. For example, when you are asked what your occupation is, the answer could be [teacher/is] as well as [my occupation/teacher/is].
- Japanese has three types of script: **hiragana**, **katakana** and **kanji** (Japanese Chinese characters). The writing can be vertical (from top to bottom) as well as horizontal (from left to right).

## Two speech styles: polite and plain style

The Japanese language has two speech styles: the polite style and the plain style. The polite style is used in formal situations such as talking to a stranger or senior whereas the plain style is used in casual situations such as talking with a close friend. While both speech styles are important, this book introduces only the polite style. This is because using plain style speech in an appropriate situation is complicated and using it inappropriately could make you sound impolite and upset the listener. As a beginner in Japanese, it would be advisable to use the polite style in most situations. Once you become confident in elementary Japanese and make Japanese friends, you will gradually learn when you can use plain style speech. You can find more detailed information about the plain style of speech at [www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/](http://www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/).





# Japanese scripts and pronunciation

## Japanese scripts

Japanese has three types of script: **hiragana**, **katakana** and **kanji** (Japanese Chinese characters). Hiragana and katakana are phonetic symbols and each script carries one-syllable-sound, whereas kanji, which was imported to Japan from China in the fifth and sixth centuries, carries both sounds and meanings.

		<i>sound</i>	<i>meaning</i>
Hiragana	わ	<b>wa</b>	∅
Katakana	ワ	<b>wa</b>	∅
Kanji	私	<b>watashi/shi</b>	I/private

**Hiragana** and **katakana** have an identical set of 46 basic characters (see hiragana and katakana tables on pages 3–4). Hiragana is used for the grammatical element (such as a particle, the conjugated part of a verb or adjective), whereas katakana is used for words which originate from foreign words. All three types of script can be seen in one sentence as below:

私<sup>□</sup>は スカート<sup>〰</sup>を <sup>□</sup>買いたいです。

I want to buy a skirt.

□: hiragana    〰: katakana    □: kanji

Japanese also uses the alphabet as below:

私<sup>□</sup>は <sup>□</sup>日本<sup>□</sup>の<sup>□</sup>DVD<sup>□</sup>を <sup>□</sup>買いたいです。

I want to buy a Japanese DVD.

□: hiragana    □: alphabet    □: kanji

Kanji is explained in Unit 11.

## Pronunciation

The Japanese language has five vowel sounds: **a**, **i**, **u**, **e** and **o**. Japanese sounds are either a single vowel, a combination of a consonant and vowel, or of a consonant, [y] sound plus a vowel, with one exception, **n**, which does not take any vowel.

For example:

consonant + vowel:	<b>m + a = ma</b>	<b>p + o = po</b>
consonant + <b>y</b> + vowel:	<b>s + y + u = shu</b>	<b>m + y + u = myu</b>

Each sound has one syllable. Therefore, **a**, **ka** and **kya** take the same length of time to pronounce.



### 1. Basic syllables: vowel, consonant + vowel and n/m (CD 1; 2-7)

#### *Vowel*

<b>a</b> like <u>a</u> h	<b>akai</b> red	<b>aoi</b> blue
<b>i</b> like <u>i</u> nk	<b>ima</b> now	<b>ishi</b> stone
<b>u</b> like <u>u</u> (do not round your lips too much)	<b>uma</b> horse	<b>umi</b> ocean
<b>e</b> like <u>e</u> lephant	<b>e</b> picture	<b>ehon</b> picture book
<b>o</b> like <u>o</u> t	<b>oka</b> hill	<b>omoi</b> heavy

#### *Consonant + vowel*

<b>k</b> like <u>k</u> t	<b>ka ki ku ke ko</b>
<b>g</b> like <u>g</u> oal	<b>ga gi gu ge go</b>
<b>s</b> like <u>s</u> ea, <b>sh</b> like <u>sh</u> e	<b>sa shi su se so</b>
<b>z</b> like mag <u>z</u> ine, <b>j</b> like <u>j</u> uice	<b>za ji zu ze zo</b>
<b>t</b> like <u>t</u> able, <b>ch</b> like <u>ch</u> ease, <b>ts</b> like <u>ts</u> ats	<b>ta chi tsu te to</b>
<b>d</b> like <u>d</u> ark, <b>j</b> like <u>j</u> uice, <b>z</b> like mag <u>z</u> ine	<b>da ji zu de do</b>
<b>n</b> like <u>n</u> oodle	<b>na ni nu ne no</b>
<b>h</b> like <u>h</u> ut, <b>f</b> like blowing out a candle	<b>ha hi fu he ho</b>
<b>b</b> like <u>b</u> oy	<b>ba bi bu be bo</b>
<b>p</b> like <u>p</u> ink	<b>pa pi pu pe po</b>



<i>a-line</i>			<i>i-line</i>			<i>u-line</i>			<i>e-line</i>			<i>o-line</i>		
Roman letters	Hiragana	Katakana	Roman letters	Hiragana	Katakana	Roman letters	Hiragana	Katakana	Roman letters	Hiragana	Katakana	Roman letters	Hiragana	Katakana
<b>g</b>	<b>ga</b>	が ガ	<b>gi</b>	ぎ ギ		<b>gu</b>	ぐ グ		<b>ge</b>	げ ゲ		<b>go</b>	ご ゴ	
<b>z</b>	<b>za</b>	ざ ザ	<b>ji</b>	じ ジ		<b>zu</b>	ず ズ		<b>ze</b>	ぜ ゼ		<b>zo</b>	ぞ ゾ	
<b>d</b>	<b>da</b>	だ ダ	<b>ji</b>	ぢ チ		<b>zu</b>	づ ツ		<b>de</b>	で デ		<b>do</b>	ど ド	
<b>b</b>	<b>ba</b>	ば バ	<b>bi</b>	び ビ		<b>bu</b>	ぶ ブ		<b>be</b>	べ ベ		<b>bo</b>	ぼ ボ	
<b>p</b>	<b>pa</b>	ぱ パ	<b>pi</b>	ぴ ピ		<b>pu</b>	ぷ プ		<b>pe</b>	ぺ ペ		<b>po</b>	ぽ ポ	



## 2. Combined sounds: consonant + ya, yu, yo (CD 1; 8)

The semi-vowels **ya**, **yu** and **yo** can attach to the following consonants and create a one-syllable sound.

<b>k + y</b>	<b>kya</b> like <b>ki</b> and <b>ya</b> run together <b>kyu</b> like <u>cube</u> <b>kyo</b> like <u>Tokyo</u>	<b>g + y</b>	<b>gya</b> like <b>gi</b> and <b>ya</b> run together <b>gyu</b> like <b>gi</b> and <b>yu</b> run together <b>gyo</b> like <b>gi</b> and <b>yo</b> run together
<b>s + y</b>	<b>sha</b> like <u>shower</u> <b>shu</b> like <u>shoes</u> <b>sho</b> like <u>show</u>	<b>j + y</b>	<b>ja</b> like <u>Japan</u> <b>ju</b> like <u>Juliet</u> <b>jo</b> like <u>job</u>
<b>ch + y</b>	<b>cha</b> like <u>champion</u> <b>chu</b> like <u>chew</u> <b>cho</b> like <u>chop</u>	<b>n + y</b>	<b>nya</b> like <b>ni</b> and <b>ya</b> run together <b>nyu</b> like <u>knew</u> <b>nyo</b> like <b>ni</b> and <b>yo</b> run together
<b>h + y</b>	<b>hya</b> like <b>hi</b> and <b>ya</b> run together <b>hyu</b> like <b>hi</b> and <b>yu</b> run together <b>hyo</b> like <b>hi</b> and <b>yo</b> run together		

**b + y** **bya** like **bi** and **ya** run together  
**byu** like beautiful but shorter  
**byo** like **bi** and **yo** run together

**p + y** **pya** like **pi** and **ya** run together  
**pyu** like pupil but shorter  
**pyo** like champion

**m + y** **mya** like **mi** and **ya** run together  
**myu** like mew but shorter  
**myo** like **mi** and **yo** run together

**r + y** **rya** like **ri** and **ya** run together  
**ryu** like **ri** and **yu** run together  
**ryo** like **ri** and **yo** run together

	<i>consonant + ya</i>			<i>consonant + yu</i>			<i>consonant + yo</i>		
	<i>Roman letters</i>	<i>Hiragana</i>	<i>Katakana</i>	<i>Roman letters</i>	<i>Hiragana</i>	<i>Katakana</i>	<i>Roman letters</i>	<i>Hiragana</i>	<i>Katakana</i>
<b>k</b>	<b>kya</b>	きや	キヤ	<b>kyu</b>	きゅ	キュ	<b>kyo</b>	きよ	キョ
<b>sh</b>	<b>sha</b>	しや	シャ	<b>shu</b>	しゅ	シュ	<b>sho</b>	しよ	ショ
<b>ch</b>	<b>cha</b>	ちや	チャ	<b>chu</b>	ちゅ	チュ	<b>cho</b>	ちよ	チョ
<b>n</b>	<b>nya</b>	にや	ニヤ	<b>nyu</b>	にゅ	ニュ	<b>nyo</b>	によ	ニョ
<b>h</b>	<b>hya</b>	ひや	ヒヤ	<b>hyu</b>	ひゅ	ヒュ	<b>hyo</b>	ひよ	ヒョ
<b>m</b>	<b>mya</b>	みや	ミヤ	<b>myu</b>	みゅ	ミュ	<b>myo</b>	みよ	ミョ
<b>r</b>	<b>rya</b>	りや	リヤ	<b>ryu</b>	りゅ	リュ	<b>ryo</b>	りよ	リョ
<b>g</b>	<b>gya</b>	ぎや	ギヤ	<b>gyu</b>	ぎゅ	ギュ	<b>gyo</b>	ぎよ	ギョ
<b>j</b>	<b>ja</b>	じゃ	ジャ	<b>ju</b>	じゅ	ジュ	<b>jo</b>	じよ	ジョ
<b>b</b>	<b>bya</b>	びや	ビヤ	<b>byu</b>	びゅ	ビュ	<b>byo</b>	びよ	ビョ
<b>p</b>	<b>pya</b>	ぴや	ピヤ	<b>pyu</b>	ぴゅ	ピュ	<b>pyo</b>	ぴよ	ピョ

In addition to the above combined sounds, katakana has the following combined sounds.

<i>a-line</i>		<i>i-line</i>		<i>u-line</i>		<i>e-line</i>		<i>o-line</i>		
<i>Roman letters</i>		<i>Roman letters</i>		<i>Roman letters</i>		<i>Roman letters</i>		<i>Roman letters</i>		
<i>Katakana</i>		<i>Katakana</i>		<i>Katakana</i>		<i>Katakana</i>		<i>Katakana</i>		
<b>sh</b>						<b>she</b>	シェ			
<b>ch</b>						<b>che</b>	チェ			
<b>ts</b>	<b>tsa</b>	ツア				<b>tse</b>	ツエ	<b>tso</b>	ツオ	
<b>t</b>			<b>ti</b>	テイ	<b>tu</b>	トウ				
<b>f</b>	<b>fa</b>	ファ	<b>fi</b>	フィ			<b>fe</b>	フェ	<b>fo</b>	フォ
<b>v</b>	<b>va</b>	ヴァ	<b>vi</b>	ヴィ			<b>ve</b>	ヴェ	<b>vo</b>	ヴォ
<b>j</b>						<b>je</b>	ジェ			
<b>d</b>			<b>di</b>	ディ	<b>du</b>	ドウ				
<b>dy</b>					<b>dyu</b>	デュ				
<b>w</b>			<b>wi</b>	ウィ			<b>we</b>	ウェ	<b>wo</b>	ウォ



### 3. The double consonant character (CD 1; 9)

The double consonant character, 「っ」 or 「っ」, indicates that a pause exists between the two sounds.

かった bought	かた shoulder	きって stamp	きて please come
<b>ka t ta</b>	<b>ka ta</b>	<b>ki t te</b>	<b>ki te</b>
● ○ ●	● ●	● ○ ●	● ●

Roman letters **kk, ss, pp, tt, gg, etc.**

Hiragana **っ (1/4 size)\***

Katakana **ッ (1/4 size)\***

\* Note that when writing these sounds by hand, they should be one quarter of the usual size.

## 4. Long vowel sounds (Unit 6) (CD 1; 10)



A horizontal line on top of a vowel ( $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{i}$ ,  $\bar{u}$ ,  $\bar{e}$ ,  $\bar{o}$ ) means that the vowel is pronounced twice as long as the normal length.

	<i>a-line</i>	<i>i-line</i>	<i>u-line</i>	<i>e-line</i>	<i>o-line</i>
Roman letters	$\bar{a}$ (or aa)	$\bar{i}$ (or ii)	$\bar{u}$ (or uu)	$\bar{e}$ (or ee)	$\bar{o}$ (or oo)
Hiragana	ああ	いい	うう	ええ えい	おお おう
Katakana	アー	イー	ウー	エー	オー

<b>a</b>	<b>ob<u>a</u>san</b> middle-aged woman, aunt	$\bar{a}$	<b>ob<u>a</u>san</b> elderly woman, grandmother
<b>i</b>	<b>oj<u>i</u>san</b> middle-aged man, uncle	$\bar{i}$	<b>oj<u>i</u>san</b> elderly man, grandfather
<b>u</b>	<b>k<u>u</u>ki</b> stalk, stem	$\bar{u}$	<b>k<u>u</u>ki</b> air
<b>e</b>	<b>e</b> picture	$\bar{e}$	<b><math>\bar{e}</math></b> yes
<b>o</b>	<b>ko<u>i</u></b> <i>koi</i> carp	$\bar{o}$	<b>k<u>o</u>i</b> action

Note that although pronunciation of the Japanese language tends to follow its spelling, the following vowel sequence is pronounced differently (the first sound is pronounced longer and the second vowel disappears):

	<i>Spelling</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
えい	<b>ei</b> → $\bar{e}$	<b>sense<u>i</u></b> teacher [sens $\bar{e}$ ]
おう	<b>ou</b> → $\bar{o}$	<b>arigato<u>u</u></b> thank you [arigato $\bar{o}$ ]

Also note that when the same vowels appear in sequence, a dash (—) is used for the second vowel in katakana words (e.g. ステーキ [su te e ki]), whereas this is not the case in hiragana words (e.g. いいえ [i i e]).

## 5. Devoicing the “u” and “i” sounds (CD 1; 11)



When the sounds “u” and “i” appear (1) between unvoiced sounds (k, t, s, ts, ch, h, f, p) or (2) at the end of a word and after an unvoiced sound, they are devoiced (whispered). For example, “u” in **tsuki** “moon” and “i” in **eki** “station” are devoiced.

**sushi** sushi      **tsuke** desk      **kissaten** café



## 6. The syllable “n” sound (CD 1; 12)

“N” is a syllable which represents nasal sounds. It can be pronounced differently as [m], [n], or [ng] depending on what sound follows it. In the examples below, “n” in **manga** and **ongaku** is [ng], whereas “n” in **tempura** is [m] and “n” in **onna** and **densha** is [n].



**te n pu ra**

tempura



**de n sha**

train



**ma n ga**

manga



**o n ga ku**

music

When “n” is followed by a vowel but used as a syllable, not a consonant, the symbol **n'** is used.



**ki n' e n**

non-smoking



**ki ne n**

commemoration



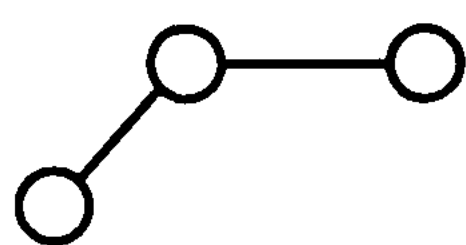
## 7. Accent pattern: high-low (CD 1; 13)

Japanese is a language with “pitch accent” (high and low). The first and second syllables always have different pitch as below:



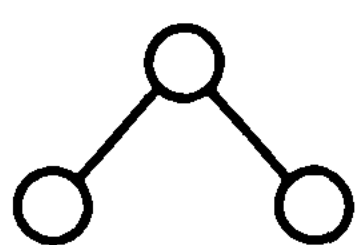
**ho n**

book



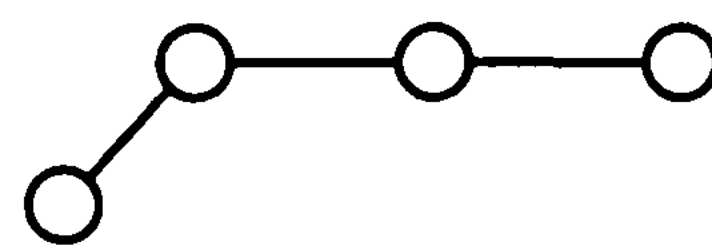
**wa ta shi**

I



**Ni ho n**

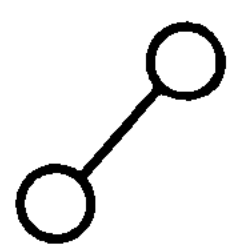
Japan



**Ni ho n go**

Japanese language

Some words have the same pronunciation but a different high-low accent.



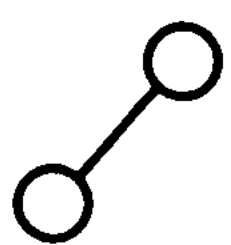
**ame**

candy



**ame**

rain



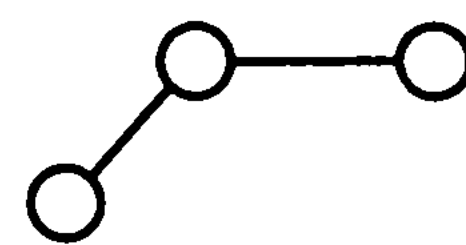
**hashi**

bridge



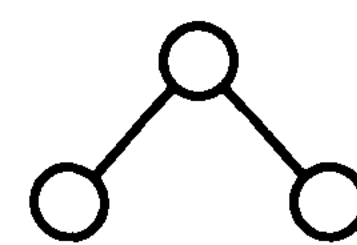
**hashi**

chopsticks



**shiken**

personal view



**shiken**

exam



# Unit One

## Watashi wa Nihon-jin desu

I am Japanese

In this unit you will learn about:

- how to introduce yourself (name, nationality, occupation)
- Basic Japanese structure: **X wa Y desu**
- Japanese names and **-san** (Mr, Mrs, Ms, Miss)
- asking and answering yes/no questions
- numbers up to 10
- giving and asking for telephone numbers
- hiragana of Unit 1

あいうえお かきくけこ がぎぐげご



### Dialogue 1



How do you do? I am Honda (CD 1; 14)



Miss Honda is introducing herself.

---

HONDA      Hajimemashite.  
              Jikoshōkai shimasu.  
              Watashi wa Honda desu.  
              (Watashi wa) Nihon-jin desu.  
              (Watashi wa) Daigakusē desu.  
              Dōzo yoroshiku.

MISS HONDA *How do you do?*  
*(I will) introduce (myself).*  
*I am Honda.*  
*(I) am Japanese.*  
*(I) am a university student.*  
*Nice to meet you.*

# A CB

## Vocabulary

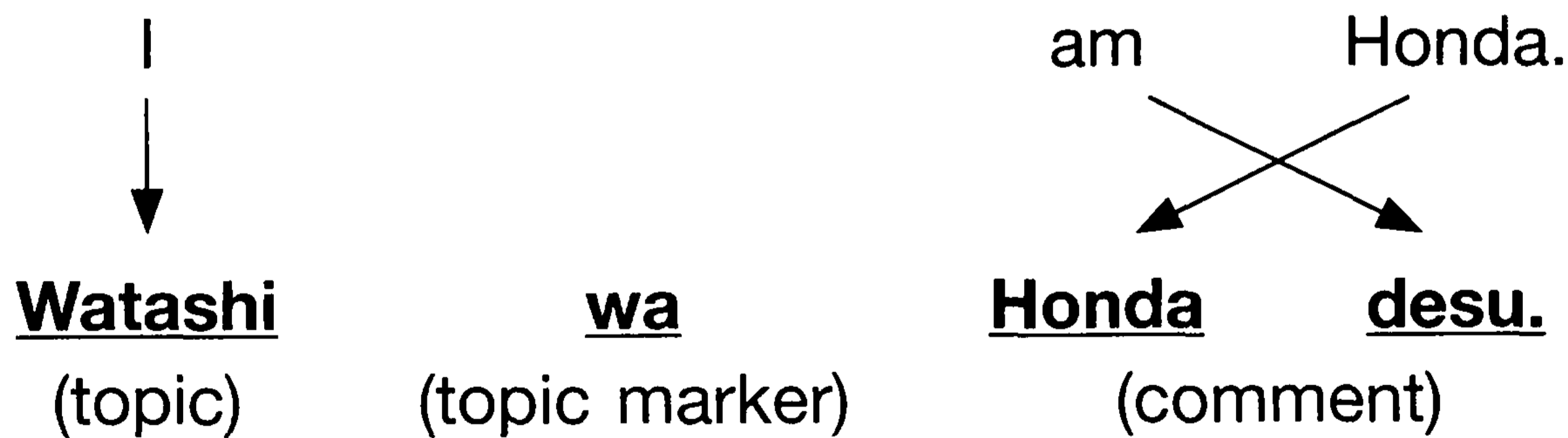
<b>hajimemashite</b>	how do you do?
<b>jikoshōkai shimasu</b>	introduce (oneself)
<b>watashi</b>	I
<b>wa</b> (particle)	[topic marker]
<b>desu</b>	<b>desu</b> can be “am”, “are” or “is”
<b>Nihon-jin</b>	Japanese (nationality)
<b>daigakusē</b>	university student
<b>dōzo yoroshiku</b>	pleased to meet you.
<b>ohayō (gozaimasu)</b>	good morning
<b>konnichiwa</b>	good afternoon
<b>konbanwa</b>	good evening



## Language points

### Basic Japanese structure: X wa Y desu

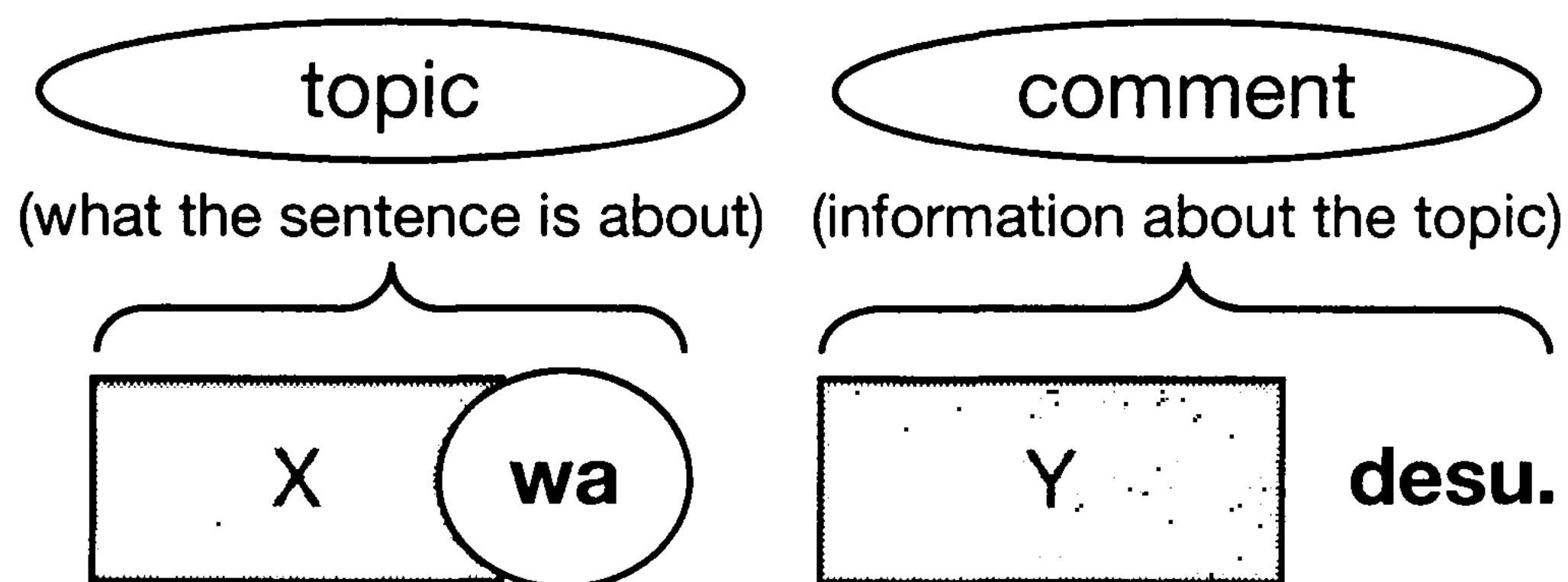
One of the basic Japanese structures is “**X wa Y desu**”. This is equivalent to the English “X is Y”. The word order is different between English and Japanese, as you can see below:



The topic marker **wa** is the indicator of what the sentence is talking about (X = topic). In the above case, the sentence is talking about

**watashi** “I”. Then, the information about the topic (Y = comment) follows in the comment section, in the above case, **Honda desu** “am Honda”.

“X” and “Y” in the **X wa Y desu** structure can take various nouns, such as:



- Watashi wa Honda desu.** I am Honda.
- Watashi wa Nihon-jin desu.** I am Japanese.
- Anata wa kaishain desu.** You are an office worker.

The negative form of **desu** is **dewa arimasen**. Therefore, “I am not Honda” is:

- Watashi wa Honda dewa arimasen.** I am not Honda.

The past affirmative and past negative forms of **desu** are **deshita** and **dewa arimasendeshita** respectively.

## Omitting the topic X wa

Once the topic is introduced and shared by the speaker and the listener, it is often omitted in subsequent sentences. In the case of Miss Honda’s introduction of herself, she used **watashi wa** the first time but after that, left it out for the second and third sentences. This is because the speaker and listener can assume that both parties know what they are talking about.

## Nationality and occupation

Nationality and language (country name + **jin/go**)

To say your nationality, you add **-jin** “people” after the country name. Below is a list of country names. Read them out and you will find how similar many sound to their English equivalents!

*Country names*

<b>Nihon</b>	Japan	<b>Kanada</b>	Canada
<b>Airurando</b>	Ireland	<b>Kankoku</b>	South Korea
<b>Amerika</b>	USA	<b>Marēshia</b>	Malaysia
<b>Burajiru</b>	Brazil	<b>Mekishiko</b>	Mexico
<b>Chūgoku</b>	China	<b>Nyūjīrando</b>	New Zealand
<b>Doitsu</b>	Germany	<b>Oranda</b>	The Netherlands
<b>Furansu</b>	France	<b>Ōsutoraria</b>	Australia
<b>Girisha</b>	Greece	<b>Porutogaru</b>	Portugal
<b>Honkon</b>	Hong Kong	<b>Roshia</b>	Russia
<b>Igirisu</b>	UK	<b>Suisu</b>	Switzerland
<b>Indo</b>	India	<b>Supein</b>	Spain
<b>Itaria</b>	Italia	<b>Toruko</b>	Turkey

Examples:

<b>Nihon-jin</b>	Japanese	<b>Igirisu-jin</b>	British
<b>Chūgoku-jin</b>	Chinese	<b>Amerika-jin</b>	American

**Watashi wa Kanada-jin desu.** I am Canadian.

A country name followed by **-go** means its language.

Examples:

<b>Nihon-go</b>	Japanese language	<b>Chūgoku-go</b>	Chinese language
<b>Furansu-go</b>	French	<b>Supein-go</b>	Spanish

Note: “English” is **Ēgo**, not “**Igirisu-go**” or “**Amerika-go**”.

## Occupation

Here are some occupation-related words:

<b>gakusē</b>	student	<b>ginkōin</b>	bank clerk
<b>kyōshi</b>	teacher	<b>shufu</b>	housewife
<b>kaishain</b>	office worker	<b>enjinia</b>	engineer
<b>isha</b>	doctor	<b>kankōkyaku</b>	tourist

**Watashi wa gakusē desu.** I am a student.

**Watashi wa kōkōsē desu.** I am a high school student.

<b>shōgakusē</b>	primary student	<b>chūgakusē</b>	secondary/junior high student
<b>kōkōsē</b>	high school student	<b>daigakusē</b>	university student

## “○” to make nouns sound politer

Some nouns take “o” in front of them to sound politer.

<b>(o)kuni</b>	country	<b>(o)namae</b>	name
<b>(o)sushi</b>	sushi	<b>(o)mizu</b>	water
<b>(o)sake</b>	alcohol	<b>(o)hashi</b>	chopsticks

Note that when you talk about your country or name, you cannot use **watashi no okuni** or **watashi no onamae** but you should say **watashi no kuni** and **watashi no namae**. (See page 15)

## Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

*Example* I am Japanese. *Watashi wa Nihon-jin desu.*

- I am British. *Watashi wa*
- I am a student.
- I am an office worker.
- I am not Japanese. I am Chinese.

## Exercise 2

Write your self-introduction and say it aloud (try it with your classmates if you have any).

*Example* *Hajimemashite.* (How do you do?)

- Watashi wa 1. \_\_\_\_\_ desu. (your name)  
 Watashi wa 2. \_\_\_\_\_ **-jin** desu. (your nationality)  
 Watashi wa 3. \_\_\_\_\_ desu. (your occupation)  
 Dōzo 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (Pleased to meet you.)





## Dialogue 2



What is your occupation? (CD 1; 15)

Miss Taylor has recently moved to Japan. To improve her Japanese, she has found a language exchange partner. This is her first meeting with her partner.

---

YAMADA	Hajimemashite. Watashi wa Yamada desu. Anata no (o)namae wa nan desu ka.
TEIRĀ	Hajimemashite. Watashi wa Teirā desu.
YAMADA	Teirā-san wa nani-jin desu ka.
TEIRĀ	Watashi wa Kanada-jin desu.
YAMADA	(Teirā-san no) (o)shigoto wa nan desu ka.
TEIRĀ	Watashi wa ginkōin desu.
<hr/>	
MR YAMADA	<i>How do you do? I am Yamada. What is your name?</i>
MISS TAYLOR	<i>How do you do too? I am Taylor.</i>
MR YAMADA	<i>Miss Taylor, what is your nationality?</i>
MISS TAYLOR	<i>I am Canadian.</i>
MR YAMADA	<i>(Miss Taylor,) what is your occupation?</i>
MISS TAYLOR	<i>I am a bank clerk.</i>

---



## Vocabulary

<b>anata</b>	you
<b>(o)namae</b>	name (“o” increases the level of politeness)
<b>nan/nani</b>	what?
<b>-jin</b>	nationality (e.g. -ish -ese, -ian, etc.) person from . . .
<b>ka (particle)</b>	[question marker]
<b>nani-jin</b>	what nationality?
<b>(o)shigoto</b>	work, job, occupation (“o” increases the level of politeness)

## Language points



### Possessive marker *no* (of)

The marker **no** is equivalent to the English “of” or “s” in “Mike’s” and indicates the possessive relationship between two nouns as shown below:

**Watashi *no* namae** my name

**Anata *no* (o)namae** your name

**Watashi *no* shigoto** my occupation

**Anata *no* (o)shigoto** your occupation

**Anata *no* (o)shigoto wa nan desu ka.**

What is your occupation?

### Japanese names and titles: **-san** and **-sensē**

A Japanese name has the surname first, followed by the first name. In the example of “Yamada Takeshi”, “Yamada” is his surname and “Takeshi” is his first name. When you speak to this person, you have to add **san** after his name. This **san** is equivalent to English titles such as “Mr”, “Mrs”, “Ms” and “Miss” and shows your politeness. You can attach **san** after either the surname or first name, or both of them as shown below:

surname + **san**

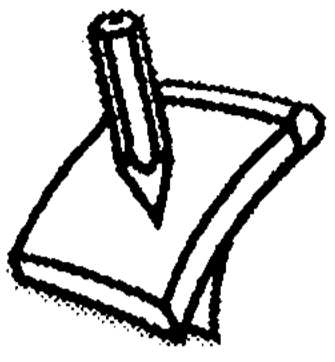
**Yamada-san**

surname + first name + **san**

**Yamada Takeshi-san**

Note that you cannot use **san** after your own name and the names of your family members.

Another commonly used title is **sensē**. Its original meaning is “teacher” but it is used not only for a teacher but also for a doctor, lawyer, politician, etc. The word **sensē** can be used in the same way as **san** (e.g. **Yamada sensē**) but it can be used alone (e.g. **Sensē, ohayō gozaimasu.**)



### Exercise 3

Translate the following English words into Japanese.

- |                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 My name                | 2 Your occupation   |
| 3 Mr Sasaki's occupation | 4 My teacher's name |



## Language point

### Asking and answering questions

#### Yes/no questions

Unlike English, the Japanese sentence does not change its word order when it becomes interrogative. To change “Mr Yamada is a bank clerk” to “Is Mr Yamada/Are you a bank clerk?”, you simply add the verbal question marker **ka** at the end of the sentence as below.

- a. **Yamada-san wa ginkōin desu.**  
Mr Yamada is a bank clerk.
- b. **Yamada-san wa ginkōin desu ka.**  
Mr Yamada, are you a bank clerk? / Is Mr Yamada a bank clerk?

How you answer question b is as follows:

- b1. **Hai, sō desu.**  
Yes, that is so.
- b2. **Hai, ginkōin desu.**  
Yes, (I) am a bank clerk. / Yes, (he) is a bank clerk.
- b3. **Īe, ginkōin dewa arimasen.**  
No, (I) am not a bank clerk. / No, (he) is not a bank clerk.

It is common in Japan to address the person to whom you are talking by his or her name (e.g. **Yamada-san**) instead of using **anata** “you”, once you know their name. Therefore, sentence b can have two meanings, depending on whether the speaker is asking the question directly to Mr Yamada or not.

#### Interrogative questions, using “what?”

The Japanese equivalent to the English “what?” has two forms: **nan** and **nani**. Which you should use depends on what sound comes after.



**nan:** nan-ban what number?, nan desu ka what is?, nan-sai how old?, etc.

**nani:** nani-jin what nationality?, nani o shimasu ka do what?, etc.

Similar to the yes/no question, the interrogative question does not change its word order but you use the interrogative (e.g. **nani**, **nan**) in the position of the missing information and add **ka** as shown below:

a. **Yamada-san no (o)shigoto wa ginkōin desu.**

Mr Yamada's occupation is bank clerk.

b. **Yamada-san no (o)shigoto wa nan desu ka.**

Mr Yamada, what is your occupation? / What is Mr Yamada's occupation?

c. **Yamada-san wa Nihon-jin desu.**

Mr Yamada is Japanese.

d. **Yamada-san wa nani-jin desu ka.**

Mr Yamada, what is your nationality? / What is Mr Yamada's nationality?

To answer the above questions, you give the answer without either yes or no.

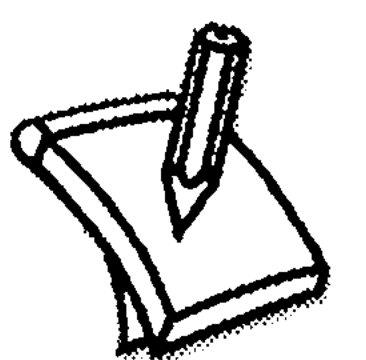
b1. **Ginkōin desu.** I am/Mr Yamada is a bank clerk.

d1. **Nihon-jin desu.** I am/Mr Yamada is Japanese.

## Exercise 4

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

- 1 Are you an office worker, Mrs Yamada?
- 2 What is Mr Sasaki's occupation?
- 3 What is your name?
- 4 Is your teacher Japanese, Miss Taylor?



## Exercise 5

Read out the following questions and then write your own answer in a full sentence.

- 1 Anata no (o)namae wa nan desu ka.
- 2 Anata wa nani-jin desu ka.
- 3 Anata no (o)shigoto wa nan desu ka.



**Dialogue 3**

My telephone number is 093-542-3981 **(CD 1; 16)**

Miss Sato and Mr White are talking.

---

SATŌ	Howaito-san. Konnichiwa. Genki desu ka.
HOWAITO	Hai, genki desu. Satō-san wa?
SATŌ	Hai, genki desu. Howaito-san no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.
HOWAITO	Watashi no denwa-bangō wa 093-542-3981 desu.
SATŌ	093-542-3982 desu ka.
HOWAITO	Īe, 3982 dewa arimasen. 3981 desu.
<hr/>	
MISS SATO	<i>Mr White. Hello. How are you?</i>
MR WHITE	<i>Yes, I am fine. What about you, Miss Sato?</i>
MISS SATO	<i>Yes, I am fine. What is your telephone number, Mr White?</i>
MR WHITE	<i>My telephone number is 093-542-3981.</i>
MISS SATO	<i>Is (it) 093-542-3982?</i>
MR WHITE	<i>No, (it) is not 3982. (It) is 3981.</i>

---

**Vocabulary**

<b>konnichiwa</b>	hello, good afternoon	<b>denwa-bangō</b>	telephone number
<b>genki desu ka</b>	how are you?	<b>nan-ban</b>	what number?
<b>hai</b>	yes	<b>Īe</b>	no
<b>denwa</b>	telephone	<b>dewa</b>	is/am/are not (non-past negative)
<b>bangō</b>	number	<b>arimasen</b>	past negative form of verb "be")

**Language points****Numbers (up to ten)**

Here, you will learn how to count up to ten. The English words alongside have a similar sound to the number and are there to help

you to remember the Japanese numbers. Please note that numbers four and seven have two pronunciations. Most of the time they are interchangeable but sometimes you need to choose a specific one (for example, **shi** and **shichi** are used to say the months April **shi-gatsu** and July **shichi-gatsu**).

0	<b>zero</b>	<u>zero</u>	6	<b>roku</b>	<u>lock</u> the door
1	<b>ichi</b>	<u>witch</u>	7	<b>nana</b>	granny, " <u>nana</u> "
2	<b>ni</b>	my <u>needle</u>		<b>shichi</b>	<u>ship</u> <u>chip</u>
3	<b>san</b>	the <u>sun</u>	8	<b>hachi</b>	to <u>hatch</u>
4	<b>yon</b>	to <u>yawn</u>	9	<b>kyū</b>	a long <u>queue</u>
	<b>shi</b>	<u>she</u>	10	<b>jū</b>	orange <u>juice</u>
5	<b>go</b>	to <u>go</u>			

## Giving and asking for telephone numbers

**X wa Y desu** is used to say "my telephone number is 0123-45-6789" or "Mr Yamada's telephone number is 9876-54-3210" in Japanese, using "my/Mr Yamada's telephone number" as the topic of the sentence as below:

- Watashi no denwa-bangō wa 0123-45-6789 desu.**
- Yamada-san no denwa-bangō wa 9876-54-3210 desu.**

"**No**" in **watashi no denwa bangō** is the possessive marker **no** as explained on page 15. "-" in "0123-45-6789" is read as **no** as well but does not carry any specific meaning.

0123-45-6789 = **zero ichi ni san no yon go no roku nana hachi kyū**

To ask for a telephone number, you can either simply add the verbal question marker **ka** at the end of the sentence to make a yes/no question (sentence c) or use **nan-ban** (which number) along with **ka** (sentence d).

- Q: **Anata no denwa-bangō wa 0123-45-6789 desu ka.**  
Is your telephone number 0123-45-6789?

- A1: **Hai, sō desu.** Yes, that is so.  
A2: **Īe, sō dewa arimasen.** No, that is not so.

d. Q: **Anata no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.**  
What is your telephone number?

A: **(Watashi no denwa-bangō wa) 0123-45-6789 desu.**  
 My telephone number is 0123-45-6789.

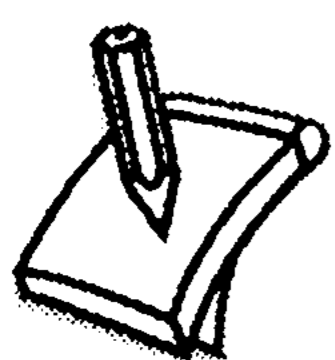


### Exercise 6 (CD 1; 17)

Say the following telephone numbers in Japanese. Then listen to the recording and circle the telephone numbers that you hear.



- |   |                  |                  |
|---|------------------|------------------|
| 1 | a. 090-824-571   | b. 090-824-175   |
| 2 | a. 080-335-6663  | b. 080-335-4443  |
| 3 | a. 0139-712-4728 | b. 0139-712-4782 |



### Exercise 7

Write the answers to the following questions in Japanese. For questions 2 and 3, use the information given below. If you are working with your classmates, ask each other.

- Anata no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.
- Howaito-san no denwa-bangō wa 784-0394 desu ka. (Mr White: 784-0394)
- Katō-san no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka. (Miss Kato: 021-6658)



### Exercise 8 (CD 1; 18)



Read out the following text. Then, write ✓ if the statement agrees with the text. Write ✗ if not.

Hajimemashite. Watashi wa Jurī desu. Igrisu-jin desu. XYZ daigaku no gakusē desu. Denwa-bangō wa zero ichi san kyū no roku roku hachi no ni yon ichi nana desu. Dōzo yoroshiku.

- ( ) Julie is Australian.
- ( ) She is a university student.
- ( ) Her telephone number is 0139-667-2417.



## Vocabulary

daigaku university

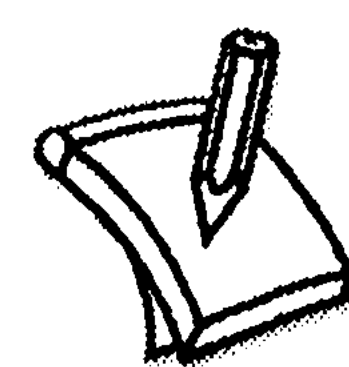
## Hiragana of Unit 1

In this unit, you will learn ten new hiragana plus five voiced counterparts. The first five are the Japanese basic vowels and they do not have a voiced version. Practise each hiragana as many times as you want with a spare sheet of paper. To check the stroke order of each hiragana and download an extra exercise sheet, go to [www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/](http://www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/).

	1	2	3		1	2	3
a	あ	あ	あ	a	あ	あ	あ
i	い	い	い	i	い	い	い
u	う	う	う	u	う	う	う
e	え	え	え	e	え	え	え
o	お	お	お	o	お	お	お
ka	か	か	か	ga	が	が	が
ki	き	き	き	gi	ぎ	ぎ	ぎ
ku	く	く	く	gu	ぐ	ぐ	ぐ
ke	け	け	け	ge	げ	げ	げ
ko	こ	こ	こ	go	ご	ご	ご

### Exercise 9

Read out the following Japanese words written in hiragana and write how to read them in the brackets below as shown in the example.



- |   |                                      |                                       |
|---|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 あき autumn, fall<br>(e.g. <u>a</u> <u>ki</u> ) | 2 あい love<br>( ___ )                 | 3 いけ pond<br>( ___ )                  |
| 4 うえ top/above<br>( ___ )                       | 5 あご jaw<br>( ___ )                  | 6 かお face<br>( ___ )                  |
| 7 きいろ yellow<br>( ___ ___ <u>ro</u> )           | 8 おかね money<br>( ___ ___ <u>ne</u> ) | 9 こむぎこ flour<br>( ___ <u>mu</u> ___ ) |

# Unit Two

## Tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka

When is your birthday?



In this unit you will learn about:

- family terms
- numbers 11–99
- how to talk about someone's age
- time-related expressions (date and month, day of the week, etc.)
- how to give and ask for months and dates
- hiragana of Unit 2

さしすせそ      たちつと      じじずぜぞ      だちづでど



### Dialogue 1



How old is your father? (CD 1; 19)

Mrs Tanaka and Mr Smith are talking about their family members.

---

TANAKA	Sumisu-san wa nan-sai desu ka.
SUMISU	Watashi wa sanjūsan-sai desu.
TANAKA	Sō desu ka. Jā, Sumisu-san no otōsan wa nan-sai desu ka.
SUMISU	Watashi no chichi wa rokujūgo-sai desu.
TANAKA	Sō desu ka. Watashi no chichi mo rokujūgo-sai desu.

MRS TANAKA *Mr Smith, how old are you?*  
 MR SMITH *I am 33 years old.*  
 MRS TANAKA *Really? Then, how old is your father?*  
 MR SMITH *My father is 65 years old.*  
 MRS TANAKA *Really? My father is also 65 years old.*

## Vocabulary



<b>nan</b>	what?	<b>chichi</b>	(one's own) father
<b>-sai</b>	years old	<b>sō desu ka</b>	really?, is that so?, I see.
<b>nan-sai</b>	how old?	<b>mo (particle)</b>	also, too
<b>jā</b>	then		
<b>otōsan</b>	(someone's) father		

## Language points



### Family terms

Japanese has two words for each family member, one for your own family member and another for someone else's family member.

	<i>Own family member</i>	<i>Other's family member</i>
family	<b>kazoku</b>	<b>gokazoku</b>
mother	<b>haha</b>	<b>okāsan</b>
father	<b>chichi</b>	<b>otōsan</b>
parents	<b>ryōshin</b>	<b>goryōshin</b>
elder sister	<b>ane</b>	<b>onēsan</b>
younger sister	<b>imōto</b>	<b>imōtosan</b>
elder brother	<b>ani</b>	<b>onīsan</b>
younger brother	<b>otōto</b>	<b>otōtosan</b>
grandmother	<b>sobo</b>	<b>obāsan</b>
grandfather	<b>sofu</b>	<b>ojīsan</b>

Examples:

**watashi no ane**                      my elder sister  
**Sumisu-san no onēsan**            Mr/Ms Smith's elder sister

## Numbers 11–99

In Unit 1, you learned the numbers from zero to ten (page 18–19). For numbers from 11 to 99, you combine the numbers as below.

$$11 \quad 10 + 1 = \text{jūichi}$$

$$12 \quad 10 + 2 = \text{jūni}$$

$$13 \quad 10 + 3 = \text{jūsan}$$

$$14 \quad 10 + 4 = \text{jūyon}$$

$$15 \quad 10 + 5 = \text{jūgo}$$

$$16 \quad 10 + 6 = \text{jūroku}$$

$$17 \quad 10 + 7 = \text{jūshichi}$$

$$18 \quad 10 + 8 = \text{jūhachi}$$

$$19 \quad 10 + 9 = \text{jūkyū}$$

$$20 \quad 2 \times 10 = \text{nijū}$$

$$30 \quad 3 \times 10 = \text{sanjū}$$

$$40 \quad 4 \times 10 = \text{yonjū}$$

$$50 \quad 5 \times 10 = \text{gojū}$$

$$60 \quad 6 \times 10 = \text{rokJū}$$

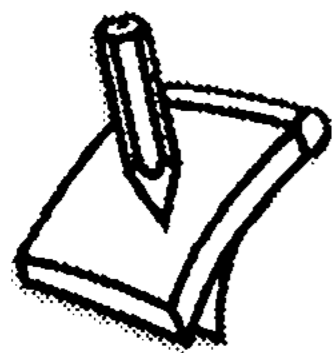
$$70 \quad 7 \times 10 = \text{nanajū}$$

$$80 \quad 8 \times 10 = \text{hachijū}$$

$$90 \quad 9 \times 10 = \text{kyūjū}$$

$$25 = 2 \times 10 + 5 = \text{nijūgo}$$

$$68 = 6 \times 10 + 8 = \text{rokJūhachi}$$



### Exercise 1 (CD 1; 20)

Say the following numbers in Japanese. Then listen to the recording and circle the numbers that were read out.



1	23	32	2	41	14	3	17	71
4	85	58	5	60	16	6	19	99



### Language point

#### Talking about someone's age

The Japanese word for “years old” is **-sai** and it attaches to the number.

a. **Watashi wa 29 (nijūkyū)-sai desu.**

I am 29 years old.

To ask Mrs Tanaka whether she is 29 years old or not, you simply add **ka**, the verbal question marker, at the end of the sentence.

b. **Tanaka-san wa 29 (nijūkyū)-sai desu ka.**

Are you 29 years old, Mrs Tanaka?



The Japanese word for “how old” is **nan-sai**. To ask someone’s age, you do not change the word order but use the **X wa nan-sai desu ka** structure.

c. Q: **Yamada-san wa nan-sai desu ka.**

How old is Mr Yamada?

A: **Yamada-san wa 32 (sanjūni)-sai desu.**

He is 32 years old.

Note that the pronunciation of the following numbers will change with **-sai**.

1 year old: **is-sai** (instead of “ichi-sai”)

31 years old: **sanjūis-sai**

8 years old: **has-sai** (instead of “hachi-sai”)

18 years old: **jūhas-sai**

10 years old: **jus-sai** (instead of “jū-sai”)

40 years old: **yonjus-sai**

Also note that “20 years old” has two patterns: **nijus-sai** and **hatachi**. This age is very special in Japan because people are treated legally as adults when they reach this age.

## Exercise 2

Write how old you and two of your family members are. Remember that you are supposed to use the family term for your own family.



1 (your age)

2

3

## Exercise 3 (CD 1; 21)

Suppose you are asking your Japanese friend, Satoshi, how old he and his family members are. First write how you would ask those questions. Then listen to the recording and write their ages in the brackets.



*Example*

Satoshi Q: Satoshi-san wa nan-sai desu ka. ( 28 )

1 Satoshi’s father Q: \_\_\_\_\_ ( )

2 Satoshi’s mother Q: \_\_\_\_\_ ( )

3 Satoshi’s elder sister Q: \_\_\_\_\_ ( )

4 Satoshi’s younger brother Q: \_\_\_\_\_ ( )



## Language point

### **Also** mo

**Mo** means “also”. To say “I am also 29 years old”, you replace **wa** with **mo** as below.

- a. **Tanaka-san wa 29-sai desu. Watashi mo 29-sai desu.**  
Mr/Mrs Tanaka is 29 years old. I am also 29 years old.
- b. **Watashi wa kaishain desu. Sumisu-san mo kaishain desu.**  
I am a company employee. Mr Smith is also a company employee.



## Dialogue 2



### Happy birthday! (CD 1; 22)

Mrs Tanaka and Mr Smith are talking in the street.

- 
- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| TANAKA     | Sumisu-san, kyō wa Sumisu-san no tanjōbi desu ne. Tanjōbi omedetō gozaimasu.  |
| SUMISU     | Arigatō gozaimasu.  |
| TANAKA     | Sumisu-san wa nan-sai desu ka.  |
| SUMISU     | Watashi wa 33-sai desu. Tanaka-san no tanjōbi wa nan-gatsu nan-nichi desu ka. |
| TANAKA     | Watashi no tanjōbi wa 9-gatsu 17-nichi desu.                                  |
| SUMISU     | Sō desu ka.   |
| MRS TANAKA | <i>Mr Smith, today is your birthday, isn't it? Happy birthday.</i>            |
| MR SMITH   | <i>Thank you.</i>   |
| MRS TANAKA | <i>How old are you, Mr Smith?</i>   |
| MR SMITH   | <i>I am 33 years old. What day is your birthday, Mrs Tanaka?</i>              |
| MRS TANAKA | <i>My birthday is September 17th.</i>   |
| MR SMITH   | <i>Is that so?/Really?</i>  |
-

## Vocabulary



<b>kyō</b>	today
<b>tanjōbi</b>	birthday
<b>ne</b> (particle)	isn't it?, aren't they?, aren't you? etc.
<b>omedetō (gozaimasu)</b>	congratulations (with <b>gozaimasu</b> , this becomes politer)
<b>arigatō (gozaimasu)</b>	thank you (with <b>gozaimasu</b> , this becomes politer)
<b>-gatsu</b>	month
<b>nan-gatsu</b>	which month? ( <i>lit.</i> "what month?")
<b>-nichi</b>	day of the month
<b>nan-nichi</b>	which date? ( <i>lit.</i> "what date?")

## Language points



### Date and month

The suffixes for months and dates are **-gatsu** and **-nichi**. In Japanese, the month comes before the date, e.g. **1-gatsu 28-nichi** "January the 28th".

Some months and dates (as marked by \*) change their pronunciation as below.

January	<b>ichi-gatsu</b>
February	<b>ni-gatsu</b>
March	<b>san-gatsu</b>
*April	<b>shi-gatsu</b> (not <i>yon-gatsu</i> )
May	<b>go-gatsu</b>
June	<b>roku-gatsu</b>
*July	<b>shichi-gatsu</b> (not <i>nana-gatsu</i> )
August	<b>hachi-gatsu</b>
*September	<b>ku-gatsu</b> (not <i>kyū-gatsu</i> )
October	<b>jū-gatsu</b>
November	<b>jūichi-gatsu</b>
December	<b>jūni-gatsu</b>

*1st	<b>tsuitachi</b>	*17th	<b>jū shichi-nichi</b>
*2nd	<b>futsuka</b>	18th	<b>jū hachi-nichi</b>
*3rd	<b>mikka</b>	*19th	<b>jū ku-nichi</b>
*4th	<b>yokka</b>	*20th	<b>hatsuka/ni jū-nichi</b>
*5th	<b>itsuka</b>	21st	<b>ni jū ichi-nichi</b>
*6th	<b>muika</b>	22nd	<b>ni jū ni-nichi</b>
*7th	<b>nanoka</b>	23rd	<b>ni jū san-nichi</b>
*8th	<b>yōka</b>	*24th	<b>ni jū yokka</b>
*9th	<b>kokonoka</b>	25th	<b>ni jū go-nichi</b>
*10th	<b>tōka</b>	26th	<b>ni jū roku-nichi</b>
11th	<b>jū ichi-nichi</b>	27th	<b>ni jū shichi-nichi</b>
12th	<b>jū ni-nichi</b>	28th	<b>ni jū hachi-nichi</b>
13th	<b>jū san-nichi</b>	*29th	<b>ni jū ku-nichi</b>
*14th	<b>jū yokka</b>	30th	<b>san jū-nichi</b>
15th	<b>jū go-nichi</b>	31st	<b>san jū ichi-nichi</b>
16th	<b>jū roku-nichi</b>		

a. **Kyō wa jū-gatsu nijūgo-nichi desu.**

Today is October 25th.

b. **Watashi no tanjōbi wa shichi-gatsu nijūyokka desu.**

My birthday is July 24th.

## **Giving and asking for months and dates: itsu**

To give the month and date, you use the **X wa Y desu** structure. Note that in Japanese, the month comes first, e.g. **10-gatsu** (October) **25-nichi** (25th).

a. **Kyō wa 10-gatsu 25-nichi desu.**

Today is October 25th.

b. **Ashita wa 10-gatsu 26-nichi desu ka.**

Is tomorrow October 26th?

To ask what the date is, you can use either **nan-gatsu** “what month?”, **nan-nichi** “what day?” or **itsu** “when?”. If you use **nan-gatsu nan-nichi**, the answer should be specifically the month and date whereas if **itsu** is used, the answer could be date, month, time or year.

c. Q: **Kinō wa nan-gatsu nan-nichi deshita ka.**  
What date was it yesterday?

A: **Kinō wa ni-gatsu mikka deshita.**  
 Yesterday was February 3rd.

d. Q: **Tomu-san no tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.**  
When is your birthday, Tom?

A1: **(Watashi no tanjōbi wa) san-gatsu futsuka desu.**  
 My birthday is March 2nd.

A2: **(Watashi no tanjōbi wa) ashita desu.**  
 My birthday is tomorrow.

An interrogative word **itsu** “when?” is also used to ask when something will happen (or happened) like a birthday, national holidays or some specific days.

## Exercise 4



Read aloud the following questions. Then say or write the answers in Japanese, using the information below and your own.

- 1 Anata no tanjōbi wa nan-gatsu nan-nichi desu ka.
- 2 Anata no okāsan/otōsan no tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.
- 3 Jon-san no imōtosan no tanjōbi wa nan-gatsu nan-nichi desu ka.
- 4 Jon-san no otōsan no tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.
- 5 Jon-san no onīsan no tanjōbi wa go-gatsu jūhachi-nichi desu ka.

John's father (November 10th)

John's mother (March 16th)

John's elder brother (April 18th)

John's younger brother (August 14th)

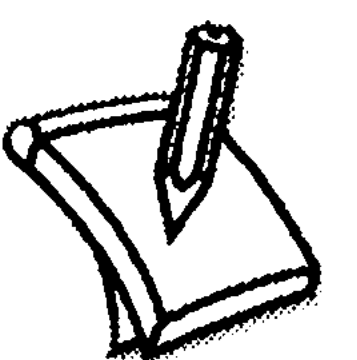
John's elder sister (January 1st)

John's younger sister (December 29th)

## Exercise 5 (CD 1; 23)

Listen to the dialogues and write down the birthdays of Tomoko and Satoshi.

- 1 Tomoko \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Satoshi \_\_\_\_\_





## Dialogue 3



What date is it next Friday? **(CD 1; 24)**

Mrs Tanaka and Mr Smith are talking about the company's Christmas party.

SUMISU	Tanaka-san, kaisha no kurisumasu pātī wa itsu desu ka.
TANAKA	Raishū no kin-yōbi desu.
SUMISU	Raishū no kin-yōbi wa nan-gatsu nan-nichi desu ka.
TANAKA	12-gatsu 15-nichi desu.
SUMISU	Sō desu ka. Wakarimashita. Arigatō.
MR SMITH	<i>Mrs Tanaka, when is (our) company's Christmas party?</i>
MRS TANAKA	<i>(It is) next Friday.</i>
MR SMITH	<i>Which month and which date is it next Friday?</i>
MRS TANAKA	<i>(It is) December 15th.</i>
MR SMITH	<i>Really? I see. Thank you.</i>



## Vocabulary

<b>kaisha</b>	company	<b>kin-yōbi</b>	Friday
<b>kurisumasu</b>	Christmas	<b>wakarimashita</b>	understand, understood, I see.
<b>pātī</b>	party		
<b>raishū</b>	next week		



## Language point

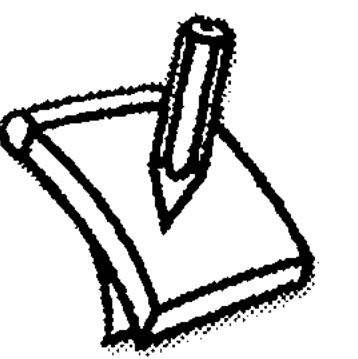
### Days of the week and other time-related words

The suffix for the day of the week is **-yōbi** and “which day of the week” is **nan-yōbi**.

Sunday	<b>nichi-yōbi</b>
Monday	<b>getsu-yōbi</b>
Tuesday	<b>ka-yōbi</b>
Wednesday	<b>sui-yōbi</b>
Thursday	<b>moku-yōbi</b>
Friday	<b>kin-yōbi</b>
Saturday	<b>do-yōbi</b>
what day of the week	<b>nan-yōbi</b>

day	<b>kinō</b> yesterday	<b>kyō</b> today	<b>ashita</b> tomorrow
week	<b>senshū</b> last week	<b>konshū</b> this week	<b>raishū</b> next week
month	<b>sengetsu</b> last month	<b>kongetsu</b> this month	<b>raigetsu</b> next month
year	<b>kyonen</b> last year	<b>kotoshi</b> this year	<b>rainen</b> next year
	<b>Senshū no nichi-yōbi</b>	last Sunday	
	<b>Konshū no getsu-yōbi</b>	this Monday	

## Exercise 6



Read the following sentences and write ✓ if they agree with the calendar below and ✗ if not. Today is Thursday, August 14th.

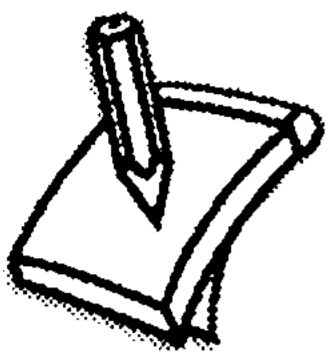
- ( ) Kyō wa moku-yōbi desu.
- ( ) Hachi-gatsu mikka wa do-yōbi desu.
- ( ) Raishū no kin-yōbi wa nijūni-nichi desu.
- ( ) Kinō wa getsu-yōbi deshita.
- ( ) Raigetsu wa ku-gatsu desu.

August						
M	T	W	TH	F	S	S
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	⑭	15	16	17

## Vocabulary

**deshita** was, were





## Exercise 7

Circle the word which does not belong to the category of other words, as in the example.

*Example*

ashita      kinō      raishū      kyō

- |   |            |           |           |           |         |
|---|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| 1 | getsu-yōbi | sui-yōbi  | kin-yōbi  | kotoshi   |         |
| 2 | senshū     | ashita    | kinō      | sengetsu  | kyonen  |
| 3 | nan-yōbi   | nan-nichi | moku-yōbi | nan-gatsu | nan-sai |
| 4 | raishū     | kinō      | ashita    | raigetsu  | rainen  |

Hint: Are the above words “past” or “non-past”?



## Exercise 8 (CD 1; 25)



Read out the following text. Then write ✓ if the statement agrees with the text. Write ✗ if not.

Kyō wa jū-gatsu nijūshichi-nichi desu. Moku-yōbi desu. Kyō wa Yoshiko-san no onīsan no tanjōbi desu. Yoshiko-san no onīsan wa sanjūis-sai desu. Ashita wa tanjōbi pātī desu. Purezento wa chokorēto to kādo desu.

- 1 ( ) Today is Thursday 17th October.
- 2 ( ) Today is Yoshiko's elder brother's birthday.
- 3 ( ) Yoshiko's elder brother is 31 years old.
- 4 ( ) His birthday party will be held tonight.



## Vocabulary

<b>purezento</b>	present
<b>chokorēto</b>	chocolate
<b>to</b>	and (connecting nouns)
<b>kādo</b>	card



## Hiragana of Unit 2

In this unit, you will learn ten new Hiragana plus their voiced counterparts. Practise each Hiragana as many times as you want on a spare sheet of paper.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
sa	さ	さ	さ	za	ざ	ざ	ざ
shi	し	し	し	ji	じ	じ	じ
su	す	す	す	zu	ず	ず	ず
se	せ	せ	せ	ze	ぜ	ぜ	ぜ
so	そ	そ	そ	zo	ぞ	ぞ	ぞ
ta	た	た	た	da	だ	だ	だ
chi	ち	ち	ち	ji	ぢ	ぢ	ぢ
tsu	つ	つ	つ	zu	づ	づ	づ
te	て	て	て	de	で	で	で
to	と	と	と	do	ど	ど	ど

### Exercise 9

Read out the following Japanese words written in hiragana and write how to read them in the brackets below.



- |                              |                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 すし sushi<br>( _ _ )        | 2 さしみ sliced raw fish<br>( _ _ mi) | 3 ともだち friend<br>( _ mo _ _ )    |
| 4 あした tomorrow<br>( _ _ _ )  | 5 ちず map<br>( _ _ )                | 6 すいえい swimming<br>( _ _ _ _ )   |
| 7 ちかてつ subway<br>( _ _ _ _ ) | 8 かぜ cold<br>( _ _ )               | 9 そうですか Really?<br>( _ _ _ _ _ ) |

# Unit Three

## Otearai wa doko desu ka

Where is the toilet?



In this unit you will learn about:

- indicating places: **koko**, **soko**, **asoko**
- asking and answering about places: **doko**
- o'clock and minutes: **-ji** and **-pun/-fun**
- telling and asking the time: **nan-ji**
- from and till: **kara** and **made**
- hiragana of Unit 3

なにぬねの      はひふへほ      ぱびふべぽ      ぱびふべぽ



### Dialogue 1



Where is the toilet? (CD 1; 26)

Mr White has recently moved to Tokyo to start working for a Japanese company. Today, his friend, Miss Sato, has taken him to her place for the first time.

---

SATŌ	Howaito-san. Koko wa watashi no uchi desu. Dōzo.
HOWAITO	Dōmo. Anō sumimasen. Otearai wa doko desu ka.
SATŌ	Otearai wa asoko desu.
HOWAITO	Mō ichido yukkuri onegai shimasu.
SATŌ	Hai, otearai wa asoko desu.
HOWAITO	Sō desu ka. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

- MISS SATO *Mr White, here is my home. Please (come in).*  
 MR WHITE *Thank you. Um, excuse me but where is the toilet?*  
 MISS SATO *The toilet is over there.*  
 MR WHITE *Please say it again slowly.*  
 MISS SATO *Certainly, the toilet is over there.*  
 MR WHITE *I see. Thank you very much.*

## Vocabulary



<b>koko</b>	here, this place	<b>otearai</b>	toilet
<b>uchi</b>	home, house	<b>doko</b>	where?
<b>dōzo</b>	please, here you are	<b>asoko</b>	that place over there
<b>dōmo</b>	thank you	<b>mō ichido</b>	once more
<b>anō</b>	ah, er, uh, um	<b>yukkuri</b>	slowly
<b>sumimasen</b>	excuse me (but)	<b>onegai shimasu</b>	please

## Language points

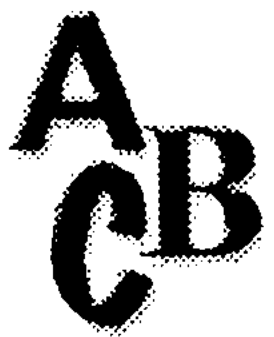


### Indicating places: koko, soko **and** asoko

Key words for indicating places are **koko** “this place”, **soko** “that place near the listener” and **asoko** “that place over there”. The **X wa Y desu** structure is used to indicate places.

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| a. <b>Otearai wa asoko desu.</b>               | The toilet is over there. |
| b. <b>Soko wa watashi no uchi desu.</b>        | That place is my home.    |
| c. <b>Howaito-san wa watashi no uchi desu.</b> | Mr White is in my house.  |

Here are some place-related words.



## Vocabulary

<b>machi</b>	town, city	<b>hoteru</b>	hotel
<b>konbini</b>	convenience store	<b>eki</b>	station
<b>sūpā</b>	supermarket	<b>kūkō</b>	airport
<b>depāto</b>	department store	<b>taishikan</b>	embassy
<b>resutoran</b>	restaurant	<b>byōin</b>	hospital
<b>kissaten</b>	coffee shop	<b>chikatetsu</b>	underground
<b>ginkō</b>	bank	<b>yūbinkyoku</b>	post office
<b>toshokan</b>	library	<b>kōban</b>	<i>koban</i> (a neighbourhood police station)
<b>gakkō</b>	school		

### Asking and answering about places: doko

The Japanese word for “where” is **doko**. To ask where Tokyo station is, you do not change the word order but use the **X wa doko desu ka** structure as below:

a. Q: **Tōkyō eki wa doko desu ka.**

Where is Tokyo station?

A: **(Tōkyō eki wa) asoko desu.**

Tokyo station is over there.

b. Q: **Kimura-san wa doko desu ka.**

Where is Mr Kimura?

A: **Kimura-san wa kissaten desu.**

He is in the coffee shop.

**Koko, soko, asoko** and **doko** have politer counterparts. The politer versions can often be heard in shops, hotels, restaurants, etc.

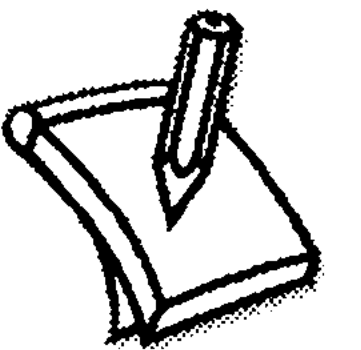
	<i>Normal version</i>	<i>Polite version</i>
this place	<b>koko</b>	<b>kochira</b>
that place	<b>soko</b>	<b>sochira</b>
that place over there	<b>asoko</b>	<b>achira</b>
where	<b>doko</b>	<b>dochira</b>

Customer: **Sumimasen. Otearai wa doko desu ka.**  
Excuse me but where is the toilet?

Receptionist: **Otearai wa achira desu.**  
The toilet is over there.

Customer: **Sō desu ka. Dōmo.**  
I see. Thank you.

## Exercise 1

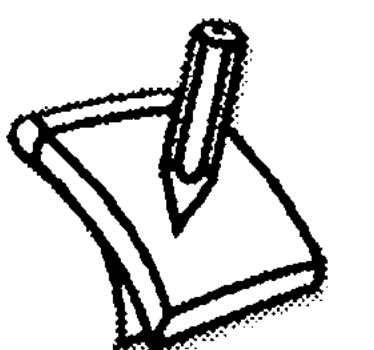


Choose the right word and underline it as shown in the example.

*Example* (Koko Soko) wa otearai desu.  
(That place is a toilet.)

- 1 Konbini wa (koko asoko) desu.  
(The convenience store is here.)
- 2 Eki wa (koko soko) dewa arimasen. (Doko Asoko) desu.  
(The train station is not there, but over there.)
- 3 Igrisu taishikan wa (asoko doko) desu ka?  
(Where is the British Embassy?)
- 4 Nihon resutoran wa (achira sochira) desu.  
(The Japanese restaurant can be found over there.)
- 5 Yamamoto-san wa (kochira dochira) desu ka.  
(Where is Mr Yamamoto?)

## Exercise 2



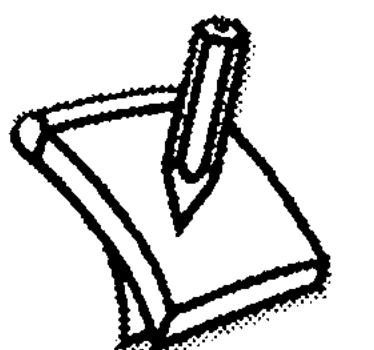
Where are they? Answer the questions as shown in the example.

*Example* Satō-san wa doko desu ka. (in the hotel)  
*Satō-san wa hoteru desu.*

- 1 Ueda-san wa doko desu ka. (in the hospital)
- 2 Kimura-san wa doko desu ka. (in the station)
- 3 Otearai wa doko desu ka. (over there)

## Exercise 3 (CD 1; 27)

A male speaker and a female speaker are talking about where Mrs Lee and Mr Yamada are now. Listen to their conversation and write where they are in Japanese.



- 1 Lī-san \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Yamada-san \_\_\_\_\_



## Dialogue 2



What time is it now in Canada? **(CD 1; 28)**

Mr White and Miss Sato are in a cafeteria.

- SATŌ Sumimasen. Howaito-san. Ima nan-ji desu ka.  
 HOWAITO Ima, gozen 9-ji han desu.  
 SATŌ Sō desu ka. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu. Howaito-san no (o)kuni wa Kanada desu ne. Kanada wa ima nan-ji desu ka.  
 HOWAITO Ēto, Kanada wa ima gogo 5-ji han desu.  
 SATŌ Sō desu ka.
- MISS SATO *Excuse me, Mr White. What time is it now?*  
 MR WHITE *It is 9:30 a.m.*  
 MISS SATO *Really? Thank you very much. You are from Canada, aren't you? What time is it now in Canada?*  
 MR WHITE *Let me see . . . , it is 5:30 p.m.*  
 MISS SATO *I see./Really?*



## Vocabulary

<b>ima</b>	now	<b>han</b>	half
<b>nan-ji</b>	what time?	<b>(o)kuni</b>	country
<b>-ji</b>	o'clock	<b>ēto</b>	let me see . . .
<b>gozen</b>	a.m.	<b>gogo</b>	p.m.



## Language points

### **O'clock and minutes: -ji and -pun/-fun**

“O'clock” and “minute” in Japanese are **ji** and **pun/-fun** respectively. Both come after the number. As for minutes, **fun** is used when the number ends with 2, 5, 7 or 9 and **pun** is used otherwise.

Note that some of the numbers (marked by \*) are read differently from what you learned in Unit 1.

O'clock (**-ji**)

1 <b>ichi-ji</b>	4 <b>yo-ji*</b>	7 <b>shichi-ji*</b>	10 <b>jū-ji</b>
2 <b>ni-ji</b>	5 <b>go-ji</b>	8 <b>hachi-ji</b>	11 <b>jū ichi-ji</b>
3 <b>san-ji</b>	6 <b>roku-ji</b>	9 <b>ku-ji*</b>	12 <b>jū ni-ji</b>

Minutes (**-pun/-fun**)**-pun**

1 <b>ip-pun</b>	6 <b>rop-pun</b>
3 <b>san-pun</b>	8 <b>hap-pun</b>
4 <b>yon-pun</b>	10 <b>jup-pun</b>

**-fun**

2 <b>ni-fun</b>	9 <b>kyū-fun</b>
5 <b>go-fun</b>	
7 <b>nana-fun</b>	

a.m. is **gozen** and p.m. is **gogo**. They come before the time. **Sanjup-pun** “30 minutes” can be replaced by **han** “half”.

2:00 a.m. = **gozen ni-ji**      4:15 p.m. = **gogo yo-ji jūgo-fun**

6:30 a.m. = **gozen roku-ji sanjup-pun** or **gozen roku-ji han**  
(**han** means “half”)

**Telling and asking the time: nan-ji and nan-pun**

Telling and asking the time uses the **X wa Y desu** pattern, though **X wa** is usually omitted when the local time is asked. “What time?” in Japanese is **nan-ji**. To ask the time, you say **ima nan-ji desu ka**. **Ima** means “now”.



a. Q: **Sumimasen. Ima nan-ji desu ka.**

Excuse me? What time is it now?

A: **Ima go-ji desu.**

It is 5 o'clock.

b. Q: **Tōkyō wa ima nan-ji desu ka.**

What time is it now in Tokyo?

A: **Ima gozen hachi-ji han desu.**

It is 8:30 a.m.

Additional expression:

c. **Ima gozen ku-ji go-fun mae desu.**

It is 5 minutes to 9 a.m.

d. **Ima gogo shichi-ji jup-pun mae desu.**

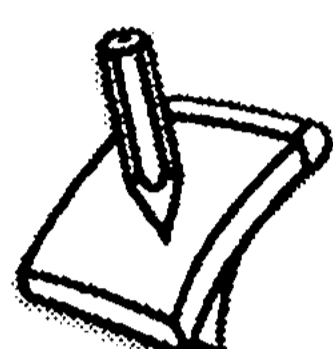
It is 10 minutes to 7 p.m.



## Exercise 4

What time is it now? Read out the time and spell it out, e.g. **ichi-ji**.

- |             |             |              |             |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 1:20      | 2 4:35      | 3 8:50       | 4 6:30      |
| 5 2:40 p.m. | 6 9:05 a.m. | 7 11:15 p.m. | 8 5:55 p.m. |



## Exercise 5 (CD 1; 29)

Listen to the conversations and write the time. For 3 and 4, include a.m. or p.m. as well.



- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 _____ | 2 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 4 _____ |



## Exercise 6

Answer the following questions using the information given. If you work with your classmates, ask each other the time in the various places.

*Example* UK (1:45 p.m.)

Igirisu wa ima nan-ji desu ka.

*Igirisu wa ima gogo 1-ji 45-fun desu.*

- 1 Chūgoku wa ima nan-ji desu ka.
- 2 Nihon wa ima nan-ji desu ka.
- 3 Amerika wa ima nan-ji desu ka.
- 4 Ōsutoraria wa ima nan-ji desu ka.
- 5 Indo wa ima nan-ji desu ka.

India (5:40 a.m.), China (7:50 a.m.), Japan (8:25 p.m.),  
America (6:10 a.m.), Australia (3:00 p.m.)



## **Dialogue 3**



From what time to what time are department stores open in Japan? **(CD 1; 30)**

Mr White plans to go to a Japanese department store this weekend for the first time. Now he asks his friend, Miss Sato, about its opening time.



- HOWAITO Satō-san, Nihon no depāto wa nan-ji kara desu ka.  
 SATŌ Futsū gozen 10-ji kara desu.  
 HOWAITO Sō desu ka. Jā, nan-ji made desu ka.  
 SATŌ Sō desu ne. Futsū gogo 8-ji goro made desu.  
 HOWAITO Do-yōbi mo gozen 10-ji kara gogo 8-ji made desu ka.  
 SATŌ Īe, do-yōbi wa gogo 8-ji han made desu.
- MR WHITE *Miss Sato, what time do Japanese department stores open?*  
 MISS SATO *They usually open at 10 a.m.*  
 MR WHITE *Really? Then, until what time are they (open)?*  
 MISS SATO *Well . . . , (they are open) until around 8 p.m.*  
 MR WHITE *Are they open from 10 a.m. to 8 p.m. on Saturdays as well?*  
 MISS SATO *No, they are open until 8.30 p.m. on Saturdays.*

## Vocabulary



**kara** (particle) from

**made** (particle) to, until

**futsū** usually, normally

**goro** about, around

## Language point



### From and till: kara and made

Both **kara** “from” and **made** “until” are postpositions.

- a. **Ginkō wa gozen 10-ji kara desu.** The bank is (open) from 10 a.m.  
 b. **Ginkō wa gogo 4-ji made desu.** The bank is (open) until 4 p.m.

To combine the above sentences, you delete the repeated words **desu** and **ginkō** as below:

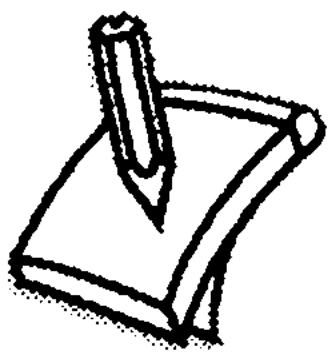
- c. **Ginkō wa gozen 10-ji kara gogo 4-ji made desu.**

The bank is (open) from 10 a.m. to 4 p.m.

To ask the time, you simply replace the time with **nan-ji** “what time” as shown below:

- d. **Ginkō wa nan-ji kara desu ka.**

From what time is the bank (open)?



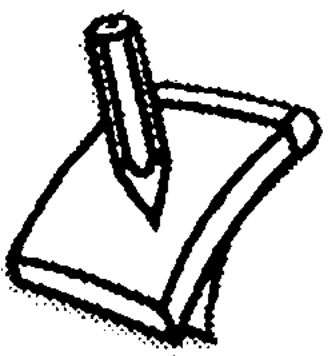
### Exercise 7 (CD 1; 31)



You will hear a series of conversations about the opening times of the following places. First, write the name of the place in English. Then, listen to the dialogue and write down the time as shown in the example.

*Example* Kokura byōin (*Kokura hospital*)  
8:30 a.m.-5:30 p.m.

- 1 Hoteru no kissaten (                      )
- 2 Sakura toshokan (                      )
- 3 Sakura sūpā (                      )



### Exercise 8

Choose the appropriate interrogatives from the box below and write them in the spaces. You can use the same interrogative more than once.

- 1 Kissaten wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka.                      Asoko desu.
- 2 Anata no tanjōbi wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka.                      11-gatsu 15-nichi desu.
- 3 Nihon wa ima \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka.                      Gogo 1-ji han desu.
- 4 Sumisu-san wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka.                      Amerika-jin desu.
- 5 Toshokan wa \_\_\_\_\_ kara desu ka.                      Gozen 9-ji kara desu.
- 6 Yamada-san wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka.                      31-sai desu.

nan   nan-sai   nan-yōbi   doko   nan-ji   itsu   nani-jin
--

## Hiragana of Unit 3

In this unit, you will learn ten new hiragana plus their voiced counterparts. Practise each hiragana as many times as you want on a spare sheet of paper.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
na	な	な	な	ba	ば	ば	ば
ni	に	に	に	bi	び	び	び
nu	ぬ	ぬ	ぬ	bu	ぶ	ぶ	ぶ
ne	ね	ね	ね	be	べ	べ	べ
no	の	の	の	bo	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ
ha	は	は	は	pa	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ
hi	ひ	ひ	ひ	pi	ぴ	ぴ	ぴ
fu	ふ	ふ	ふ	pu	ぷ	ぷ	ぷ
he	へ	へ	へ	pe	ぺ	ぺ	ぺ
ho	ほ	ほ	ほ	po	ぽ	ぽ	ぽ

## Exercise 9

Read out the following Japanese words written in Hiragana and write how to read them in the brackets below.



- |                          |                         |                            |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 なに what<br>(    )      | 2 はね wing<br>(    )     | 3 にく meat<br>(    )        |
| 4 ねこ cat<br>(    )       | 5 ひので sunrise<br>(    ) | 6 ほうせき jewellery<br>(    ) |
| 7 せいふく uniform<br>(    ) | 8 ぼうし cap/hat<br>(    ) | 9 へび snake<br>(    )       |

# Unit Four

## Ano kamera wa ikura desu ka

How much is that camera over there?



In this unit you will learn about:

- indicating things with the demonstrative words **kore** “this”, **sore** “that” and **are** “that over there”
- asking questions with the interrogatives **dore** “which one?”, **dare** “who?” and **dare no** “whose?”
- giving and asking a price, using **ikura** “how much?”
- numbers up to 1,000,000
- hiragana of Unit 4

まみむめも やゆよ らりるれろ わをん



### Dialogue 1



What is this? (CD 1; 32)

Miss Garcia is working at a Japanese company as an intern. Mr Kimura, her supervisor, is now showing her around one of the rooms, which has many remote controls.

GARUSHIA Kimura-san. Kore wa nan desu ka.

KIMURA Sore wa terebi no rimokon desu.

GARUSHIA Are mo terebi no rimokon desu ka.

KIMURA Dore desu ka.

GARUSHIA Are desu.

KIMURA Ā, are wa eakon no rimokon desu.

GARUSHIA Sō desu ka. Nite imasu ne.

- MISS GARCIA *Mr Kimura. What is this?*  
 MR KIMURA *That is a TV remote control.*  
 MISS GARCIA *Well then, is that one over there also for the TV?*  
 MR KIMURA *Which one?*  
 MISS GARCIA *That one over there.*  
 MR KIMURA *Ah, that one over there is for the air conditioning.*  
 MISS GARCIA *Really? They look similar.*

## Vocabulary



<b>kore</b>	this, this one	<b>are</b>	that one over there
<b>sore</b>	that, that one (near the listener)	<b>dore</b>	which one?
<b>terebi</b>	television	<b>eakon</b>	air conditioning
<b>rimokon</b>	remote control	<b>nite imasu</b>	be similar

## Language points



### Indicating things (1): **kore**, **sore** and **are**

**Kore**, **sore** and **are** are demonstrative words which indicate things. Which one you should use is determined by the location of the item from the speaker's viewpoint. The sentence pattern is again **X wa Y desu**, as below:

- Kore wa pen desu.**  
This is a pen.
- Sore wa ringo desu.**  
That is an apple.
- Are wa Nihon-go no jisho desu.**  
That over there is a Japanese dictionary.

**Kore**, **sore** and **are** can take the position of Y as well.

- Watashi no jisho wa kore desu.**  
My dictionary is this one.

## Asking questions with interrogatives (1): dore **and** dochira

There are two interrogative words for “which one”: **dore** and **dochira**. The former is used when you ask “which one?” among several, while the latter is used when you ask “which one?” out of two. Note that the demonstrative used in the answer is different, as shown in the following examples:

There are *several* remote controls on the table.

Q: **Sumimasen. Terebi no rimokon wa dore desu ka.**

Excuse me. Which one is the remote control for the TV?

A: **(Terebi no rimokon wa) kore desu.**

This one is.

There are *two* remote controls on the table.

Q: **Sumimasen. Terebi no rimokon wa dochira desu ka.**

Excuse me. Which one is the remote control for the TV?

A: **(Terebi no rimokon wa) kochira desu.**

This one is.

The polite versions of **kore**, **sore**, **are** and **dore** are **kochira**, **sochira**, **achira** and **dochira** respectively. They are also used as the polite versions of **koko** “this place”, **soko** “that place”, **asoko** “that place over there” and **doko** “where”, as learned in Unit 3 (page 36–37).

## Various nouns and loan words

### *Items*

<b>pasupōto</b>	passport	<b>pasokon</b>	personal computer
<b>tokē</b>	clock, watch	<b>dejikame</b>	digital camera
<b>udedokē</b>	wristwatch	<b>(kētai) denwa</b>	(mobile) phone
<b>shinbun</b>	newspaper	<b>hon</b>	book
<b>megane</b>	(a pair of) glasses	<b>kaban</b>	bag
<b>saifu</b>	wallet	<b>kasa</b>	umbrella
<b>kutsu</b>	(a pair of) shoes	<b>bōrupen</b>	ball-point pen
<b>denchi</b>	battery	<b>zasshi</b>	magazine
<b>jisho</b>	dictionary		

*Food and drink*

<b>kōhī</b>	coffee	<b>jūsu</b>	juice
<b>ocha</b>	green tea	<b>kōcha</b>	English tea
<b>hanbāgā</b>	hamburger	<b>niku</b>	meat
<b>sakana</b>	fish	<b>yasai</b>	vegetable
<b>kudamono</b>	fruit	<b>ringo</b>	apple

Japanese uses many loan words (i.e. foreign-origin words) and some are used in a shortened form as below:

convenience store	→	<b>konbiniensu sutoā</b>	→	<b>konbini</b>
personal computer	→	<b>pāsonaru konpyūta</b>	→	<b>pasokon</b>
digital camera	→	<b>dejitaru kamera</b>	→	<b>dejikame</b>
remote controller	→	<b>rimōto kontorōrā</b>	→	<b>rimokon</b>
air conditioner	→	<b>eā kondishonā</b>	→	<b>eakon</b>

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

- 1 This is my wallet.
- 2 That one over there is Mr Jones' Japanese book.
- 3 Which one (out of two) is your dictionary?
- 4 What is that one over there?
- 5 This is not my umbrella.

## Dialogue 2



## That umbrella is mine (CD 1; 33)



Miss Garcia found several umbrellas beside her office desk. She wonders whose umbrellas they are and asks questions to Mr Kimura, who is sitting next to her.

---

GARUSHIA	Kimura-san. Kono kasa wa dare no kasa desu ka.
KIMURA	Sono kasa wa watashi no desu.
GARUSHIA	Sō desu ka. Jā, sono kasa mo Kimura-san no desu ka.
KIMURA	Īe, kono kasa wa watashi no dewa arimasen. Yamada-san no desu.

- GARUSHIA Yamada-san?  
 KIMURA Yamada-san wa watashi no tonari no hito desu.
- MISS GARCIA *Mr Kimura. Whose umbrella is this (umbrella)?*  
 MR KIMURA *That umbrella is mine.*  
 MISS GARCIA *Really? Then, is that umbrella (by your desk) yours, as well?*  
 MR KIMURA *No, this umbrella isn't mine. (This is) Mrs Yamada's.*  
 MISS GARCIA *Mrs Yamada?*  
 MR KIMURA *Mrs Yamada is the person (who is sitting) next to me.*



## Vocabulary

<b>kono</b>	this (+ noun)	<b>sono</b>	that (+ noun)
<b>dare</b>	who?	<b>tonari</b>	next to
<b>dare no</b>	whose? (+ noun)	<b>hito</b>	person



## Language point

### Indicating things (2): **kono/sono/ano + noun**

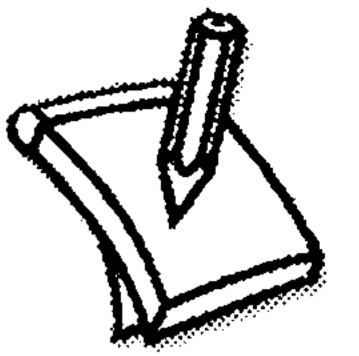
When the demonstratives are used with a noun, “re” in **kore/sore/are** becomes “no” as **kono/sono/ano** (+ noun). The interrogative for “which?” is **dono** (+ noun).

<b>kore</b> this + <b>hon</b> book	→	<b><u>kono</u> hon</b> this book
<b>sore</b> that + <b>hon</b>	→	<b><u>sono</u> hon</b> that book
<b>are</b> that over there + <b>hon</b>	→	<b><u>ano</u> hon</b> that over there
<b>dore</b> which + <b>hon</b>	→	<b><u>dono</u> hon</b> which book

- Kono shinbun wa Nihon no shinbun desu.**  
This newspaper is a Japanese newspaper.
- Sono pasokon to ano terebi o kudasai.**  
Please give me that computer and that TV over there.
- Yamada-san wa dono tokē o kaimashita ka.**  
Which watch did Mr Yamada buy?



## Exercise 2



Choose the right demonstrative and underline it as shown in the example.

*Example* (Kore Kono) hon wa watashi no hon desu.

- 1 (Are Ano) hito wa watashi no ane desu.
- 2 (Sore Sono) wa Nihon no kētai denwa desu ka.
- 3 Anata no kaban wa (dore dono) kaban desu ka.
- 4 (Kore Kono) wa nan no denchi desu ka.

## Language point



### Asking questions with interrogatives (2):

dare **and** dare no

The interrogative **dare** is equivalent to the English “who?”. When the possessive marker **no** is attached to it (i.e. **dare no**), it means “whose?”. The politer counterparts are **donata** and **donata no** respectively. The noun after the possessive marker **no** can be omitted.

a. Q: **Ano hito wa dare (donata) desu ka.**

Who is that person?

A: **(Ano hito wa) Yamada-san desu.**

That person is Mr Yamada.

b. Q: **Kore wa dare no (donata no) hon desu ka.**

Whose book is this?

A: **(Sore wa) watashi no (hon) desu.**

That is my book.

## Exercise 3

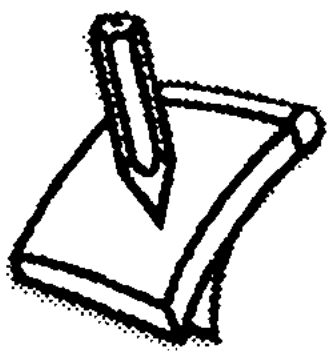


Rearrange the word order so that the sentences make sense.

*Example* denwa/watashi/no/desu/kono/wa

*Kono denwa wa watashi no desu.*

- 1 desu/ka/kore/wa/no/dare/jūsu *Kore*
- 2 wa/sono/hito/desu/ka/dare
- 3 ano/no/jisho/watashi/wa/desu



## Exercise 4 (CD 1; 34)

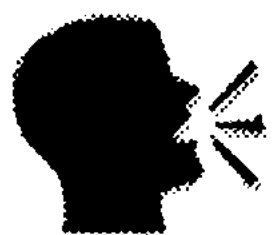


You will hear a series of conversations between a male and a female. They are talking about who owns which item. First write the name of the item in Japanese. Then listen to their conversation and indicate the owner of the item by choosing the correct letter from the box below.

*Example* a pair of shoes kutsu [c]

- |                     |       |     |
|---------------------|-------|-----|
| 1 a battery         | _____ | [ ] |
| 2 a pair of glasses | _____ | [ ] |
| 3 a watch           | _____ | [ ] |

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| a. Sumisu-san  | b. Yamamoto-san |
| c. Howaito-san | d. Honda-san    |



## Dialogue 3



How much is that camera over there? (CD 1; 35)

Miss Garcia has come to a department store to buy a new camera. She is now being served by a male shop clerk.

- 
- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| TEN'IN   | Irasshaimase.                                 |
| GARUSHIA | Sumimasen. Ano kamera wa ikura desu ka.       |
| TEN'IN   | Ano kamera wa sanman-nisen-en desu.           |
| GARUSHIA | Jā, kono kamera wa ikura desu ka.             |
| TEN'IN   | Sono kamera wa niman-kyūsen-kyūhyaku-en desu. |
| GARUSHIA | Sō desu ka. Jā, kono kamera o kudasai.        |
| TEN'IN   | Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.                       |
- 
- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| SHOP CLERK  | <i>May I help you?</i>  |
| MISS GARCIA | <i>Excuse me but how much is that camera over there?</i>      |
| SHOP CLERK  | <i>That camera over there is 32,000 yen.</i>                  |
| MISS GARCIA | <i>Then, how much is this camera?</i>                         |
| SHOP CLERK  | <i>That camera is 29,900 yen.</i>                             |
| MISS GARCIA | <i>Is that so? Well then, can I have this camera, please?</i> |
| SHOP CLERK  | <i>Thank you very much indeed.</i>                            |
-

## Vocabulary



<b>ten'in</b>	shop clerk/assistant	<b>sen</b>	(one) thousand
<b>irasshaimase</b>	Welcome, May I help you?	<b>hyaku</b>	(one) hundred
<b>ikura</b>	how much?	<b>-en</b>	yen (Japanese currency)
<b>-man</b>	ten thousand	<b>-o kudasai</b>	please give me . . . , I will have . . .

## Language point



## Numbers up to 1,000,000

<i>hyaku</i> (100)		<i>sen</i> (1000)		<i>man</i> (10,000)	
100	<b>hyaku</b>	1,000	<b>sen</b>	10,000	<b>ichi man</b>
200	<b>ni hyaku</b>	2,000	<b>ni sen</b>	20,000	<b>ni man</b>
300*	<b>san byaku</b>	3,000*	<b>san zen</b>	30,000	<b>san man</b>
400	<b>yon hyaku</b>	4,000	<b>yon sen</b>	40,000	<b>yon man</b>
500	<b>go hyaku</b>	5,000	<b>go sen</b>	50,000	<b>go man</b>
600*	<b>rop-pyaku</b>	6,000	<b>roku sen</b>	60,000	<b>roku man</b>
700	<b>nana hyaku</b>	7,000	<b>nana sen</b>	70,000	<b>nana man</b>
800*	<b>hap-pyaku</b>	8,000*	<b>has-sen</b>	80,000	<b>hachi man</b>
900	<b>kyū hyaku</b>	9,000	<b>kyū sen</b>	90,000	<b>kyū man</b>
				<u>100,000</u>	<b>jū man</b>
				<u>1,000,000</u>	<b>hyaku man</b>

$$193 = 100 + 90 + 3$$

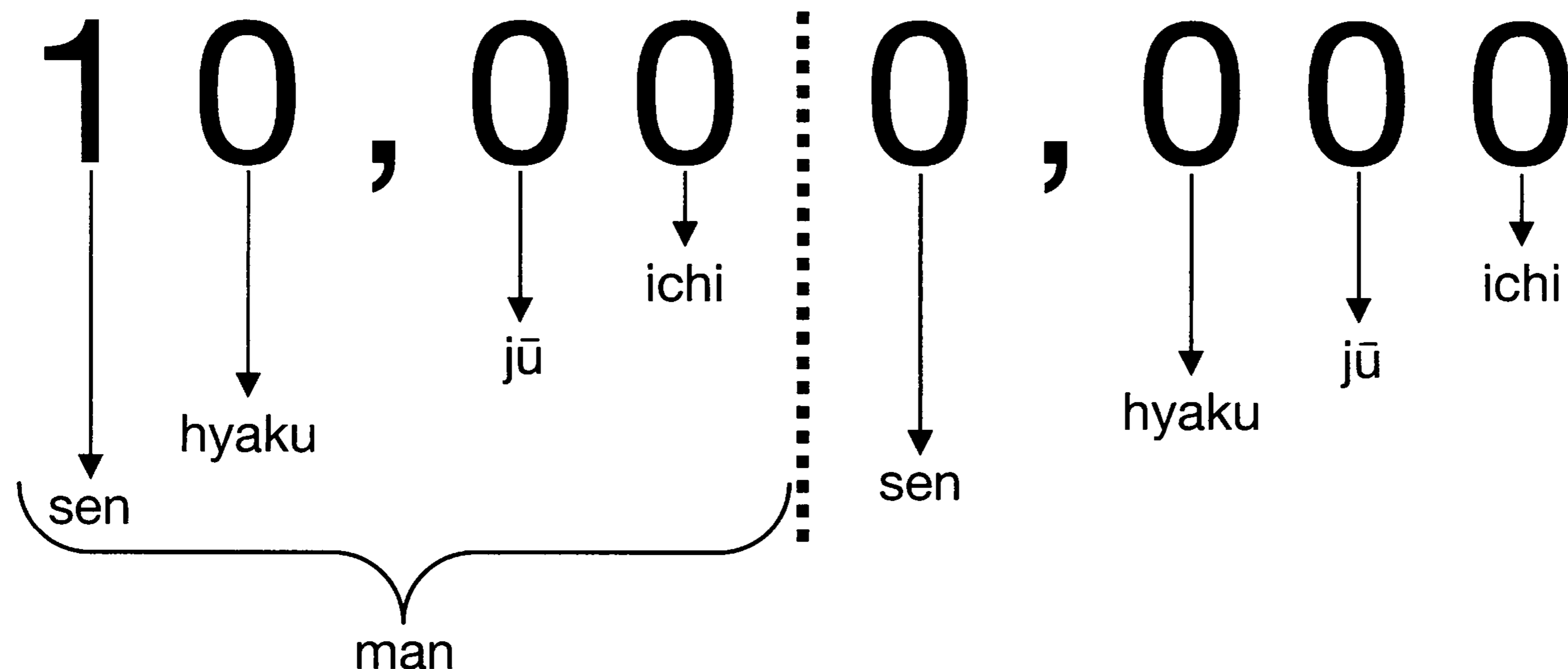
$$= \text{hyaku-kyūjū-san}$$

$$3,765 = 3000 + 700 + 60 + 5$$

$$= \text{sanzen-nanahyaku-rokujū-go}$$

$$84,201 = 80,000 + 4,000 + 200 + 1$$

$$= \text{hachiman-yonsen-nihyaku-ichi}$$





## Exercise 5

Read out the following numbers in Japanese and spell them out as shown in the example.

*Example* 1,204 *sen-nihyaku-yon*

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1 159   | 2 382    |
| 3 790   | 4 1,654  |
| 5 3,725 | 6 98,900 |



## Language point

### **Giving and asking a price**

The Japanese currency is **en**. To say “This book is 630 yen”, you use the **X wa Y desu** structure as below:

a. **Kono hon wa 630(roppyaku-sanjū)-en desu.**

This book is 630 yen.

The Japanese word for “how much?” is **ikura**. To ask the price of a certain item, you do not change the word order but use the **X wa ikura desu ka** structure.

b. A: **Kono hon wa ikura desu ka.**      How much is this book?

B: **(Sono hon wa) 630-en desu.**      That book is 630 yen.



## Exercise 6

Complete the following dialogues between you and a shop clerk as shown in the example.

*Example* that pair of shoes over there/5,800 yen

YOU                    *Sumimasen. Ano kutsu wa ikura desu ka.*

SHOP CLERK        *Ano kutsu wa 5,800-en desu.*

YOU                    *Sō desu ka. Jā, ano kutsu o kudasai.*

1 this bag/22,900 yen

YOU

SHOP CLERK

YOU

2 that mobile phone/35,000 yen

YOU

SHOP CLERK

YOU

## Exercise 7



Choose the appropriate interrogatives from the box below and write them in the spaces as shown in the example.

*Example* Kono pasokon wa dare no desu ka.  
Yamamoto-san no desu.

- 1 Kore wa \_\_\_\_\_ no zasshi desu ka. Kamera no zasshi desu.
- 2 Sumisu-san no kasa wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka. Kore desu.
- 3 Ano hito wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka. Honda-san desu.
- 4 Kore wa \_\_\_\_\_ kamera desu ka. Nihon no kamera desu.
- 5 Howaito-san no kōhī wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka. Kochira desu.
- 6 Resutoran wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka. Soko desu.
- 7 Kono bīru wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka. 480-en desu.

nan, ikura, ~~dare no~~, doko, dore, dochira, doko no, dare

## Vocabulary

**doko no** + noun which company's/country's



## Exercise 8 (CD 1; 36)

The following is a monologue by Miss Tanaka. Read it out and complete the following English text accordingly.



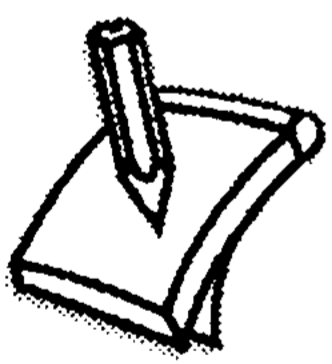
Kore wa Nihon no pasokon desu. Kono pasokon wa Kimura-san no desu. Jūniman-en desu. Are wa Ijirisu no kētai denwa desu. Ano kētai denwa wa Jonson-san no desu. Kimura-san no kētai denwa dewa arimasen. Ano kētai denwa wa niman-nanasen-en desu.

The item near Miss Tanaka is <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. That item belongs to <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and cost <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. The item far from Miss Tanaka is <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and is from <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. Its price is <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

## Hiragana of Unit 4

In this unit, you will learn the last 16 new hiragana. None of them has a voiced counterpart. Practise each Hiragana as many times as you want on a spare sheet of paper.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
ma	ま	ま	ま	ra	ら	ら	ら
mi	み	み	み	ri	り	り	り
mu	む	む	む	ru	る	る	る
me	め	め	め	re	れ	れ	れ
mo	も	も	も	ro	ろ	ろ	ろ
ya	や	や	や	wa	わ	わ	わ
yu	ゆ	ゆ	ゆ	o	を	を	を
yo	よ	よ	よ	n	ん	ん	ん



### Exercise 9

Read out the following Japanese words written in hiragana and write how to read them in the brackets below.

1 もやし beansprout

( \_ \_ \_ )

2 ゆみ bow

( \_ \_ )

3 わに crocodile

( \_ \_ )

4 わたし I

( \_ \_ \_ )

5 よぞら night sky

( \_ \_ \_ )

6 やま mountain

( \_ \_ )

7 むかし long time ago

( \_ \_ \_ )

8 ゆうめい famous

( \_ \_ \_ )

9 ほうれんそう spinach

( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ )

10 わたしは にほんごの がくせいです。

I am a Japanese language student.

( \_ .)

# Unit Five

## Donna ongaku ga suki desu ka

What kind of music do you like?

In this unit you will learn about:

- two types of adjectives: **i**-adjectives and **na**-adjectives
- how to describe things/places/people using adjectives
- adverbs of degree: very/not really . . .
- how to connect sentences using **soshite**, **demo** and **ga**
- how to talk about one's likes and dislikes
- hiragana of Unit 5

きや きゆ きよ しゃ しゅ しょ ちゃ ちゅ ちよ  
にや にゆ によ ひゃ ひゅ ひよ みや みゅ みよ



## Dialogue 1



How is life in Japan? (CD 1; 37)



It has been two months since Mr Johnson started work in Tokyo. He is now talking with Mrs Imai, his colleague and mentor.

- 
- IMAI Jonson-san. Nihon no sēkatsu wa dō desu ka.  
JONSON Nihon no sēkatsu wa tanoshī desu.  
IMAI Sō desu ka. Jā, Nihon no tabemono wa dō desu ka.  
JONSON Nihon no kappu rāmen wa totemo oishī desu. Soshite totemo yasui desu.  
IMAI Sō desu ne.

- MRS IMAI *Mr Johnson, how is life in Japan?*  
 MR JOHNSON *It is enjoyable.*  
 MRS IMAI *Is that so? Then, what do you think of Japanese food?*  
 MR JOHNSON *Japanese cup (instant) noodles are very tasty. And they are very cheap.*  
 MRS IMAI *That is true/I think so, too.*



## Vocabulary

<b>sēkatsu</b>	life	<b>totemo</b>	very much
<b>tabemono</b>	food	<b>oishī (i-adj.)</b>	delicious, tasty
<b>kappu rāmen</b>	instant noodles	<b>soshite</b>	and (sentence link)
<b>tanoshī (i-adj.)</b>	enjoyable	<b>yasui (i-adj.)</b>	cheap
<b>dō</b>	how?	<b>sō desu ne</b>	That is true, I agree with you.



## Language point

### Adjectives (1): i-adjectives and na-adjectives

There are two types of Japanese adjective: **i**-adjectives and **na**-adjectives. The general rule is that **i**-adjectives have the “i” sound before **desu**, whereas **na**-adjectives do not, with a few exceptions (marked by \*).

#### *i*-adjectives

<b>ōkī</b>	big
<b>chīsai</b>	small
<b>atarashī</b>	new
<b>furui</b>	old
<b>ī (or yoi)</b>	good
<b>warui</b>	bad
<b>takai</b>	expensive, high, tall
<b>yasui</b>	cheap
<b>hikui</b>	low

#### *na*-adjectives

<b>shinsetsu(na)</b>	kind
<b>*<sup>1</sup>yūmē(na)</b>	famous
<b>nigiyaka(na)</b>	lively
<b>*<sup>2</sup>kirē(na)</b>	beautiful, clean
<b>shizuka(na)</b>	quiet
<b>benri(na)</b>	convenient
<b>fuben(na)</b>	inconvenient
<b>suki(na)</b>	like
<b>*kirai(na)</b>	dislike



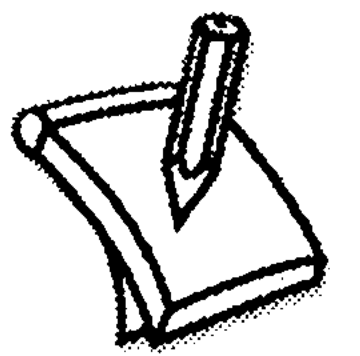
*i*-adjectives

<b>yasashī</b>	easy
<b>muzukashī</b>	difficult
<b>atsui</b>	hot
<b>samui</b>	cold (temperature)
<b>tsumetai</b>	cold (touch)
<b>omoshiroi</b>	interesting, funny
<b>tsumaranai</b>	boring, uninteresting
<b>oishī</b>	delicious, tasty
<b>mazui</b>	tasteless

*na*-adjectives

<b>jōzu(na)</b>	good at
<b>heta(na)</b>	poor at
<b>hima(na)</b>	free (time)
<b>*genki(na)</b>	vigorous, lively, fine

Notes:

\*1 **Yūmē** is spelled as **yuumei** in hiragana.\*2 **Kirē** is spelled as **kirei** in hiragana.Exercise 1Are they *i*-adjectives or **na**-adjectives? Write “**i**” or “**na**” in the brackets.*Example* samui ( *I* )

1 jōzu ( )	2 oishī ( )	3 takai ( )
4 shizuka ( )	5 omoshiroi ( )	6 furui ( )
7 shinsetsu ( )	8 nigiyaka ( )	9 fuben ( )
10 ī ( )	11 kirai ( )	12 yasui ( )

## Language points

**Adjectives (2): non-past/past and affirmative/negative***i*-adjectives and **na**-adjectives inflect differently as shown below:*i*-adjectives

<b>takai</b>	<b>desu</b>	is/are expensive
<b>takakunai</b>	<b>desu</b>	is/are not expensive
<b>takakatta</b>	<b>desu</b>	was/were expensive
<b>takakunakatta</b>	<b>desu</b>	was/were not expensive

Note that “**i**” is dropped from the last three inflections.

**na**-adjectives

shizuka <b>na</b>	<u>desu</u>	is/are quiet
shizuka <b>na</b>	<u>dewa*</u> arimasen	is/are not quiet
shizuka <b>na</b>	<u>deshita</u>	was/were quiet
shizuka <b>na</b>	<u>dewa*</u> arimasendeshita	was/were not quiet

\* “Dewa” becomes **ja** in colloquial Japanese.

Note that **ī** as “good” inflects irregularly.

<b>ī</b> desu	good	<u>yokunai</u> desu	not good
<u>yokatta</u> desu	was good	<u>yokunakatta</u> desu	was not good

**Adjectives (3): X wa + adjective**

A sentence which takes an adjective uses the following pattern:



- Kono hon wa takai desu.**  
This book is expensive.
- Ano hon wa omoshirokatta desu.**  
That book was funny.
- Yamada-san wa shinsetsu desu.**  
Mr Yamada is kind.

The interrogative for adjectives is **dō**, equivalent to English “how”.

- Q: **Sono hon wa dō desu ka.**  
How is that book?  
  
A: **(Kono hon wa) omoshiroi desu.**  
This book is interesting.
- Q: **Kinō no pātī wa dō deshita ka.**  
How was yesterday’s party?  
  
A: **(Kinō no pātī wa) nigiyaka deshita.**  
It was lively.

## Exercise 2



Complete the following adjective form table.

	<i>Non-past affirmative</i>	<i>Non-past negative</i>	<i>Past affirmative</i>	<i>Past negative</i>
<b>i</b>	<b>atarashī desu</b>	1)	2)	3)
	<b>takai desu</b>	4)	5)	6)
	<b>samui desu</b>	7)	8)	9)
<b>na</b>	<b>hima desu</b>	10)	11)	12)
	<b>genki desu</b>	13)	14)	15)
	<b>benri desu</b>	16)	17)	18)

## Exercise 3



Complete the following sentences as shown in the example.

*Example* Watashi wa genki desu. (I am fine.)

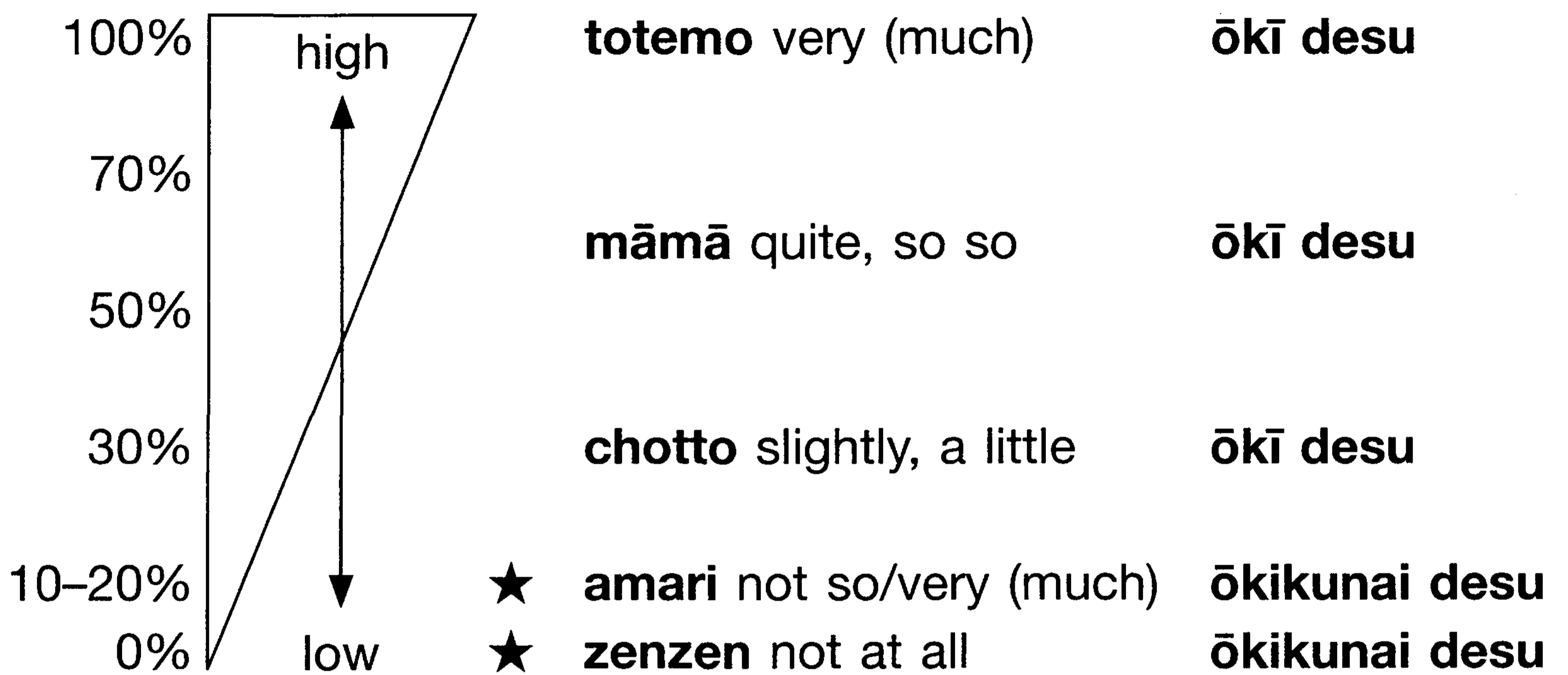
- Kinō wa \_\_\_\_\_ (It was cold yesterday.)
- Kono jisho wa \_\_\_\_\_ (This dictionary is not good.)
- (O)sushi wa \_\_\_\_\_ (Sushi is not cheap.)
- Tōkyō wa \_\_\_\_\_ (Tokyo was lively.)
- Kyōto no hōteru wa \_\_\_\_\_ (The hotel that I stayed at in Kyoto was not expensive.)

## Language point

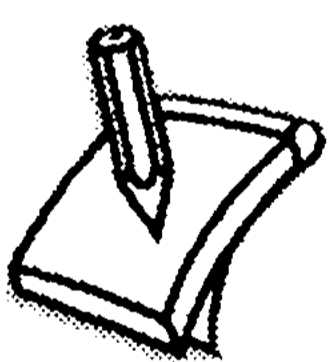


### **Adverbs of degree: very/not really . . .**

The adverb of degree is placed right before the adjective. Note that **amari** “not so much” and **zenzen** “not at all” always take the negative form of the adjective (★).



- a. **Kono machi wa *totemo* ōkī desu.**  
This town is *very* big.
- b. **Kono machi wa *māmā* ōkī desu.**  
This town is *reasonably* big.
- c. **Kono machi wa *chotto* ōkī desu.**  
This town is *a bit* big.
- d. **Kono machi wa *amari* ōkikunai desu.**  
This town is not so big.
- e. **Kono machi wa *zenzen* ōkikunai desu.**  
This town is not big at all.



## Exercise 4

Answer the following questions, using the adjectives given in the brackets. Use the adverbs of degree (**totemo**, **māmā**, **chotto**, **amari** and **zenzen**) as well.

*Example* Nihon-go wa omoshiroi desu ka. (yes, very much)  
*Hai, Nihon-go wa totemo omoshiroi desu.*

- 1 Kinō no tenki wa yokatta desu ka. (no, not good at all)
- 2 Hiragana wa dō desu ka. (not so difficult)
- 3 Nihon no tabemono wa dō desu ka. (a little bit expensive)



## Vocabulary

tenki weather

## Dialogue 2



What kind of town is Asakusa? (CD 1; 38)



Mr Johnson and Mrs Imai have just finished a meeting and are now walking back to the office.

JONSON Imai-san no uchi wa doko desu ka.  
 IMAI Asakusa desu.  
 JONSON Asakusa wa donna machi desu ka.  
 IMAI Totemo omoshiroi machi desu. Soshite nigiyakana machi desu.  
 JONSON Sō desu ka. Ī desu ne.

MR JOHNSON *Where is your home, Mrs Imai?*  
 MRS IMAI *It is in Asakusa.*  
 MR JOHNSON *What kind of town/city is Asakusa?*  
 MRS IMAI *It is a very interesting city. And it is a very lively city.*  
 MR JOHNSON *Really? That is good.*

## Vocabulary



**Asakusa** Asakusa, a place in Tokyo  
**donna** + noun what kind of? (+ noun)

## Language point



### Adjectives (4): i/na-adjective + noun

i-adjective + noun

When i-adjectives modify a noun, **desu** is dropped as below:

**omoshiroi hon** an interesting book  
**takai hon** an expensive book

**na**-adjective + noun

When **na**-adjectives modify a noun, **desu** is dropped and **na** is inserted as below:

**kirē na hon**      a beautiful book  
**yūmē na hon**      a famous book

The tense and affirmative/negative can be expressed at the end of the sentence.

- a. **Ashita wa ī hi desu.**      Tomorrow is a good day.  
 b. **Kinō wa ī hi deshita.**      Yesterday was a good day.

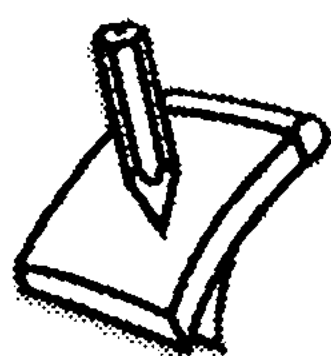
The interrogative for an adjective + noun is **donna**, equivalent to the English “what kind of”. Note that **donna** is always followed by a noun.

- c. Q: **Nihon wa donna kuni desu ka.**  
       What kind of country is Japan?

A: **(Nihon wa) kirēna kuni desu.**  
       It is a beautiful country.

- d. Q: **Kinō no ēga wa donna ēga deshita ka.**  
       What kind of film was yesterday’s film?

A: **(Kinō no ēga wa) omoshiroi ēga deshita.**  
       It was an enjoyable film.



## Exercise 5

Choose the correct answer and circle it.

- |                 |                      |                       |
|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 (a. oishī     | b. oishīna) tabemono | (delicious food)      |
| 2 (a. suki      | b. sukina) ongaku    | (favourite music)     |
| 3 (a. omoshiroi | b. omoshiroina) ēga  | (an interesting film) |
| 4 (a. kirē      | b. kirēna) hana      | (a beautiful flower)  |
| 5 (a. warui     | b. waruina) tenki    | (bad weather)         |
| 6 (a. shinsetsu | b. shinsetsuna) hito | (a kind person)       |



## Vocabulary

ongaku    music

hana    flower

ēga      film

## Language point



### Connecting sentences: **soshite**, **demo** and **ga**

**Soshite** connects sentences which have the same value (i.e. positive–positive or negative–negative) or a casual relationship (i.e. I am Japanese. And I am a student), whereas **demo** and **ga** link sentences which have an opposite or contrastive meaning. Note that a sentence before **soshite** and **demo** must be ended firmly, but this is not the case with **ga**.

- Imai-san wa genki desu. Soshite shinsetsu desu.**  
Mrs Imai is energetic. And she is kind.
- Nihon-go wa omoshiroi desu. Demo muzukashī desu.**  
Japanese is interesting. But it is difficult.
- Nihon-go wa omoshiroi desu ga, muzukashī desu.**  
Japanese is interesting but difficult.

## Dialogue 3



### Do you like Russian music? (CD 1; 39)



During a lunch break, Mr Johnson is browsing in a CD store, when Mrs Imai happens to enter and sees him examining one of the CDs.

- 
- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| IMAI       | Ā, Jonson-san. Sore wa doko no ongaku desu ka.                    |
| JONSON     | Kore wa Roshia no ongaku desu.                                    |
| IMAI       | Jonson-san wa Roshia no ongaku ga suki desu ka.                   |
| JONSON     | Hai, daisuki desu. Roshia no ongaku wa totemo kirē desu.          |
| <br>       |   |
| MRS IMAI   | <i>Oh, Mr Johnson. What country's music is that?</i>              |
| MR JOHNSON | <i>This is Russian music.</i>                                     |
| MRS IMAI   | <i>Do you like Russian music, Mr Johnson?</i>                     |
| MR JOHNSON | <i>Yes, I like it very much. Russian music is very beautiful.</i> |
-



## Vocabulary

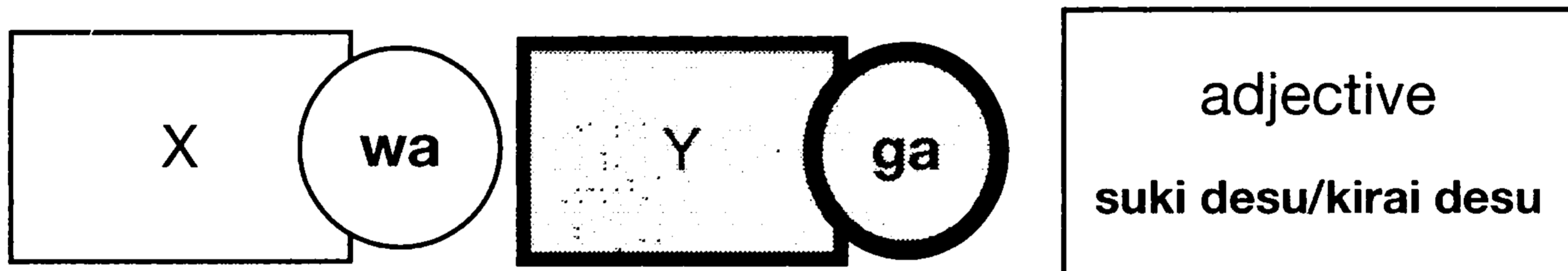
ā	oh	<b>daisuki(na)</b> like very much (na-adj.)
<b>ga</b> (particle)	[subject marker]	



## Language point

### Likes and dislikes

The Japanese equivalent of “like” and “dislike” are **suki(na)** and **kirai(na)** respectively. Unlike English, they are adjectives and inflect in the same way as **na**-adjectives. The **X wa Y ga** adjective structure is used to express one’s likes and dislikes, with X indicating who has such a feeling and Y indicating towards what or whom such a feeling is directed. Y is marked by **ga**, the subject marker.



a. **Watashi wa Nihon no ongaku ga suki desu.**

I like Japanese music.

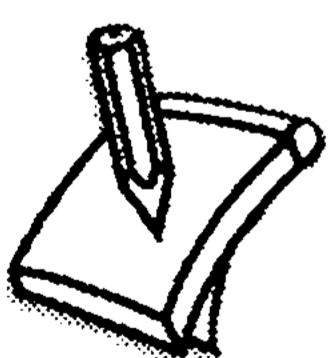
b. **Jonson-san wa (o)sushi ga amari suki dewa arimasen.**

Mr Johnson does not like sushi much.

**Jōzu(na)** and **heta(na)**, which mean “be good at” and “be poor at”, also take the above pattern.

c. **Imai-san wa Ēgo ga totemo jōzu desu.**

Mrs Imai is very good at English.



## Exercise 6

What does Karen like/dislike? What is she good/poor at?

*Example (like/tennis) Karen-san wa tenisu ga suki desu.*

- 1 (like/music)
- 2 (dislike/TV)
- 3 (be good at/piano)
- 4 (be poor at/sports)



## Vocabulary

**tenisu** tennis

**piano** piano

**supōtsu** sports



### Exercise 7 (CD 1; 40)

Listen to the conversation between Taro (male) and Mariko (female) and complete the following sentences.



1 Taro likes \_\_\_\_\_ but dislikes \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Mariko is good at \_\_\_\_\_ but poor at \_\_\_\_\_.

### Exercise 8 (CD 1; 41)

Michael (Maikeru) sent the following postcard to Michiko, his Japanese friend. Read out his letter and write ✓ if the statement agrees with the content and ✗ if not.



Michiko-san e,

Genki desu ka. Watashi wa genki desu. Tōkyō wa dō desu ka. Watashi wa ima Ōsaka desu. Ōsaka wa totemo omoshiroi machi desu. Tenki wa māmā desu. Kinō wa samukatta desu ga, kyō wa samukunai desu. Watashi wa kinō okonomiyaki o tabemashita. Totemo oishikatta desu. Soshite yasukatta desu. Watashi wa ashita Kyōto desu. Tanoshimi desu.

Jā, mata.

Maikeru yori

## Vocabulary

[name] + **e** dear (used in a letter)

**Tōkyō** Tokyo

**Ōsaka** Osaka

**okonomiyaki** Japanese pizza

**o tabemashita** ate (something)

**tanoshimi(na)** to look forward to (na-adj.)

**mata** again

[name] + **yori** from (used in a letter)



- 1 ( ) Michael thinks Osaka is a very interesting place.
- 2 ( ) The weather has been good for the last couple of days in Osaka.
- 3 ( ) Michael tried Japanese pizza, which he thought was tasty but slightly expensive.

## Hiragana of Unit 5

“や” “ゆ” and “よ” can be attached to another hiragana to create a combined sound. For example, き (ki) + や (ya) becomes きゃ (kya) and に (ni) + ゆ (yu) becomes にゅ (nyu). In such cases, “や”, “ゆ” and “よ” are written one quarter of the usual size.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
kya	きゃ	きゃ	きゃ	nya	にゃ	にゃ	にゃ
kyu	きゅ	きゅ	きゅ	nyu	にゅ	にゅ	にゅ
kyo	きょ	きょ	きょ	nyo	にょ	にょ	にょ
sha	しゃ	しゃ	しゃ	hya	ひゃ	ひゃ	ひゃ
shu	しゅ	しゅ	しゅ	hyu	ひゅ	ひゅ	ひゅ
sho	しよ	しよ	しよ	hyo	ひよ	ひよ	ひよ
cha	ちゃ	ちゃ	ちゃ	mya	みゃ	みゃ	みゃ
chu	ちゅ	ちゅ	ちゅ	myu	みゅ	みゅ	みゅ
cho	ちよ	ちよ	ちよ	myo	みよ	みよ	みよ

## Exercise 9



Read out the following Japanese words written in hiragana and write how to read them in the brackets below.

1 かしゅ singer

( \_ \_ )

2 きょう today

( \_ \_ )

3 しゃちょう company CEO

( \_ \_ \_ )

4 ぎゅうにゅう milk

( \_ \_ \_ \_ )

5 きょうかしょ textbook

( \_ \_ \_ \_ )

6 ちゅうしゃじょう car park

( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ )

# Unit Six

## Watashi wa rainen Nihon e ikimasu

I will go to Japan next year



In this unit you will learn about:

- how to conjugate a verb (non-past and past)
- how to talk about where one goes, comes and returns to
- saying “to” (somewhere), “by” (method of transportation) and “with” (someone)
- terms for places, methods of transportation and time
- hiragana: double consonant sound and long vowel sound



### Dialogue 1



Where will you go this winter? (CD 1; 42)

Miss Walker is an exchange student at a Japanese university in Tokyo. She is now talking with her Japanese friend, Mr Suzuki, about the winter holiday.

---

SUZUKI	Wōkā-san wa kotoshi no fuyu doko e ikimasu ka.
WŌKĀ	Watashi wa Igirisu e kaerimasu. Suzuki-san wa?
SUZUKI	Watashi wa doko(e)mo ikimasen. Demo watashi wa rainen Igirisu e ikimasu.
WŌKĀ	Itsu ikimasu ka.
SUZUKI	Rainen no natsu ikimasu.

MR SUZUKI	<i>Where are you going this winter, Miss Walker?</i>
MISS WALKER	<i>I am going back to the UK. How about you?</i>

MR SUZUKI *I am not going anywhere. But I am going to the UK next year.*

MISS WALKER *When are you going?*

MR SUZUKI *I am going (there) next summer.*

## Vocabulary

A  
CB

<b>fuyu</b>	winter	<b>doko(e)mo</b>	nowhere, anywhere
<b>e (particle)</b>	to [direction marker]	<b>ikimasen</b>	do not (does not) go
<b>ikimasu</b>	to go	<b>natsu</b>	summer
<b>kaerimasu</b>	to go back, return		

## Language points



### Places

In Units 1 and 3 you learned various “place” nouns such as those below:

<b>Nihon</b>	Japan	<b>yūbinkyoku</b>	post office
<b>Igirisu</b>	UK	<b>gakkō</b>	school
<b>Amerika</b>	USA	<b>kaisha</b>	company
<b>Chūgoku</b>	China	<b>uchi</b>	house

In this unit, you will learn more place-related nouns.

#### *Buildings*

<b>dōbutsuen</b>	zoo
<b>suizokukan</b>	aquarium
<b>hakubutsukan</b>	museum
<b>bijutsukan</b>	art gallery
<b>kenchō</b>	prefectural office
<b>shiyakusho</b>	city hall, town hall

#### *Area*

<b>ajia</b>	Asia
<b>yōroppa</b>	Europe
<b>gaikoku</b>	foreign country

## Going places (1): verb conjugation

Unit 6 introduces three Japanese verbs:

<b>ikimasu</b>	to go
<b>imasu</b>	to come
<b>kaerimasu</b>	to go back, return

**Iki-**, **ki-** and **kaeri-** are the verb stems and remain unchanged whereas **masu** changes according to the meaning as shown below:

<b>iki masu</b>	go	(non-past affirmative)
<b>iki masen</b>	do/does not go	(non-past negative)
<b>iki mashita</b>	went	(past affirmative)
<b>iki masendeshita</b>	did not go	(past negative)



## Exercise 1

Write the following verbs appropriately as in the example.

*Example* (went) *ikimashita*

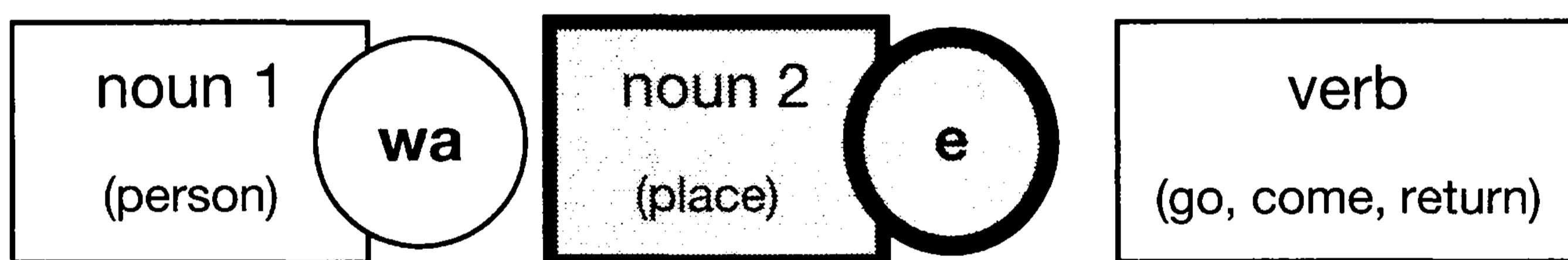
- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 (came)        | 2 (did not go)   |
| 3 (returned)    | 4 (will come)    |
| 5 (do not come) | 6 (will go back) |



## Language points

### **Going places (2): direction marker e + go/come/return**

The particle **e** is a direction marker and indicates which direction one moves towards. To say where someone goes, you use the following pattern:



- a. **Watashi wa shiyakusho e ikimasu.** I will go to the city hall.  
 b. **Kimura-san wa uchi e kaerimashita.** Mr Kimura went home.

To ask where someone goes, you use **doko** “where?” in the position of Noun 2.

- c. Q: **Jonson-san wa doko e ikimashita ka.**

Where has Mr Johnson gone?

A: **(Jonson-san wa) bijutsukan e ikimashita.**

He has gone to the art gallery.

Note that the spelling for the particle **e** is へ (**he**).

わたしは しゃくしょへ いきます。 I go to the city hall.

## Time-related vocabulary

In Unit 2, you learned time-related vocabulary such as “day of the week”, “month”, “date”, etc. Here is some new vocabulary:

### Seasons and holidays

<b>haru</b>	spring	<b>fuyu</b>	winter
<b>natsu</b>	summer	<b>yasumi</b>	holiday
<b>aki</b>	autumn	<b>natsu-yasumi</b>	summer holiday

### Words with **mai** (every)

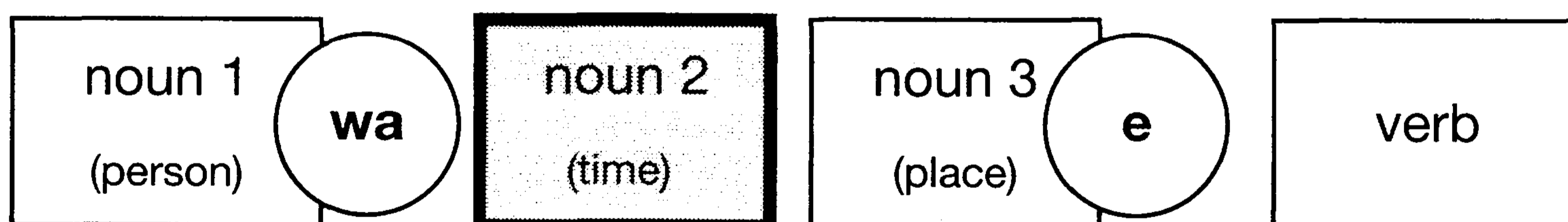
<b>mainichi</b>	every day	<b>maishū</b>	every week
<b>maiasa</b>	every morning	<b>maitzuki</b>	every month
<b>maiban</b>	every evening	<b>maitoshi</b>	every year

### Others

<b>shūmatsu</b>	(this/last) weekend	<b>saikin</b>	recently
-----------------	---------------------	---------------	----------

## Going places (3): when

The diagram below shows where to put the time-related information in a sentence:

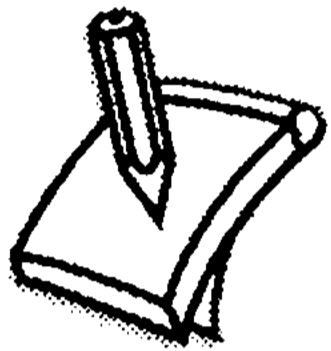


- Watashi wa shūmatsu dōbutsuen e ikimasu.**  
I go to the zoo at the weekend.
- Watashi wa natsu-yasumi yōroppa e ikimashita.**  
I went to Europe during the summer holiday.

To ask when one goes to a certain place, you use **itsu** “when” in the place of the time.

c. Q: **Maiku-san wa itsu Kyōto e ikimashita ka.**  
When did you go to Kyoto, Mike?

A: **(Watashi wa) kinō ikimashita.**  
 I went there yesterday.



## Exercise 2

Translate the following English sentences into Japanese.

- 1 I go to Japan every year.
- 2 My friend didn't come to my house yesterday.
- 3 Mr Suzuki will go to the museum this weekend.
- 4 Do you go to school every day, Miss Akita?



## Exercise 3 (CD 1; 43)

Listen to the conversation and find out where and when Yoko and Mike are going.



- |        |                     |                |
|--------|---------------------|----------------|
| 1 Yoko | a) what city: _____ | b) when: _____ |
| 2 Mike | a) what city: _____ | b) when: _____ |



## Dialogue 2



I went to the art gallery with my friend **(CD 1; 44)**

Mr Suzuki and Miss Walker are talking about what they did yesterday.

- |        |  |
|--------|--|
| WŌKĀ   | Suzuki-san wa kinō doko e ikimashita ka. |
| SUZUKI | Watashi wa kinō bijutsukan e ikimashita. |
| WŌKĀ   | Dare to ikimashita ka.                   |
| SUZUKI | Tomodachi to ikimashita.                 |
| WŌKĀ   | Nani de ikimashita ka.                   |
| SUZUKI | Densha de ikimashita.                    |
| WŌKĀ   | Sō desu ka.                              |



MISS WALKER *Where did you go yesterday, Mr Suzuki?*  
 MR SUZUKI *I went to the art gallery yesterday.*  
 MISS WALKER *Who did you go there with?*  
 MR SUZUKI *I went there with my friend.*  
 MISS WALKER *How did you go there?*  
 MR SUZUKI *I went there by train.*  
 MISS WALKER *Really?*

## Vocabulary



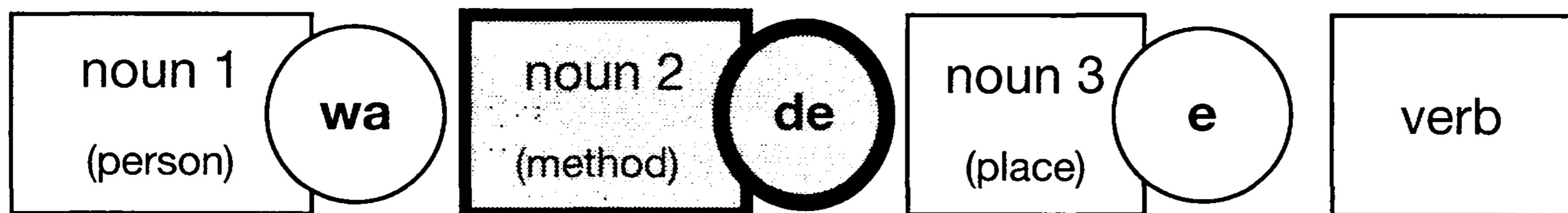
<b>dare to</b>	with whom?	<b>nani de</b>	by what? how?
<b>to</b> (particle)	with	<b>de</b> (particle)	by (means or tools)
<b>tomodachi</b>	friend(s)	<b>densha</b>	electric train

## Language points



### Going places (4): how

The particle which indicates the means of transportation or method is **de**.



- a. **Watashi wa basu de uchi e kaerimashita.**  
 I went home by bus.
- b. **Watashi wa mainichi jitensha de eki e ikimasu.**  
 I go to the station by bicycle every day.

To ask the means of transportation or method, either **nani de** or **nan de** is used.

- c. Q: **Maiku-san wa nani de kaisha e ikimasu ka.**  
How do you commute to the company, Mike?
- A: **Watashi wa densha de kaisha e ikimasu.**  
 I go there by train.

Note that “on foot” and “running” do not take **de** but are **aruite** and **hashitte** respectively.

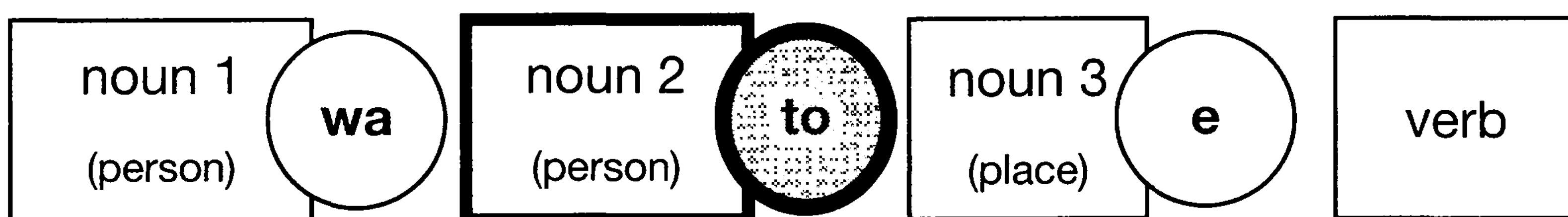
- d. **Watashi wa aruite gakkō e ikimasu.**  
I go to school on foot.

Here is a list of words for means of transportation:

<b>kuruma</b>	car	<b>densha</b>	train
<b>ōtobai</b>	motorcycle	<b>basu</b>	bus
<b>shinkansen</b>	bullet train	<b>takushī</b>	taxi
<b>hikōki</b>	aeroplane	<b>jitensha</b>	bicycle

## Going places (5): with whom

The particle **to** is equivalent to the English “with” and is used as below:



- a. **Watashi wa Lī-san to toshokan e ikimasu.**  
I go to the library with Miss Lee.

The interrogative to ask “who?” is **dare**. And “with whom?” is **dare to**.

- b. Q: **Maiku-san wa kinō dare to resutoran e ikimashita ka.**  
With whom did you go to the restaurant yesterday, Mike?

- A: **Watashi wa tomodachi to ikimashita.**  
I went there with my friends.

Note that **de** is used instead of **to** when indicating “with how many people”.

**hitori de** alone                      **futari de** (as) two people

- c. Q: **Maiku-san wa tomodachi sūpā e ikimasu ka.**  
Do you go to the supermarket with your friends, Mike?

- A: **Īe, (watashi wa) hitori de ikimasu.**  
No, I go there on my own.

## Exercise 4



Answer the following questions, using the information about Mrs Imai's holiday plans for this year.

When	How	With whom	Where
Spring holiday	by train	with friends	London
Summer holiday	by aeroplane	with family	Italy

*Example* Imai-san wa haru-yasumi doko e ikimasu ka.  
Rondon e ikimasu.

- 1 Imai-san wa haru-yasumi *nani de* Rondon e ikimasu ka.
- 2 Imai-san wa haru-yasumi *dare to* Rondon e ikimasu ka.
- 3 Imai-san wa *itsu* Itaria e ikimasu ka.
- 4 Imai-san wa *nani de* Itaria e ikimasu ka.
- 5 Imai-san wa *dare to* Itaria e ikimasu ka.

## Exercise 5 (CD 1; 45)



Read out the following sentences and translate them into English.

- 1 わたしは きのう ひとりで あるいて ゆうびんきょくへ いきました。
- 2 たなかさんは まいにち ともだちと でんしゃで がっこうへ いきます。



## Dialogue 3



How long does it take from London to Tokyo?  
(CD 1; 46)



Mr Suzuki is asking Miss Walker about the distance between Japan and the UK.

SUZUKI	Wōkā-san no Igirisu no uchi wa doko desu ka.
WŌKĀ	Rondon desu.
SUZUKI	Rondon kara Tōkyō made hikōki de donokurai kakarimasu ka.
WŌKĀ	Sō desu ne. Rondon kara Tōkyō made 10-jikan gurai kakarimasu.
SUZUKI	Tōi desu ne.

- MR SUZUKI *Miss Walker, where is your home in the UK?*  
 MISS WALKER *It is in London.*  
 MR SUZUKI *How long does it take from London to Tokyo by plane?*  
 MISS WALKER *Well, it takes around 10 hours.*  
 MR SUZUKI *It is a long way, isn't it?*



## Vocabulary

<b>Rondon</b>	London	<b>kakarimasu</b>	to take (time/cost)
<b>kara</b> (particle)	from	<b>-jikan</b>	hours
<b>made</b> (particle)	to	<b>gurai</b> (or <b>kurai</b> )	about, around
<b>donokurai</b>	how long? (time)	<b>tōi</b> (i-adj.)	far



## Language point

### Going places (6): how long

“How long?” in Japanese is **donokurai**. To ask how long it is from X to Y, you say **X kara Y made donokurai desu ka**.

- a. Q: **Tōkyō kara Ōsaka made donokurai desu ka.**  
 How long does it take from Tokyo to Osaka?

A: **Shinkansen de 2-jikan han desu.**  
 It is 2.5 hours by bullet train.

The answer could take various units of time, such as:

year	<b>-nen(kan)</b>	day	<b>-nichi (kan)</b>
month	<b>-kagetsu(kan)</b>	hour	<b>-jikan</b>
week	<b>-shū(kan)</b>	minute	<b>-fun/pun</b>

**Gurai** (or **kurai**) means “about, approximately” and comes after the unit of time. Although they are now used interchangeably, the general rule is that **gurai** follows nouns whereas **kurai** is used after pronouns such as **kono**, **sono**, or **ano**.

- b. **Shinkansen de 2-jikan han gurai (or kurai) desu.**  
 It is about 2.5 hours by bullet train.

**Desu** in the above pattern can be replaced by the verb **kakarimasu** “to take”.

c. **Tōkyō kara Ōsaka made shinkansen de 2-jikan han kurai kakarimasu.**

It takes about 2.5 hours from Tokyo to Osaka by bullet train.

## Exercise 6



Choose the appropriate interrogatives from the box below and write them in the spaces as shown in the example.

*Example* Kono pasokon wa dare no desu ka.  
Yamamoto-san no desu.

- 1 Imai-san wa \_\_\_\_\_ e ikimasu ka.  
Shiyakusho e ikimasu.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ to ikimasu ka.  
Hitori de ikimasu.
- 3 Jonson-san wa \_\_\_\_\_ Kyōto e ikimashita ka.  
Shūmatsu ikimashita.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ de ikimashita ka.  
Densha de ikimashita.
- 5 Ōsaka kara Kyōto made \_\_\_\_\_ deshita ka.  
Densha de 15-fun kurai deshita.

nani	donokurai	<del>dare no</del>	doko	dare	itsu
------	-----------	--------------------	------	------	------

## Exercise 7



Put the appropriate word in the space as shown in the example. Write **X** if nothing is required.

*Example* Watashi wa shūmatsu sūpā e ikimashita.

- 1 Tanaka-san wa Jonson-san \_\_\_\_ uchi e kaerimashita.
- 2 Watashi wa basu \_\_\_\_ densha \_\_\_\_ kaisha e ikimasu.
- 3 Yōko-san wa hitori \_\_\_\_ gakkō e ikimasu.
- 4 Maiku-san wa mainichi aruite \_\_\_\_ kōen e ikimasu.
- 5 Watashi wa saikin kazoku \_\_\_\_ gaikoku \_\_\_\_ ikimashita.



## Vocabulary

kōen park

## Hiragana of Unit 6

### Long vowel sound

A vowel with the symbol  $\bar{\quad}$ , pronounced longer than its counterpart without the symbol, is spelled out with two hiragana. The second hiragana is usually from the same vowel row as the first one, e.g. ああ (a a) for  $\bar{a}$ , すう (su u) for  $\bar{s}$ .

Note that **ei** (えい) and **ou** (おう) spellings are pronounced as  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{o}$  respectively. Therefore a word which contains **ei** or **ou** is pronounced differently from how it is spelled. However, they use hiragana from different vowel rows to lengthen the vowel sounds.

		<i>spelling</i>	<i>pronunciation</i>
$\bar{a}$ :	おかあさん mother	o ka <u>a</u> sa n	o k $\bar{a}$ sa n
$\bar{i}$ :	おいしいです tasty	o i shi <u>i</u> de su	o i sh $\bar{i}$ de su
$\bar{u}$ :	ぎゅうにゅう milk	gyu <u>u</u> nyu <u>u</u>	gy $\bar{u}$ ny $\bar{u}$
$\bar{e}$ :	ええ yes	e e	$\bar{e}$
	がくせい student	ga ku <u>se</u> i	ga ku s $\bar{e}$
$\bar{o}$ :	こおり ice	ko <u>o</u> ri	k $\bar{o}$ ri
	たんじょうび birthday	ta n jo <u>u</u> bi	ta n j $\bar{o}$ bi

### Double consonant sound: っ

Two identical consonants such as **kk**, **tt** or **ss** mean that you insert a pause between the previous and the following sound. For instance, **kitte** has a short pause between **ki** and **te**. This pause is represented by small っ as below:

<b>kitte</b>	きって	<b>kite</b>	きて
a postage stamp	○●○	please come	○○
<b>matte</b>	まって	<b>mate</b>	まで
please wait	○●○	wait (command)	○○

## Exercise 8



Circle the correct hiragana spelling for the transliterated Japanese words.

- |  |         |         |         |
|--|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 <b>gakkō</b> (school)                | a. がこう  | b. がっこう |         |
| 2 <b>sumō</b> ( <i>sumo</i> wrestling) | a. すもう  | b. すうも  |         |
| 3 <b>tokē</b> (watch, clock)           | a. とけ   | b. どうけい | c. とけい  |
| 4 <b>yukkuri</b> (slowly)              | a. ゆくり  | b. ゆっくり | c. ゆうくり |
| 5 <b>issai</b> (one year old)          | a. いいさい | b. さい   | c. いっさい |
| 6 <b>motto</b> (more)                  | a. もっと  | b. もうと  | c. もと   |

# Unit Seven

## Watashi wa yoku sūpā de hiru-gohan o kaimasu

I often buy lunch at the supermarket



In this unit you will learn about:

- describing one's daily activities (various verbs)
- describing when and where an action takes place
- saying "nothing", "no one" and "nowhere"
- how to ask the meaning of an unknown word
- terms of frequency
- katakana of Unit 7

アイウエオ カキクケコ サシスセソ ガギグゲゴ ザジズゼゾ



### Dialogue 1



What time did you get up yesterday? (CD 1; 47)

Mr Ito and Mrs Parker are talking about what they did yesterday.

ITŌ	Pākā-san wa kinō nan-ji ni okimashita ka.
PĀKĀ	Watashi wa gozen 7-ji ni okimashita.
ITŌ	Sorekara nani o shimashita ka.
PĀKĀ	Shinbun o yomimashita. Soshite, asa-gohan o tabemashita.
ITŌ	Sō desu ka. Sorekara doko e ikimashita ka.
PĀKĀ	Doko(e)mo ikimasendeshita.



MR ITO            *Mrs Parker, what time did you get up yesterday?*  
 MRS PARKER    *I got up at 7 a.m.*  
 MR ITO            *And what did you do?*  
 MRS PARKER    *I read the newspaper. Then I ate breakfast.*  
 MR ITO            *Is that so? Where did you go after that?*  
 MRS PARKER    *I did not go anywhere.*

## Vocabulary



<b>ni</b> (particle)	at, on, in [time marker]	<b>shinbun</b>	newspaper
<b>sorekara</b>	and then, also, after that	<b>yomimashita</b>	read (past tense)
<b>o</b> (particle)	[object marker]	<b>asa-gohan</b>	breakfast
<b>shimashita</b>	did (something)	<b>tabemashita</b>	ate
		<b>doko(e)mo</b>	nowhere

## Language points



### Verbs for daily activities

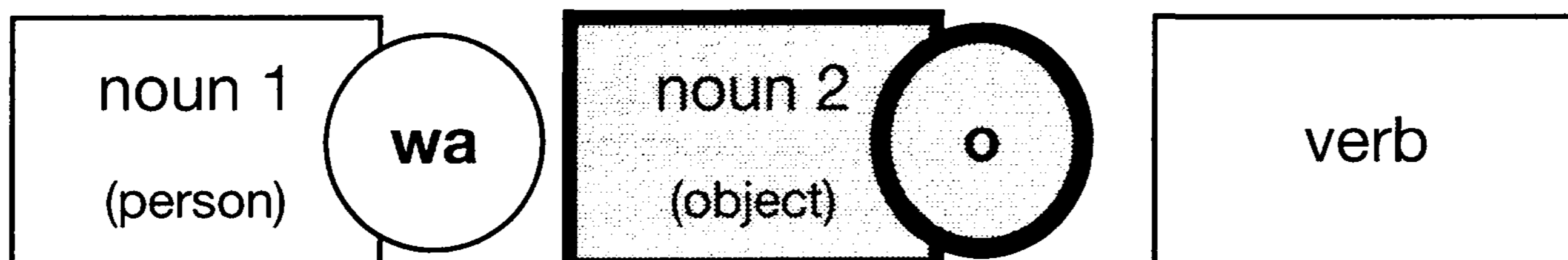
<b>okimasu</b>	to wake up, get up	<b>kikimasu</b>	to listen (to), hear
<b>nemasu</b>	to go to bed, sleep	<b>kakimasu</b>	to write
<b>tabemasu</b>	to eat	<b>yomimasu</b>	to read
<b>nomimasu</b>	to drink	<b>kaimasu</b>	to buy
<b>mimasu</b>	to see, watch, look	<b>shimasu</b>	to do

Some nouns can attach **shimasu** “do” to become a verb.

<b>benkyō</b>	study	<b>benkyō shimasu</b>	to study
<b>ryōri</b>	cooking	<b>ryōri shimasu</b>	to cook
<b>shigoto</b>	occupation, work	<b>shigoto shimasu</b>	to work
<b>kaimono</b>	shopping	<b>kaimono shimasu</b>	to do some shopping
<b>untēn</b>	driving	<b>untēn shimasu</b>	to drive

## Particle **o**: object marker

The particle **o** marks the object of a sentence such as “an apple” in “I eat an apple.” The object and its marker tend to come just before the verb.



- a. **Watashi wa maiasa ringo o tabemasu.**  
I eat an apple every morning.
- b. **Watashi no otōto wa kuruma o unten shimasen.**  
My younger brother does not drive a car.
- c. **Watashi wa kinō Nihon no hon o yomimashita.**  
I read a Japanese book yesterday.

Note that the spelling for the particle **o** is を, not お.

わたしは まいあさ りんごを たべます。  
I eat an apple every morning.

To ask for information about the object, you use **nani** “what?” in the position of Noun 2.

- d. Q: **Anata wa kinō nani o benkyō shimashita ka.**  
What did you study yesterday?

A: **Watashi wa kinō Nihon-go o benkyō shimashita.**  
I studied Japanese language yesterday.

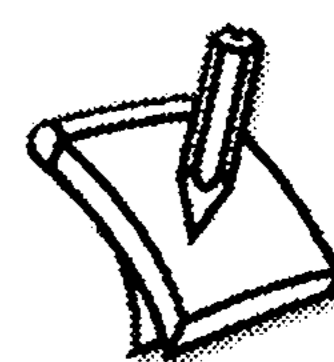
The following is a list of new vocabulary that could be used as the object of the verbs introduced in this unit:

### *Food and drink*

<b>tabemono</b>	food	<b>nomimono</b>	drink, beverage
<b>gohan</b>	meal, cooked rice	<b>(o)sake</b>	alcohol, Japanese sake
<b>asa-gohan</b>	breakfast	<b>bīru</b>	beer
<b>hiru-gohan</b>	lunch	<b>wain</b>	wine
<b>ban-gohan</b>	supper, dinner	<b>sūpu</b>	soup
<b>okashi</b>	confectionery	<b>(o)mizu</b>	water

## Things

<b>tegami</b>	letter	<b>intānetto</b>	the Internet
<b>mēru</b>	email		

Exercise 1

Which verbs in the box below can be used for the following objects? Write them in the spaces. The numbers in the brackets indicate how many verbs you need to write.

*Example* asa-gohan (breakfast) ○ *tabemasu/kaimasu* (2)

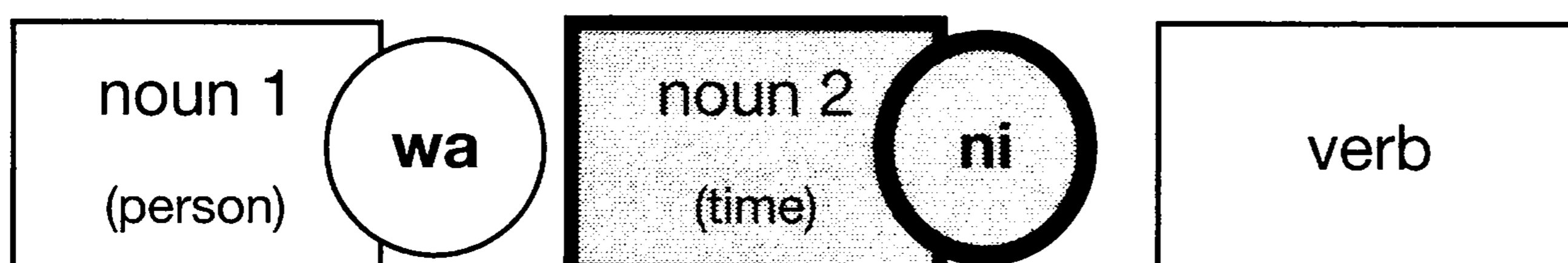
- 1 tegami (letter) ○ \_\_\_\_\_ (2)
- 2 (o)sake (alcohol) ○ \_\_\_\_\_ (2)
- 3 mēru (email) ○ \_\_\_\_\_ (2)
- 4 rajio (radio) ○ \_\_\_\_\_ (2)
- 5 kuruma (car) ○ \_\_\_\_\_ (2)
- 6 Nihon-go (Japanese) ○ \_\_\_\_\_ (4)

tabemasu nomimasu yomimasu kikimasu kakimasu  
okimasu shimasu kaimasu unten shimasu benkyō shimasu

## Language point

**Particle ni: time marker**

The particle **ni** is attached to a time-related word to indicate a specific time.



a. **Watashi wa maiasa gozen 7-ji ni okimasu.**

I wake up at 7 a.m. every morning.

**Ni** is optional for some time-related words such as days of the week, holidays, etc.

b. **Watashi wa do-yōbi (ni) kaisha e ikimasen.**

I do not go to work (*lit.* the company) on Saturdays.

c. **Anata wa natsu-yasumi (ni) doko e ikimasu ka.**

Where do/will you go during the summer holiday?

Note that **ni** cannot follow words such as **kyō** “today”, **senshū** “last week”, **rainen** “next year”, **mainichi** “every day”.

d. **Watashi wa (✓ kyō     ✗ kyō ni) sūpā e ikimasu.**

I will go to the supermarket today.

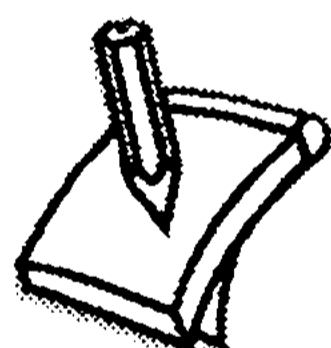
Note: flexible word order

Japanese word order is flexible as long as the predicate of the sentence (such as a verb, adjective, etc.) is at the end of the sentence. Hence, the following three sentences are all correct for “I studied Japanese from 10 to 1 yesterday”:

a. **Watashi wa kinō 10-ji kara 1-ji made Nihon-go o *benkyō shimashita*.**

b. **Kinō watashi wa 10-ji kara 1-ji made Nihon-go o *benkyō shimashita*.**

c. **Watashi wa kinō Nihon-go o 10-ji kara 1-ji made *benkyō shimashita*.**



## Exercise 2

Write Miss Yamada’s schedule for tomorrow in Japanese, based on the information below.

*Example*

wake up at 7.30 a.m.

Yamada-san no ashita

*Yamada-san wa ashita gozen  
7-ji han ni okimasu.*

1 watch TV

1

\_\_\_\_\_.

2 work from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.

2

\_\_\_\_\_.

3 eat lunch with friends

3

\_\_\_\_\_.

4 listen to music

4

\_\_\_\_\_.

5 go to bed at 10.30 p.m.

5

\_\_\_\_\_.

## Language point



### Interrogative word + mo

When **mo** is attached to an interrogative word such as **nani**, **doko** and **dare**, it adds a negative meaning as below (except for **itsumo**, which means “always”):

**nani** (a question word for things) + **mo** = **nanimo** (nothing)

**doko** (a question word for places) + **mo** = **dokomo** (nowhere)

**dare** (a question word for people) + **mo** = **daremo** (no one)

The object marker **o** is not used with these words (sentence a), whereas the direction marker **e** can be used (sentence b).

a. **Watashi wa ashita nanimo shimasen.**

I will not do anything tomorrow.

b. **Watashi wa kinō doko(e)mo ikimasendeshita.**

I didn't go anywhere yesterday.

## Exercise 3 (CD 1; 48)

Taro and Maria are talking about what they did at the weekend. Listen and write a ✓ if the statement agrees with what they say. Write a ✗ if not.



1 ( ) Taro woke up at 9 a.m. last Saturday.

2 ( ) Taro ate sushi with his friend last Sunday.

3 ( ) Maria watched a Japanese film and drank Japanese sake last Saturday.

## Dialogue 2



### I eat sushi with my hands (CD 1; 49)



Mr Ito and Mrs Parker are talking about how they eat sushi.

ITŌ Pākā-san wa donna tabemono ga suki desu ka.

PĀKĀ Watashi wa Nihon no (o)sushi ga totemo suki desu.

ITŌ Sō desu ka. Nani de (o)sushi o tabemasu ka.

PĀKĀ Watashi wa (o)hashi de (o)sushi o tabemasu. Itō-san wa nani de (o)sushi o tabemasu ka.

ITŌ                    Watashi wa te de (o)sushi o tabemasu.  
PĀKĀ                    Sō desu ka.

MR ITO                *Mrs Parker, what kind of food do you like?*

MRS PARKER *I like Japanese sushi very much.*

MR ITO                *Really? How do you eat sushi?*

MRS PARKER *I eat sushi with chopsticks. How do you eat sushi, Mr Ito?*

MR ITO                *I eat sushi with my hands.*

MRS PARKER *Really?*



## Vocabulary

(o)sushi    Japanese sushi

(o)hashi    chopsticks

nani de    how to . . . , by what  
                  means, with what

te            hand



## Language point

### Particle de (1): “using . . .” or “in”

In Unit 6 (page 73–74), you learned the particle **de** as the marker for the means of transportation (e.g. **basu de**). Here, you see more examples of **de**:

(tool) + **de**

a. **Watashi wa (o)hashi de gohan o tabemasu.**

I eat meals with (a pair of) chopsticks.

b. Q: **Nani de (o)sushi o tabemasu ka.**

With what do you eat sushi?

A: **Watashi wa te de sushi o tabemasu.**

I eat sushi with my hands.

naifu        knife

fōku        fork

supūn        spoon

(o)hashi    (a pair of) chopsticks

te            hand

enpitsu      pencil

(language) + **de**

When you want to know how to say a word or phrase in a certain language, the following pattern is used:

c. Q: “**Lunch**” wa Nihon-go de nan desu ka.

What is “lunch” in Japanese?

A: “**Hiru-gohan**” desu.

It is “hiru-gohan”.

d. Q: “**Tabehōdai**” wa Ēgo de nan desu ka.

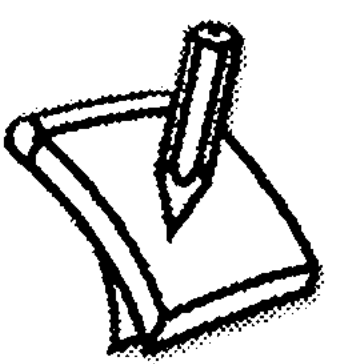
What is “tabehōdai” in English?

A: “**Eat as much as you can**” desu.

It is “Eat as much as you can.”

## Exercise 4

Answer the following questions in Japanese, using any information given in brackets.



1 Anata wa nani de rāmen o tabemasu ka. (a pair of chopsticks)

*Watashi wa ( ) de rāmen o tabemasu.*

2 Anata wa nani de hanbāgā o tabemasu ka. (hands)

3 “Shinkansen” wa Ēgo de nan desu ka.

4 “Family” wa Nihon-go de nan desu ka.

## Dialogue 3



Where did you read the book? (CD 1; 50)

Mr Ito is asking Mrs Parker what she did yesterday.



- |      |  |
|------|--|
| ITŌ  | Pākā-san wa kinō nani o shimashita ka.       |
| PĀKĀ | Watashi wa kinō hitori de hon o yomimashita. |
| ITŌ  | Doko de hon o yomimashita ka.                |
| PĀKĀ | Toshokan de hon o yomimashita.               |
| ITŌ  | Pākā-san wa yoku toshokan e ikimasu ka.      |
| PĀKĀ | Īe, yoku ikimasen ga, tokidoki ikimasu.      |
| ITŌ  | Sō desu ka.                                  |

- MR ITO            *Mrs Parker, what did you do yesterday?*  
 MRS PARKER    *I read a book (alone) yesterday.*  
 MR ITO            *Where did you read the book?*  
 MRS PARKER    *I read it at the library.*  
 MR ITO            *Do you often go to the library, Mrs Parker?*  
 MRS PARKER    *Not often, but sometimes.*  
 MR ITO            *Really?*



## Vocabulary

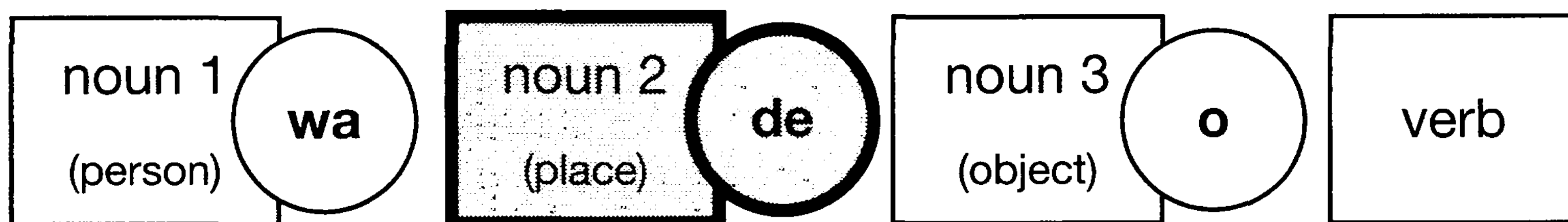
<b>de</b> (particle)	at, in [place marker]	<b>yoku</b>	often
<b>doko de</b>	where?, at what place?	<b>tokidoki</b>	sometimes



## Language point

### Particle **de** (2): place marker

The particle **de** is attached to a place-related word to indicate the place where an action occurs.



- a. **Watashi wa kyō resutoran de ban-gohan o tabemasu.**  
 I will eat dinner at a restaurant today.
- b. **Watashi wa kinō toshokan de Nihon-go o benkyō shimashita.**  
 I studied Japanese in the library yesterday.

The question phrase for this is **doko de**.

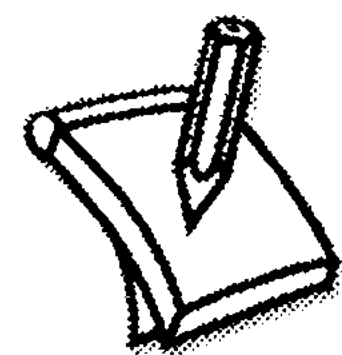
- c. Q: **Jon-san wa doko de kono jisho o kaimashita ka.**  
 John, where did you buy this dictionary?
- A: **Nihon de kaimashita.**  
 I bought it in Japan.

Do not confuse this particle with the direction marker **e** (Unit 6, page 70–71).

- d. **Watashi wa resutoran e ikimasu.**      I go to the restaurant.



## Exercise 5



Change the word order so that the sentences make sense.

- 1 watashi/de/kissaten/o/nomimasu/wa/kōhī
- 2 Pākā-san/terebi/uchi/mimasen/o/de/wa
- 3 ka/doko/kaimono shimasu/anata/de/wa

## Language point



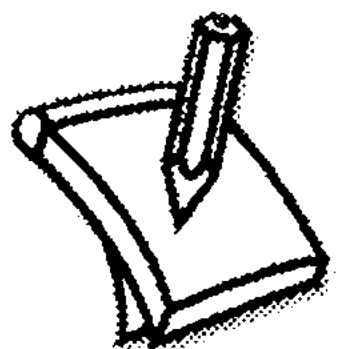
### Frequency

Here is a list of words which indicate frequency. \*Note that a sentence with **amari** or **zenzen** always ends with the negative form.

always	<b>itsumo</b>	occasionally	<b>tamani</b>
often	<b>yoku</b>	not very often	<b>amari*</b>
sometimes	<b>tokidoki</b>	never, not at all	<b>zenzen*</b>

- a. **Watashi wa yoku hon o yomimasu.** I often read books.
- b. **Watashi wa zenzen hon o yomimasen.** I never read books.

## Exercise 6



Put the appropriate particle or word in the brackets. Write **X** if no particle is required.

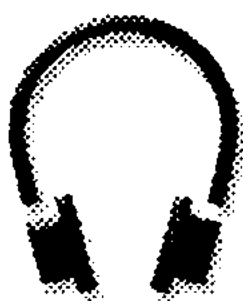
*Example* Watashi wa supūn (*de*) sūpu (*o*) nomimashita.

- 1 Watashi wa tokidoki intānetto ( ) ongaku o kikimasu.
- 2 Watashi wa mainichi (<sup>a</sup> ) kuruma (<sup>b</sup> ) unten shimasu.
- 3 Watashi wa kyonen Nihon ( ) sushi o tabemashita.
- 4 Anata wa maiasa nan-ji ( ) okimasu ka.
- 5 Watashi wa kinō nani ( ) kaimasendeshita.

## Exercise 7 (CD 1; 51)



Following is an extract from Maria's diary. Read out the text and complete the following English text accordingly.



Watashi wa sengetsu Nihon e ikimashita. Nihon de yoku rāmen o tabemashita. Rāmen wa totemo oishikatta desu. Sorekara, Tōkyō

de kirēna ohashi o kaimashita. Soshite, Kyōto de ēga o mimashita. Nihon-go de mimashita. Muzukashikatta desu ga, omoshirokatta desu.

Maria went to Japan <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. She often <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. She found it very tasty. In Tokyo, she <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. In Kyoto, she watched a film in <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. She found it difficult but enjoyable.



## Vocabulary

rāmen Japanese ramen noodle soup

## Katakana of Unit 7

Katakana is used to transcribe words which are originally foreign words. Katakana is also used for the names of some animals and plants. You will learn the basic 48 katakana characters plus combined sounds and special sounds from Unit 7 to Unit 10. To check the stroke order of each katakana and download an extra exercise sheet, go to [www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/](http://www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/).

	1	2	3		1	2	3
a	ア	ア	ア	sa	サ	サ	サ
i	イ	イ	イ	shi	シ	シ	シ
u	ウ	ウ	ウ	su	ス	ス	ス
e	エ	エ	エ	se	セ	セ	セ
o	オ	オ	オ	so	ソ	ソ	ソ
ka	カ	カ	カ	<b>Voiced sound</b>			
ki	キ	キ	キ	K → G		S → Z, SH → J	
ku	ク	ク	ク	カ (ka) → ガ (ga)	サ (sa) → ザ (za)		
ke	ケ	ケ	ケ	キ (ki) → ギ (gi)	シ (shi) → ジ (ji)		
ko	コ	コ	コ	ク (ku) → グ (gu)	ス (su) → ズ (zu)		
				ケ (ke) → ゲ (ge)	セ (se) → ゼ (ze)		
				コ (ko) → ゴ (go)	ソ (so) → ゾ (zo)		

## Exercise 8



Read out the following Japanese words written in katakana and write how to read them in the brackets below.

1 アイス ice cream

(    —    —    — )

2 コイ koi carp

(    —    — )

3 カキ persimmon

(    —    — )

4 スイカ watermelon

(    —    —    — )

5 キウイ kiwi

(    —    —    — )

6 クイズ quiz

(    —    —    — )

7 アサガオ morning glory

(    —    —    —    — )

8 ジグザグ zigzag

(    —    —    —    — )

# Unit Eight

## Ōsaka ni yūmēna (o)shiro ga arimasu

There is a famous castle in Osaka



In this unit you will learn about:

- describing the existence of things and people using **arimasu** and **imasu**
- listing more than two nouns by using **ya** “and so on”
- counting objects or people: numerals (suffix counters)
- terms of location (on, below, in front of, behind, etc.)
- katakana of Unit 8

タチツテト

ナニヌネノ

ハヒフヘホ

ダヂヅデド

バビブベボ

パピプペポ



### Dialogue 1



There is a castle in Osaka (CD 2; 1)

Mr Miller is a friend of Miss Ogawa from work. He told her that he has never visited Osaka, so she has taken him there.

MIRĀ            Ogawa-san. Ōsaka wa nigiyaka desu ne.

OGAWA        Hai. Ōsaka ni ī resutoran ya omoshiroi (o)mise ga takusan arimasu.

MIRĀ            Oshiro mo arimasu ka.

OGAWA        Hai, yūmēna (o)shiro ga arimasu. Itsumo (o)shiro ni kankōkyaku ga imasu.

MIRĀ            Jā, totemo nigiyaka desu ne.

OGAWA        Hai.

- MR MILLER *Miss Ogawa, Osaka is lively, isn't it?*  
 MISS OGAWA *Yes, Osaka has many things such as good restaurants and interesting shops.*  
 MR MILLER *Is there also a castle (in Osaka)?*  
 MISS OGAWA *Yes, there is. There are always tourists there.*  
 MR MILLER *Then, it (Osaka castle) is very lively, isn't it?*  
 MISS OGAWA *Yes.*

## Vocabulary



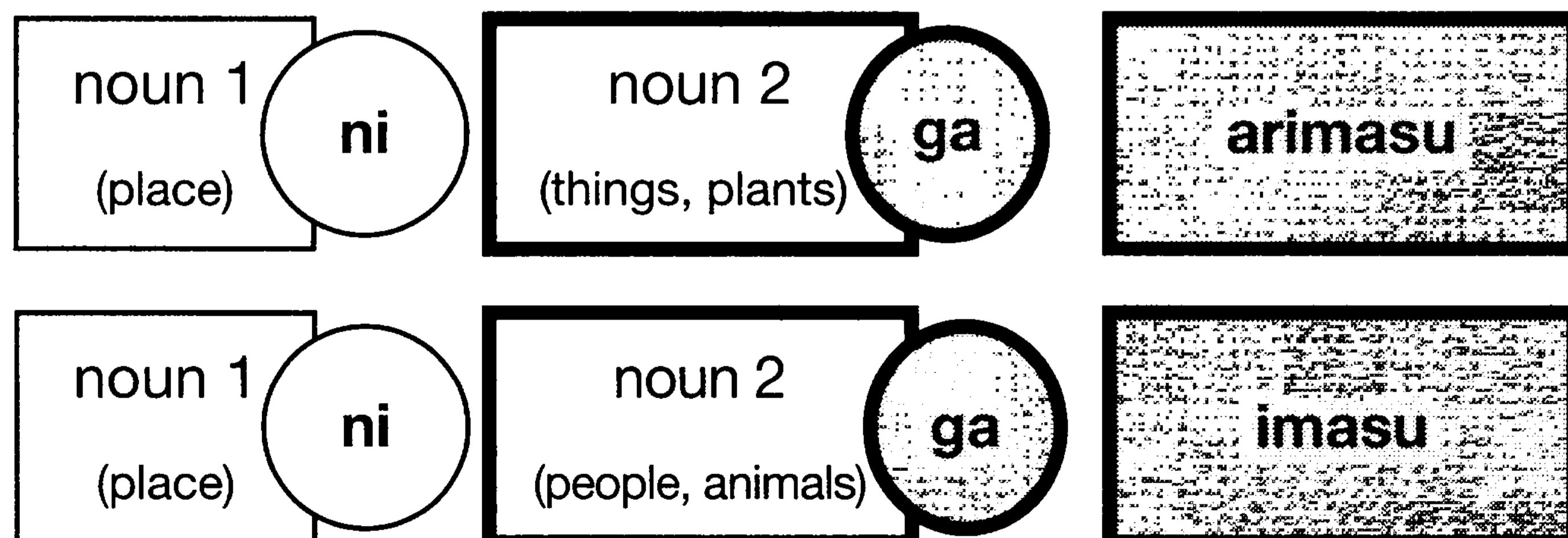
<b>ni</b> (particle)	in, at [location marker]	<b>ya</b> (particle)	and (among other things)
<b>takusan</b>	many, a lot	<b>(o)mise</b>	shop, store
<b>arimasu</b>	to be, there is (something)	<b>(o)shiro</b>	castle
		<b>imasu</b>	to be, there is (someone)

## Language point



### Existence of things and people (1): arimasu and imasu

The Japanese equivalents of the English “there is/are” are **arimasu** and **imasu**. The former is used for inanimate things (e.g. a chair, a book) or animate things which cannot move at will (e.g. plants), whereas the latter is used for animate things (e.g. a boy, a cat). Remember that there is no plural/singular distinction in Japanese, unlike English (see Introduction p. xii). The particle **ni** indicates the location of something or someone.



The question word for Noun 2 is either **nani** “what?” or **dare** “who?”.

a. Q: **Tōkyō ni nani ga arimasu ka.**

What is in Tokyo?

A: **Tōkyō ni Tōkyō Sukai Tsurī ga arimasu.**

Tokyo has Tokyo Sky Tree Tower.

b. Q: **Tōkyō ni dare ga imasu ka.**

Who is in Tokyo?

A: **Tōkyō ni watashi no kazoku ga imasu.**

My family is in Tokyo.

Do you remember how to say “nothing” and “nobody”? (Unit 7)

**Nani mo arimasen.**      There is nothing.

**Dare mo imasen.**      There is nobody.

## Vocabulary

### Nouns used with **imasu**

#### *People*

<b>onna no hito</b>	woman
<b>otoko no hito</b>	man
<b>onna no ko</b>	girl
<b>otoko no ko</b>	boy
<b>kankōkyaku</b>	tourist

#### *Animals*

<b>inu</b>	dog
<b>neko</b>	cat
<b>usagi</b>	rabbit

### Nouns used with **arimasu**

#### *In town/nature*

<b>ēgakan</b>	cinema
<b>(o)mise</b>	store, shop
<b>-noriba</b>	rank, stop
<b>(takushī noriba)</b>	(taxi rank)
<b>chizu</b>	map
<b>(o)shiro</b>	castle
<b>(o)tera</b>	temple
<b>Fujisan</b>	Mt. Fuji
<b>hana</b>	flower

#### *In the house*

<b>heya</b>	room
<b>niwa</b>	garden
<b>ima</b>	living room
<b>genkan</b>	entrance hall
<b>shinshitsu</b>	bedroom
<b>daidokoro</b>	kitchen
<b>beddo</b>	bed
<b>tsukue</b>	desk

## Exercise 1



Choose the appropriate verb and underline it as shown in the example.

*Example* Kono machi ni eki ga (a. imasu b. arimasu).

- 1 Kōen ni onna no ko ga (a. imasu b. arimasu).
- 2 Asoko ni nani ga (a. imasu b. arimasu) ka.
- 3 Ēgakan ni dare mo (a. imasen b. arimasen).
- 4 Watashi no shinshitsu ni beddo to pasokon ga (a. imasu b. arimasu).

## Exercise 2



Add the missing words and complete the sentences.

*Example* There is a cinema in my town.

Watashi no machi ni ēgakan ga arimasu.

- 1 A man and a woman are in the restaurant.  
\_\_\_\_\_ ni otoko no hito to \_\_\_\_\_ ga \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 There was a bicycle in the garden this morning.  
Kesa \_\_\_\_\_ ni jitensha \_\_\_\_\_ arimashita.
- 3 There is nobody in the kitchen.  
\_\_\_\_\_ ni \_\_\_\_\_ imasen.
- 4 What is in the entrance hall?  
\_\_\_\_\_ ni \_\_\_\_\_ ga arimasu \_\_\_\_\_.

## Vocabulary



kesa this morning

## Language point



### Listing more than two nouns by using *ya* “and so on”

The particle **ya** means “and so on” and implies that the nouns given are a couple of examples.

- a. **Watashi no heya ni beddo to tsukue ga arimasu.**  
There are a bed and a desk in my room.
- b. **Watashi no heya ni beddo ya tsukue ga arimasu.**  
There are several objects such as a bed and a desk in my room.



## Dialogue 2



I bought three apples and two bottles of wine  
(CD 2; 2)

Mr Miller was on the way home when he saw Miss Ogawa outside the supermarket. She had a big shopping bag which looked heavy.

MIRĀ	Konnichiwa, Ogawa-san. Takusan kaimono shimashita ne.
OGAWA	Hai, iroiro na mono o kaimashita.
MIRĀ	Sūpā de nani o kaimashita ka.
OGAWA	Ringo o mittsu to wain o ni-hon kaimashita. Sorekara, zasshi mo kaimashita.
MIRĀ	Wain wa ikura deshita ka.
OGAWA	Wain wa ip-pon 1000-en deshita.
MR MILLER	<i>Hello, Miss Ogawa. You bought a lot, didn't you?</i>
MISS OGAWA	<i>Yes, I bought various things.</i>
MR MILLER	<i>What did you buy at the supermarket?</i>
MISS OGAWA	<i>I bought three apples and two bottles of wine there. And I also bought a magazine.</i>
MR MILLER	<i>How much was the wine?</i>
MISS OGAWA	<i>It was 1000 yen per bottle.</i>



## Vocabulary

<b>iroiro na</b>	various
<b>mono</b>	thing(s)
<b>-tsu</b> (counter suffix)	counter for material things in general
<b>-hon</b> (counter suffix)	counter for long, slender things



## Language point



## Counting objects or people: numerals (suffix counters)

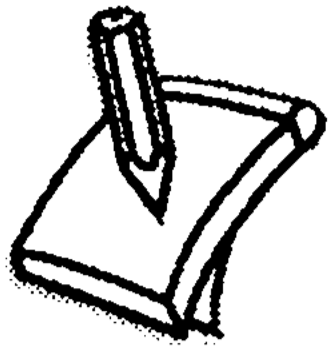
When you count objects or people, you need to use the appropriate counter for the item. Here are some of the counters (more can be found in the Grammar Summary):

Counter	Type of object	1–10	?
-ko	Small object (egg, apple, etc.)	<b>ikko/niko/sanko/yonko/goko</b> <b>rokko/nanako/hakko/kyūko/jukko</b>	<b>Nan-ko</b>
-hon (pon, bon)	Long, slender object (pen, bottle, umbrella, etc.)	<b>ippon/nihon/sanbon/yonhon/gohon</b> <b>roppon/nanahon/happon/kyūhon/juppon</b>	<b>Nan-bon</b>
-dai	Machinery (car, computer, etc.)	<b>ichidai/nidai/sandai/yondai/godai</b> <b>rokudai/nanadai/hachidai/kyūdai/jūdai</b>	<b>Nan-dai</b>
-mai	Thin, flat object (paper, CD, shirt, etc.)	<b>ichimai/nimai/sanmai/yonmai/gomai</b> <b>rokumai/nanamai/hachimai/kyūmai/jūmai</b>	<b>Nan-mai</b>
-nin	People	<b>hitori/futari/sannin/yonin/gonin</b> <b>rokunin/nananin/hachinin/kyūnin/jūnin</b>	<b>Nan-nin</b>
-kai	Time	<b>ikkai/nikai/sankai/yonkai/gokai</b> <b>rokkai/nanakai/hakkai/kyūkai/jukkai</b>	<b>Nan-kai</b>

Note that “one person” and “two persons” are “**hitori**” and “**futari**” respectively and do not use “**-nin**”.

Another counter is **-tsu**. This counter covers material things in general. Note that the **-tsu** system is used only up to ten. Eleven and higher are counted by using the numbers introduced on page 24. The interrogative for this is **ikutsu**.

1 <b>hitotsu</b>	4 <b>yottsu</b>	7 <b>nanatsu</b>	10 <b>tō</b>
2 <b>futatsu</b>	5 <b>itsutsu</b>	8 <b>yattsu</b>	
3 <b>mittsu</b>	6 <b>muttsu</b>	9 <b>kokonotsu</b>	? <b>ikutsu</b>



### Exercise 3

Write the appropriate counter for the following items, using the number in the brackets. Avoid **-tsu**.

*Example* kuruma (3) san-dai

1 ringo (5) \_\_\_\_\_

2 otoko no ko (4) \_\_\_\_\_

3 kasa (1) \_\_\_\_\_

4 chizu (2) \_\_\_\_\_

5 kētai denwa (4) \_\_\_\_\_

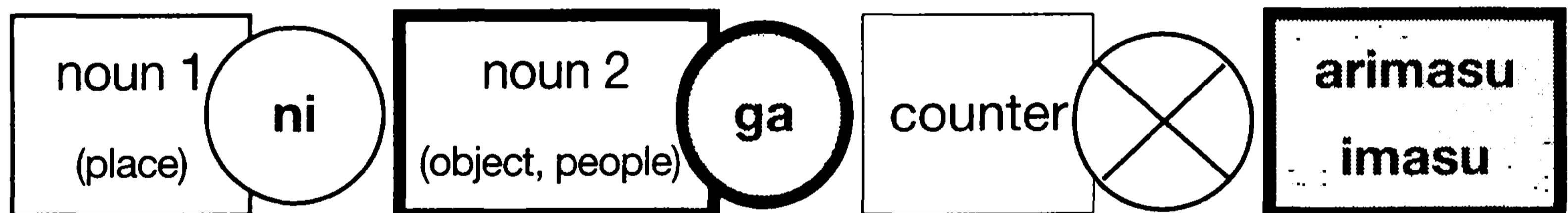
6 enpitsu (7) \_\_\_\_\_



### Language point

#### Using counters in a sentence

Here are some examples of how to use a counter in a sentence. Note that a counter does not take any particle.



a. **Watashi no uchi ni terebi ga 2-dai arimasu.**

There are two TVs in my house.

b. **Kōen ni hito ga 10-nin imasu.**

There are ten people in the park.

c. **Otōto wa mainichi kono CD o ik-kai kikimasu.**

My younger brother listens to this CD once every day.

**Kudasai** is used when you request someone to give you something or when you have decided to purchase something.

d. **Kyōto no chizu o 1-mai kudasai.**

Please give me a map of Kyoto.



### Exercise 4

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

*Example* I ate an apple yesterday.

*Watashi wa kinō ringo o hitotsu tabemashita.*

- 1 Please give me three Kyoto maps.
- 2 I study Japanese two hours every day.
- 3 There are three men in my house.

## Exercise 5 (CD 2; 3)

How many of the following items are in Taro's house? Write the answers with the appropriate counters.

*Example* CD 20-mai

- |           |       |        |       |
|-----------|-------|--------|-------|
| 1 tokē    | _____ | 2 hito | _____ |
| 3 pasokon | _____ | 4 kasa | _____ |



## Vocabulary

zenbu de in total

minna de everyone



## Dialogue 3



The post office is next to that book store over there (CD 2; 4)



Mr Miller is in Okinawa on vacation. He is looking for a post office to send a postcard. When he left the hotel, the receptionist told him that there was a post office around here.

- MIRĀ Sumimasen, yūbinkyoku wa doko ni arimasu ka.  
 TSŪKŌNIN Yūbinkyoku desu ka. Asoko ni hon-ya ga arimasu ne.  
 MIRĀ Hai.  
 TSŪKŌNIN Yūbinkyoku wa ano hon-ya no tonari ni arimasu.  
 MIRĀ Sō desu ka. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.  
 TSŪKŌNIN Īe, dō itashimashite.

MR MILLER *Excuse me but where is the post office?*

PASSER-BY *Post office? You can see a book store over there, can't you?*

MR MILLER *Yes.*

PASSER-BY *The post office is next to that book store.*

MR MILLER *Is it? Thank you very much.*

PASSER-BY *You are welcome.*



## Vocabulary

tsūkōnin passer-by

hon-ya book store

-ya

store, shop

dō itashimashite you are welcome



## Language point

### Location

The following words are used to indicate the location of an item or people.

**ue** on, above

**hidari** left

**mae** in front of

**naka** inside

**soto** outside

**shita** under, below

**migi** right

**ushiro** behind, back

**chikaku** near

**tonari** next to

a. ***Tēburu no ue ni ringo ga arimasu.***

There is an apple on the table.

b. ***Hito no mae ni ringo ga arimasu.***

There is an apple in front of the person.

c. ***Kaban no naka ni ringo ga arimasu.***

There is an apple in the bag.



## Exercise 6

Translate the following sentences into Japanese. The first word is given.

1 There are two boys behind the person.

*Hito*

2 There is one mobile phone in the bag.

*Kaban*

3 There is a big house next to the building.

*Biru*

## Vocabulary

A  
CB

**biru** building

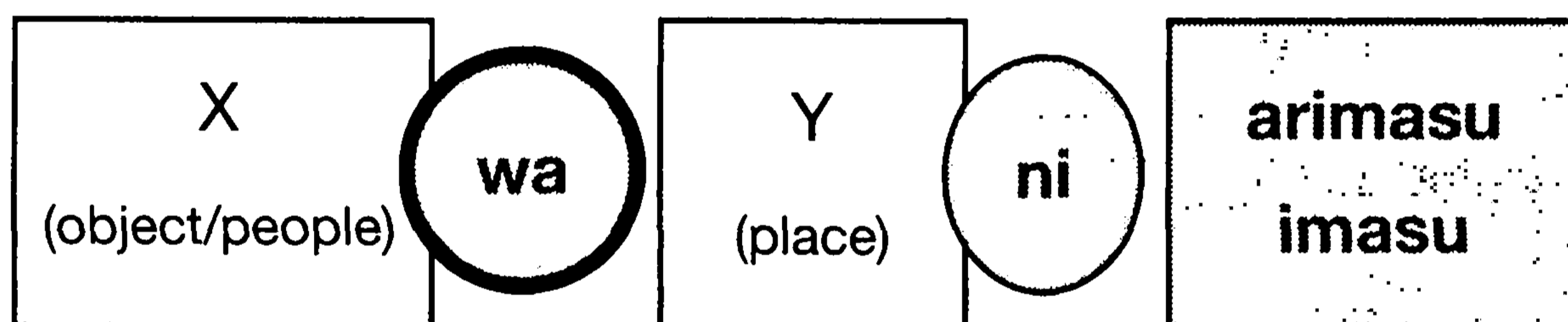
## Language point



### Existence of things and people (2):

X wa Y ni arimasu/imasu

When you talk about something or someone and both you and the listener know about them, the item (or person) is taken up as the topic of the sentence and marked by **wa** instead of **ga**.



In the following dialogues, Speaker Q1 uses **wa** on the assumption that a) there must be a post office in the town and that Speaker A1 also assumes so, whereas Speaker Q2 uses **ga** because he or she does not know whether or not there is a post office nearby.

a. Q1: **Yūbinkyoku wa doko ni arimasu ka.**

Where is the post office?

A1: **Yūbinkyoku wa ano hon-ya no tonari ni arimasu.**

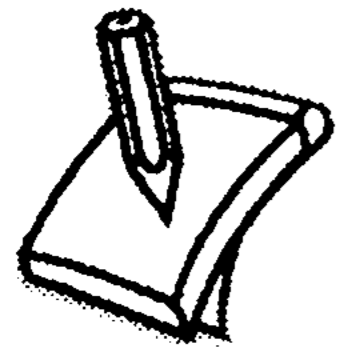
It is next to that book store.

b. Q2: **Kono chikaku ni yūbinkyoku ga arimasu ka.**

Is there a post office near here?

A2: **Hai, asoko ni arimasu.**

Yes, it is over there.



## Exercise 7

Answer the following questions, using the information in the brackets.

*Example*

Yūbinkyoku wa doko ni arimasu ka. (opposite the station)

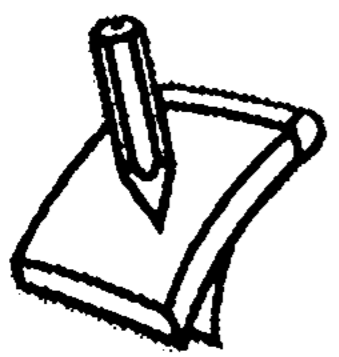
*Eki no mae ni arimasu.*

- 1 Anata wa doko ni imasu ka. (inside the station)
- 2 Hon-ya wa doko ni arimasu ka. (to the left of the bank)
- 3 Kōen wa doko ni arimasu ka. (between the convenience store and the hotel)
- 4 Takushī noriba wa doko desu ka. (near the library)



## Vocabulary

X to Y no aida between X and Y



## Exercise 8 (CD 2; 5)

Read out the following text and write ✓ if the statement agrees with it.

Write ✗ if not.



わたしの まちは ちいさいですが、べんりな まちです。まちのなかにおみせが たくさん あります。えきの まえに ほんやが あります。わたしは よく そこで ほんを かいます。ほんやの となりに きっさてんが あります。そこの こうちは とても おいしいです。きっさてんの うしろに えいがかんが あります。わたしは そこで ときどき えいがを みます。

Watashi no machi wa chīsai desu ga benrina machi desu. Machi no naka ni omise ga takusan arimasu. Eki no mae ni hon-ya ga arimasu. Watashi wa yoku soko de hon o kaimasu. Hon-ya no tonari ni kissaten ga arimasu. Soko no kōcha wa totemo oishī desu. Kissaten no ushiro ni ēgakan ga arimasu. Watashi wa soko de tokidoki ēga o mimasu.

- 1 ( ) There are many shops in my town.
- 2 ( ) There is a library in front of the station.
- 3 ( ) There is a cinema behind the café.

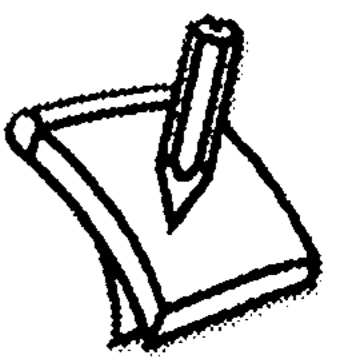
## Katakana of Unit 8

	1	2	3		1	2	3
ta	タ	タ	タ	ha	ハ	ハ	ハ
chi	チ	チ	チ	hi	ヒ	ヒ	ヒ
tsu	ツ	ツ	ツ	fu	フ	フ	フ
te	テ	テ	テ	he	ヘ	ヘ	ヘ
to	ト	ト	ト	ho	ホ	ホ	ホ
na	ナ	ナ	ナ	<b>Voiced sounds</b> T→D, Ch→J, Ts→Z    H/F→B, H→P  タ (ta) → ダ (da)                    ハ (ha) → バ (ba) チ (chi) → チ (ji)                    ヒ (hi) → ビ (bi) ツ (tsu) → ツ (zu)                    フ (fu) → ブ (bu) テ (te) → デ (de)                    ヘ (he) → ベ (be) ト (to) → ド (do)                    ホ (ho) → ボ (bo)			
ni	ニ	ニ	ニ				
nu	ヌ	ヌ	ヌ				
ne	ネ	ネ	ネ				
no	ノ	ノ	ノ				

パ (pa) ピ (pi) プ (pu) ペ (pe) ポ (po)

### Exercise 9

Read out the following Japanese words written in katakana and write how to read them in the brackets below.



- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 イヌ dog<br>(    )      | 2 ネコ cat<br>(    )        |
| 3 ドイツ Germany<br>(    ) | 4 テニス tennis<br>(    )    |
| 5 ポテト potato<br>(    )  | 6 カナダ Canada<br>(    )    |
| 7 ネクタイ tie<br>(    )    | 8 ピアニスト pianist<br>(    ) |

## Unit Nine

# Nichi-yōbi issho ni ēga o mimasen ka

Won't you watch a film with me on Sunday?



In this unit you will learn about:

- talking about holidays and travel
- saying “Have you already...?” and “Not yet”
- how to express one’s desire using [Verb-stem] + **tai**
- how to state the purpose of going to a certain place
- how to invite someone to do something
- katakana of Unit 9

マミムメモ

ヤユヨ

ラリルレロ

ワヲン



## Dialogue 1



I want to take a lot of photos (CD 2; 6)

Emma and Norio are members of the same tennis club. The club has an annual training trip to Nagano prefecture and they are in charge of the arrangements this year.

NORIO Ema-san, mō densha no kippu o kaimashita ka.

EMA Īe, mada desu. Kyō no gogo intānetto de kaimasu.

NORIO Sō desu ka. Ema-san, Nagano wa hajimete desu ka.

EMA Hai, hajimete desu.



NORIO Nagano de nani o shitai desu ka.

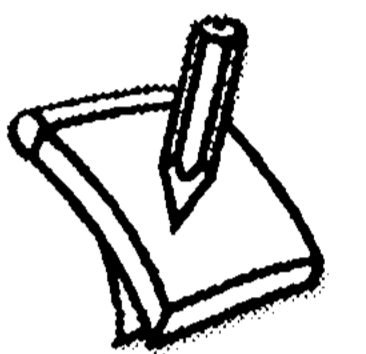
EMA Takusan shashin o toritai desu. Soshite onsen ni hairitai desu.

## Vocabulary

A  
CB

<b>mō</b>	already	<b>ikitai desu</b>	want to go
<b>kippu</b>	ticket	<b>shashin</b>	photo
<b>mada</b>	not yet	<b>torimasu</b>	to take (a photo)
<b>hajimete</b>	(for) the first time	<b>onsen</b>	hot spring
<b>(verb)-tai desu</b>	want to (+ verb)	<b>hairimasu</b>	to enter

## Dialogue 1 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- Emma has not bought the train tickets yet but will do so this afternoon.
- Emma once went to Nagano prefecture and took a lot of photos.

## Language points



### Holidays and travel

#### Noun

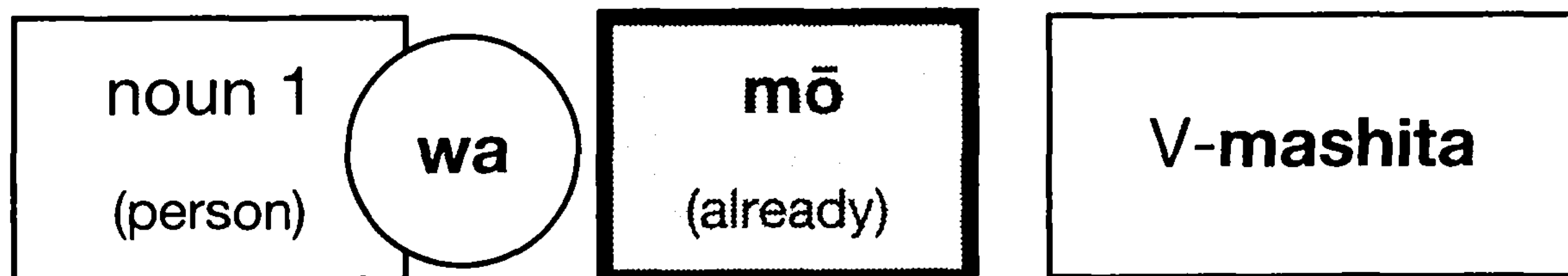
<b>shashin</b>	picture, photo
<b>onsen</b>	hot spring
<b>sumō</b>	<i>sumo</i> wrestling
<b>kankō</b>	tourist
<b>annaijo</b>	information
<b>ryokan</b>	Japanese style hotel
<b>washitsu</b>	Japanese style room
<b>yōshitsu</b>	Western style room

#### Verb

<b>torimasu</b>	to take (a picture)
<b>hairimasu</b>	to enter
<b>yasumimasu</b>	to rest
<b>kaemasu</b>	to change
<b>(ni) tomarimasu</b>	to stay overnight (at)
<b>yoyaku shimasu</b>	to reserve
<b>kyanseru</b>	to cancel
<b>shimasu</b>	
<b>chūmon</b>	to order
<b>shimasu</b>	

## Have you already...? Not yet.

**Mō** means “already” and is used to say that or ask whether someone has completed a certain action. Therefore, the sentence always takes the past tense ([V-mashita]).

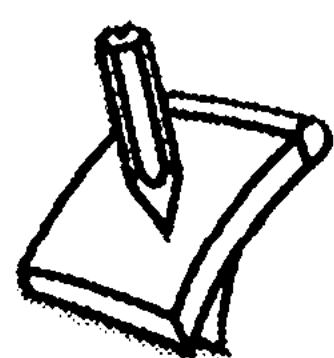


- a. **Watashi wa mō densha no kippu o kaimashita.**  
I have already bought the train ticket.
- b. **Katō-san wa mō hoteru o yoyaku shimashita ka.**  
Have you already reserved a hotel, Mr/Ms Kato?

How to answer such a question positively and negatively:

- b1. **Hai, mō yoyaku shimashita.**  
Yes, I have already reserved it.
- b2. **Īe, mada desu.**  
No, not yet.

Note that **mada** “yet” takes either **desu** (as above) or [V-te] + **imasen**. How to make the **te**-form from the **masu**-form of the verb will be introduced in Unit 13 (pages 156–7).



### Exercise 1

Write the answer as indicated in the brackets.

- 1 Anata wa mō kippu o kaimashita ka. (Yes)
- 2 Anata wa mō ryokan ni tomarimashita ka. (No)
- 3 Anata wa mō sumō o mimashita ka. (No)



### Language point

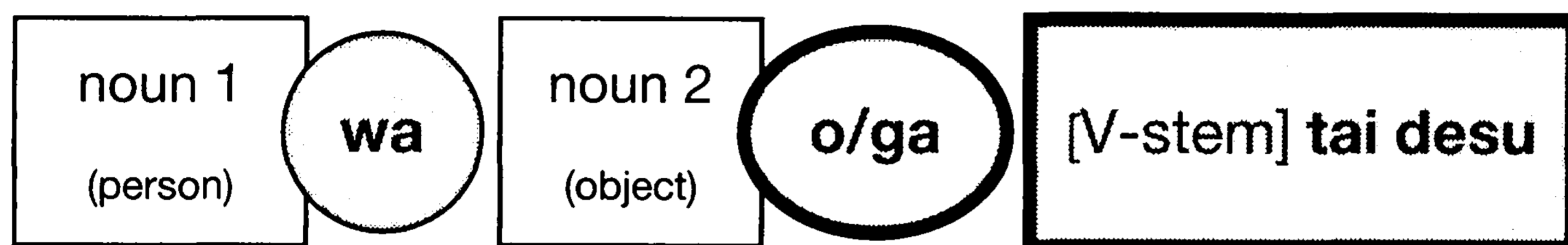
#### **Expressing one's desire (action):** **(Verb-stem) + tai**

[Verb-stem] + **tai** expresses the speaker's desire to do something. The verb stem [V-stem] is what is left after removing **masu** from the

verb. For instance, the verb stems of **tabemasu** and **mimasu** are **tabe** and **mi** respectively. The tense is indicated in the **tai** part and **tai** inflects as an i-adjective.

	<b>ta i</b>	<b>desu</b>	want to
Verb <b>masu</b> + <b>ta</b>	<b>kunai</b>	<b>desu</b>	do/does not want to
	<b>ta katta</b>	<b>desu</b>	wanted to
	<b>ta kunakatta</b>	<b>desu</b>	did not want to

The object in this structure can be followed by either **o** or **ga**.



- a. **Watashi wa sushi o/ga tabetai desu.**  
I want to eat sushi.
- b. **Watashi wa kyō terebi o/ga mitakunai desu.**  
I do not want to watch TV today.

Particles such as the direction marker (**e**) or location marker (**de**) remain unchanged. The person who you meet (**aimasu**) is marked by **ni**.

- c. **Watashi wa *Nihon* e ikitakatta desu.**  
I wanted to go to *Japan*.
- d. **Watashi wa kyō *kissaten* de kōhī o/ga nomitai dsu.**  
I want to drink coffee at *the café* today.
- e. **Watashi wa *Tanaka-san* ni aitai desu.**  
I want to see/meet *Mr Tanaka*.

Note that [V-stem] + **tai** can be made into a question by adding the question marker **ka**. However, asking a person (especially someone senior) what they wish to do using this structure is often considered impolite. A simple question is often used instead.

- Sensē wa bīru o** (X **nomitai desu ka**      ✓ **nomimasu ka**).  
Teacher, would you have some beer?



## Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms.

<i>masu form</i>	<i>want to</i>	<i>do not want to</i>	<i>wanted to</i>	<i>did not want to</i>
<b>yasumimasu</b> (rest)	1)	2)	<b>yasumitakatta</b> <b>desu</b>	3)
4) (take a picture)	<b>toritai</b> <b>desu</b>	5)	6)	<b>toritakunakatta</b> <b>desu</b>
7) (enter)	8)	<b>hairitakunai</b> <b>desu</b>	9)	10)



## Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

*Example* I want to read Japanese books.

*Watashi wa Nihon no hon o (or ga)  
yomitai desu.*

- I want to talk with my friend.
- I want to see my family.
- I want to exercise in the park.



## Vocabulary

(to/ni) hanashimasu	to talk (with/to)
(ni) aimasu	to meet/see (someone)
undō shimasu	to exercise



## Dialogue 2



I went to America to see my friend in New York (**CD 2; 7**)

Emma and Norio are talking about how their summer holidays were.

- NORIO Ema-san wa natsu-yasumi ni doko e ikimashita ka.  
 EMA Watashi wa natsu-yasumi ni Amerika e ikimashita.

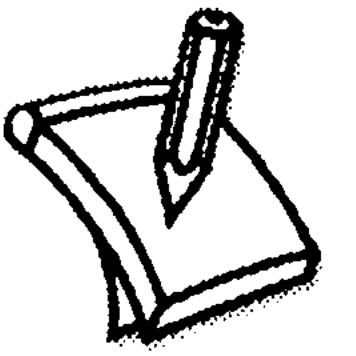
- NORIO Nani o shi ni Amerika e ikimashita ka.  
 EMA Nyūyōku no tomodachi ni ai ni ikimashita.  
 NORIO Nyūyōku de nani o shimashita ka.  
 EMA Tomodachi to Nyūyōku o kankō shimashita.

## Vocabulary

A  
CB

- Nyūyōku New York  
 kankō shimasu to go sightseeing

## Dialogue 2 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

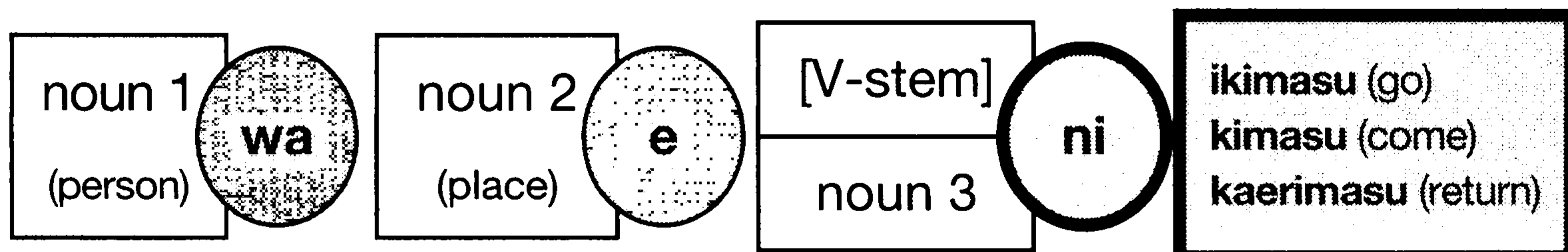
- 1 ( ) Emma went to New York with her friend last summer.  
 2 ( ) Emma and her friend went sightseeing in New York.

## Language point

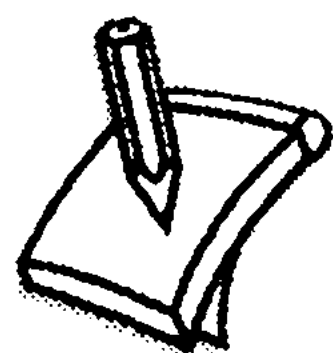


### Indicating the purpose of “go”, “come” and “return”

This pattern is used to give one's purpose of going (**ikimasu**), coming (**kimasu**) or returning (**kaerimasu**). The purpose is marked with the particle **ni**. Nouns which themselves entail an action (e.g. studying, cooking, travelling) can appear before **ni**.



- a. **Watashi wa ashita sūpā e pan to yasai o kai ni ikimasu.**  
 I will go to the supermarket to buy bread and vegetables tomorrow.
- b. **Watashi wa Nihon e Nihon-go o benkyō shi ni kimashita.**  
 I came to Japan to study Japanese.
- c. **Watashi wa Nihon e Nihon-go no benkyō ni kimashita.**  
 I came to Japan for the purpose of studying Japanese.



## Exercise 4

Write your plan for today in Japanese.

*Example* (noon/café/eat lunch)

*Watashi wa hiru kissaten e hiru-gohan  
o tabe ni ikimasu.*

- 1 (morning/library/read books)
- 2 (noon/park/run)
- 3 (evening/cinema/watch a film)



## Vocabulary

hiru noon

asa morning

ban or yoru evening

hashirimasu to run



## Dialogue 3



Won't you go to see sumo with me? (CD 2; 8)

It is Friday afternoon. Emma and Norio have played tennis together at the tennis club and are now talking in the club lounge.

NORIO Ema-san wa Nihon de mō sumō o mimashita ka.

EMA Īe, mada desu. Totemo mitai desu ga...

NORIO Jā, konshūmatsu isscho ni sumō o mi ni ikimasen ka.

EMA Hontō desu ka. Ureshī desu. Demo sumō wa nan-yōbi desu ka.

NORIO Nichi-yōbi desu. Ema-san wa nichiyōbi isogashī desu ka.

EMA Īe, hima desu.

NORIO Watashi no tomodachi mo isscho ni ikimasu ga, ī desu ka.

EMA Mochiron desu.

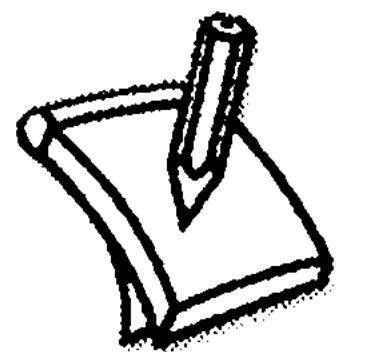
NORIO Jā, isscho ni ikimashō.

## Vocabulary



<b>issho ni</b>	together	<b>ureshī</b> (i-adj.)	happy
[V-stem] + <b>masen ka</b>	won't you...?, would you like to...	<b>isogashī</b> (i-adj.)	busy
<b>ikimassen ka</b>	won't you go?	<b>mochiron</b>	of course
<b>hontō desu ka</b>	really?	[V-stem] + <b>mashō</b>	let's
		<b>ikimashō</b>	let's go

## Dialogue 3 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- ( ) Emma has already watched sumo in Japan.
- ( ) Emma and Norio are going to watch sumo together this Sunday.

## Language point

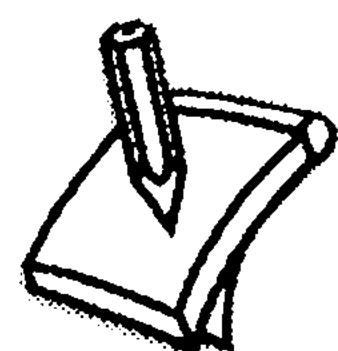


### Suggesting doing something together: (V-stem) + masen ka

[V-stem] + **masen ka** is used when one suggests doing something together with someone. **issho ni** “together” is often used in this structure.

<b>issho ni</b> (together)	<b>[V-stem] masen ka</b> (shall we?)
-------------------------------	---

- issho ni tenisu o shimasen ka.**  
Shall we/would you like to play tennis together?
- issho ni Fujisan e ikimassen ka.**  
Won't you/would you like to go to Mt. Fuji with me?
- issho ni resutoran e tabe ni ikimassen ka.**  
Won't you/would you like to go to the restaurant together  
[with me] to eat?



## Exercise 5

Suggest to your friend Masako that you do the following activities in the brackets together.

*Example* (play basketball)

*Masako-san, issho ni basukettobōru o shimasen ka.*

- 1 (watch a DVD at my house)
- 2 (go to a hot spring next month)
- 3 (run every morning)



## Vocabulary

**basukettobōru**

basketball

**DVD** (pronounced as **dī bui dī**) DVD



## Language point

### **Accepting or rejecting suggestions: (V-stem) + mashō**

To accept a suggestion, you add **mashō** after the verb stem ([V-stem] + **mashō**). This expression is equivalent to the English “let’s”.

a. Q: **Issho ni ban-gohan o tabemasen ka.**

Won’t you eat dinner with me?

A: **Hai, (issho ni) tabemashō.**

Yes, let’s eat together.

b. Q: **Issho ni ēga o mi ni ikimasen ka.**

Won’t you go to the cinema together with me?

A: **Ī desu ne. (Issho ni) ikimashō.**

That sounds good. Let’s go.

An unfinished sentence such as below is often used for rejecting the suggestion politely. **Chotto** means “a little” and it is a part of **chotto tsugō ga warui desu** “it is slightly inconvenient”. Saying **chotto** with



some hesitation will lead the listener to understand that you cannot accept their invitation.

c. Q: **Issho ni tenisu o shimasen ka.**

Won't you play tennis with me?

A1: **Zannen desu ga, chotto...** It is unfortunate but...

A2: **Sumimasen ga, chotto...** I am sorry but...

### Useful expressions

**chotto...**

a little

**tsugō ga warui desu**

(the time/schedule) is unsuitable for me

**zannen desu ga**

It is regrettable/unfortunate but...

### Exercise 6 (CD 2; 9)

What are Toshiko (female) and Mark going to do together on the following days? Choose the activities they will do together from the list below.



Example Friday a

1 Saturday \_\_\_\_\_

2 Sunday \_\_\_\_\_

- a. ~~play a game at Toshiko's house~~
- b. watch tennis on TV
- c. go to the park to run
- d. watch a Japanese film at Toshiko's house
- e. play tennis in the park

## Vocabulary

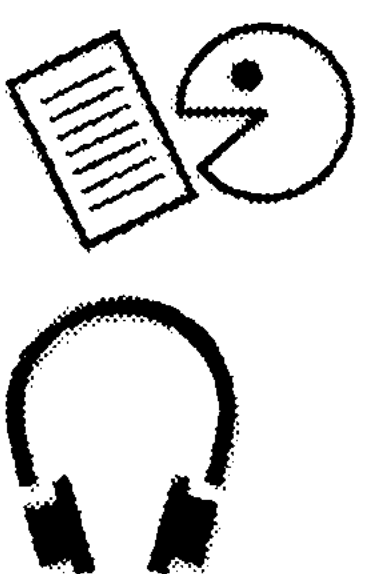
**gēmu** game

A  
CB

### Exercise 7 (CD 2; 10)

Read out the following text and answer the questions in English.

わたしは らいねん 2がつに ほっかいどうへ いきたいです。  
ほっかいどうへ 「ゆきまつり」を みに いきたいです。「ゆきまつり」は、  
ほっかいどうの とても ゆうめいな おまつりです。ゆきの ぞうが  
たくさん あります。わたしは ゆきまつりの しゃしんを たくさん  
とりたいです。そして、ほっかいどうで おいしい たべものを たべたいです。



Watashi wa rainen 2-gatsu ni Hokkaidō e ikitai desu. Hokkaidō e “Yuki matsuri” o mi ni ikitai desu. “Yuki matsuri” wa, Hokkaidō no totemo yūmēna omatsuri desu. Yuki no zō ga takusan arimasu. Watashi wa “Yuki matsuri” no shashin o takusan toritai desu. Soshite, Hokkaidō de oishī tabemono o tabetai desu.

- 1 Why does this person want to go to Hokkaido?
- 2 What is Yuki matsuri?
- 3 What does this person want to do in Hokkaido? Give two activities.



## Vocabulary

ほっかいどう	<b>Hokkaidō</b>	Hokkaido prefecture
ゆき	<b>yuki</b>	snow
(お)まつり	<b>(o)matsuri</b>	festival
ぞう	<b>zō</b>	statue

## Katakana of Unit 9

	1	2	3		1	2	3
ma	マ	マ	マ	ra	ラ	ラ	ラ
mi	ミ	ミ	ミ	ri	リ	リ	リ
mu	ム	ム	ム	ru	ル	ル	ル
me	メ	メ	メ	re	レ	レ	レ
mo	モ	モ	モ	ro	ロ	ロ	ロ
ya	ヤ	ヤ	ヤ	wa	ワ	ワ	ワ
yu	ユ	ユ	ユ	o	ヲ	ヲ	ヲ
yo	ヨ	ヨ	ヨ	n/m	ン	ン	ン

## Exercise 8



Read out the following Japanese words written in katakana and write how to read them in the brackets below.

1 ワイン wine  
( \_ \_ \_ )

2 メダル medal  
( \_ \_ \_ )

3 アメリカ America  
( \_ \_ \_ \_ )

4 ロンドン London  
( \_ \_ \_ \_ )

5 パソコン personal computer  
( \_ \_ \_ \_ )

6 ライオン lion  
( \_ \_ \_ \_ )

7 デジタルカメラ digital camera  
( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ )

8 レストラン restaurant  
( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ )

# Unit Ten

## Dōshite atarashī pasokon ga hoshī desu ka

Why do you want to have a new PC?



In this unit you will learn about:

- how to express one's desire to possess an object
- giving and asking reasons
- talking about one's illness
- stating what one owns, using **X wa Y ga arimasu**
- expressing one's gratitude
- giving and receiving things
- katakana of Unit 10: combined sounds



### Dialogue 1



What do you want? (CD 2; 11)

Mr Clark and Miss Akita work at the same company. Tomorrow they will receive a bonus from the company.

KURĀKU Akita-san, ashita wa bōnasu-bi desu ne. Akita-san wa bōnasu de nani ga hoshī desu ka.

AKITA Watashi wa atarashī pasokon ga hoshī desu.

KURĀKU Dōshite atarashī pasokon ga hoshī desu ka.

AKITA Ima no pasokon wa mō furui desu kara. Soreni, ima no pasokon wa sukoshi osoi desu kara.

KURĀKU Sō desu ka.

## Vocabulary



<b>bōnasu-bi</b>	bonus day	<b>soreni</b>	besides
<b>hoshī (i-adj.)</b>	want (an object)	<b>osoi (i-adj.)</b>	slow, late
<b>dōshite</b>	why?	<b>sukoshi</b>	a little
<b>kara</b>	because		

## Dialogue 1 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Mr Clark is going to buy a new PC with the bonus.
- 2 ( ) Miss Akita's current PC is old and slow.

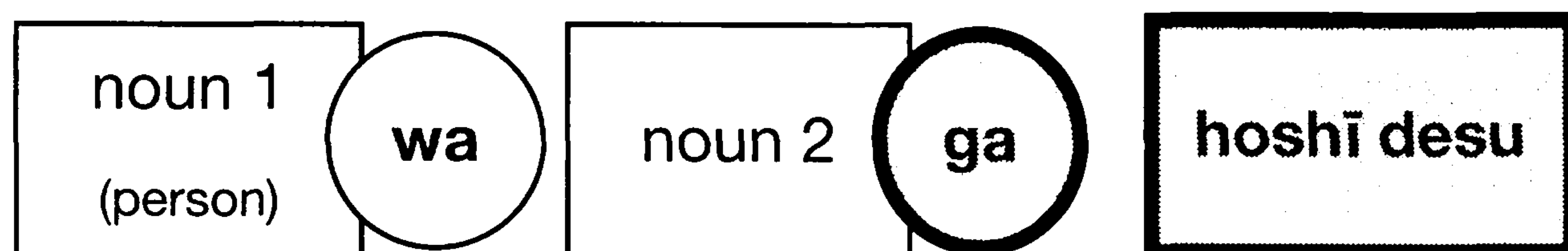
## Language point



### Expressing one's desire to possess an object: hoshī

**Hoshī** is an adjective which expresses the speaker's desire to possess an object. It can also be used to ask what the listener wants. The object of this sentence is marked by **ga**. **Hoshī** is an i-adjective and inflects as below:

want	do not want	wanted	did not want
<b>hoshi i</b>	<b>hoshi kunai</b>	<b>hoshi katta</b>	<b>hoshi kunakatta</b>
<b>desu</b>	<b>desu</b>	<b>desu</b>	<b>desu</b>



- a. **Watashi wa tanjōbi purezento ni hana ga hoshī desu.**  
I want flowers for my birthday present.
- b. **Kekkon iwai ni nani ga hoshī desu ka.**  
What do you want for your wedding gift?



## Exercise 1

Answer the following questions, using the information given in the brackets.

- 1 Anata wa tanjōbi ni nani ga hoshī desu ka. (Japanese dictionary)
- 2 Anata wa donna kuruma ga hoshī desu ka. (fast car)
- 3 Anata wa kekkon iwai ni nani ga hoshī desu ka. (lovely photo frame)



## Vocabulary

hayai (i-adj.) fast, early

kekkon iwai wedding gift

kawaiī (i-adj.) cute, lovely, pretty

shashin tate photo frame



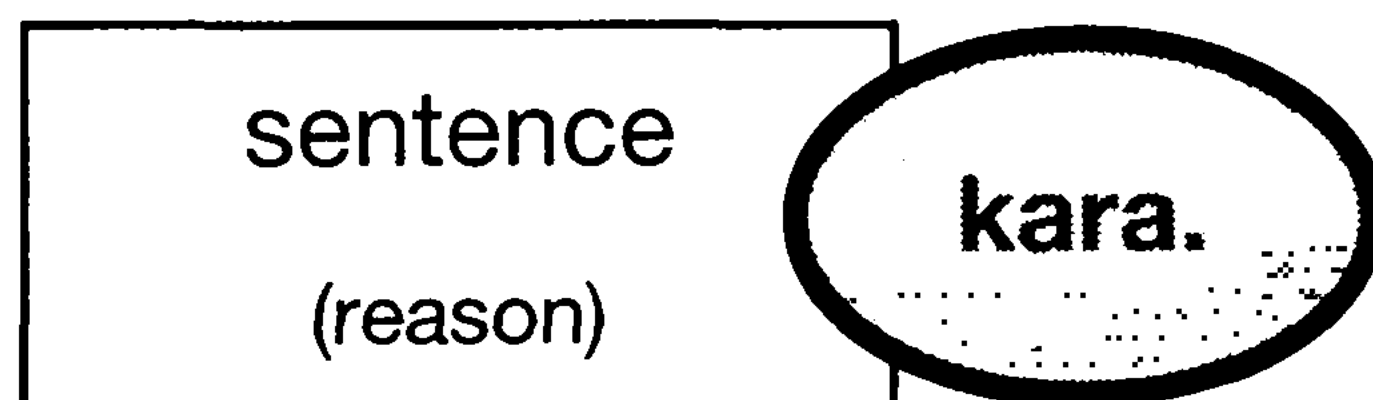
## Language point

### **Giving and asking reasons (1): dōshite and ~ kara**

The interrogative **dōshite** is used to ask for reasons. **Dōshite** can appear both in the middle of a sentence and at the beginning of a sentence.

- a. **Kurāku-san wa dōshite Nihon-go o benkyō shimasu ka.**  
Why do you study Japanese, Mr Clark?
- b. **Dōshite Fujita-san wa kinō isogashikatta desu ka.**  
Why were you busy yesterday, Mrs Fujita?

“Because” in Japanese is **kara**. Note that a statement which explains a reason comes before **kara**.



- c. Q: **Fujisan wa dōshite yūmē desu ka.**  
Why is Mt. Fuji famous?

A: **(Fujisan wa) Nihon de ichi-ban takai yama desu kara.**  
Because it is the highest mountain in Japan.

## Exercise 2



Answer the following questions, using the information given in the brackets.

*Example* Anata wa dōshite Nihon-go o benkyō shimasu ka.

(I like Japanese books.)

*Watashi wa Nihon no hon ga suki desu kara.*

- 1 Anata wa dōshite kinō pātī e kimasendeshita ka.  
(I was ill last night. *lit.* I was illness last night.)
- 2 Anata wa dōshite Kyōto e ikitai desu ka.  
(I want to see old temples.)
- 3 Anata wa dōshite yoku Rondon e ikimasu ka.  
(My family are in London.)

## Vocabulary

**byōki** illness, sickness



## Dialogue 2



I am going home because I have a headache (**CD 2; 12**)



It is Friday. Mr Clark and Miss Akita have just finished the day's work and are tidying up their desks.

KURĀKU Akita-san, korekara tomodachi to karaoke ni ikimasu.  
Akita-san mo issho ni ikimasen ka.

AKITA Ikitai desu ga, sukoshi atama ga itai desu kara, kyō wa uchi e kaerimasu.

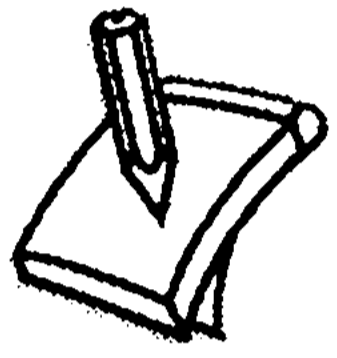
KURĀKU Sore wa ikemasen ne. Watashi wa kusuri ga arimasu ga, nomimasu ka.

AKITA Arigatō gozaimasu. Jā, hitotsu kudasai.



## Vocabulary

karaoke	karaoke
atama ga itai	to have a headache
atama	head
itai (i-adj.)	ache, painful
sore wa ikemasen	that is bad
kusuri	medicine, drug
arimasu	to have, own



## Dialogue 2 exercise

Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- ( ) Miss Akita will not go to karaoke with Mr Clark because she has a headache.
- ( ) Miss Akita will take some medicine she has bought before.



## Language points

### Illness

Here are some illness-related expressions. Note that **itai** “painful” and **warui** “bad” are i-adjectives, whereas **arimasu** “to have” is a verb.

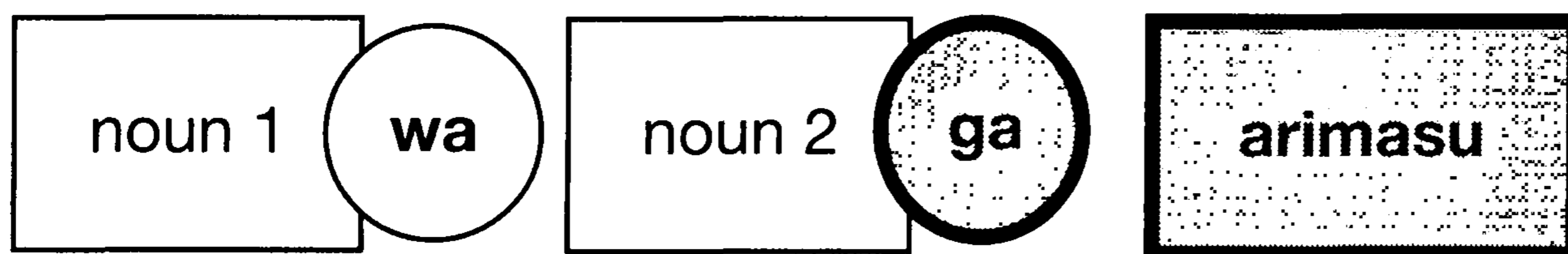
atama ga itai	have a headache
ha ga itai	have a toothache
kimochi ga warui	feel unwell, feel sick
netSU ga arimasu	have a fever
nodo ga itai	have a sore throat
onaka ga itai	have a stomachache

- Atama ga itai desu. Kusuri o kudasai.**  
I have a headache. Please give me some medicine.
- Q: **Kinō dōshite pātī e kimasendeshita ka.**  
Why didn't you come to the party yesterday?  
A: **Onaka ga itakatta desu kara.**  
Because I had a stomachache.



## Ownership: arimasu

In Unit 8, you learned **arimasu** as “there is/are” (pages 93–94). This **arimasu** is also used to express ownership.



- a. **Watashi wa netsu ga arimasu.**  
I have a fever.
- b. Q: **Kurāku-san wa Nihon no chizu ga arimasu ka.**  
Do you have a map of Japan, Mr Clark?
- A: **Īe, arimasen.**  
No, I do not have one.

## Giving and asking reasons (2)

When two sentences are connected and one of them states the reason for the other, they are connected by **kara** “because, so, so that”. Note that the reason appears in the first sentence, as shown below.



- a. **Fujisan wa kirē desu kara, yūmē desu.**  
*Mt. Fuji is beautiful so it is famous.*
- b. **Kimochi ga warui desu kara, nanimo tabetakunai desu.**  
*I feel unwell so I do not want to eat anything.*

## Exercise 3

Connect the first and second parts of the sentence so that they make sense, using the phrases in the box below.



*Example* Kyō wa yasumi desu **kara** ( ㄟ )

- 1 Watashi wa Nihon no ēga ga suki desu **kara** ( )
- 2 Kinō netsu ga arimashita **kara** ( )

- 3 Watashi wa ryokō ga suki desu **kara** ( )  
 4 Jikan ga arimasen **kara** ( )

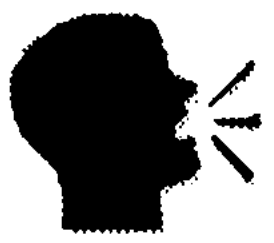
- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| a. asa kara ban made uchi de nemashita. |                            |
| b. <del>kaisha e ikimasen.</del>        | c. isogimashō.             |
| d. yoku uchi de mimasu.                 | e. yoku gaikoku e ikimasu. |



## Vocabulary

**ryokō** travel, trip  
**jikan** time

**isogimasu** to hurry



## Dialogue 3



A doctor gave me some medicine (**CD 2; 13**)

It is Monday morning. Miss Akita and Mr Clark have just arrived at work.

- AKITA Kurāku-san, senshū no kin-yōbi wa kusuri o arigatō gozaimashita.  
 KURĀKU Dō itashimashite. Akita-san wa mō daijōbu desu ka.  
 AKITA Hai, do-yōbi oisha-san ni kusuri o moraimashita kara.  
 KURĀKU Sō desu ka. Sore wa yokatta desu.  
 AKITA Tokorode, kin-yōbi no karaoke wa dō deshita ka.  
 KURĀKU Totemo tanoshikatta desu. Kondo Akita-san mo issho ni ikimashō.  
 AKITA Hai, zehi.



## Vocabulary

**daijōbu(na)** all right, OK  
 (na-adj.)  
**oisha-san** (medical) doctor  
**moraimashita** received

**tokorode** by the way  
**kondo** next time  
**zehi** by all means, definitely

## Dialogue 3 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Miss Akita went to see a doctor to receive some medicine last Saturday.
- 2 ( ) Mr Clark did not go to karaoke last Friday.

## Language points



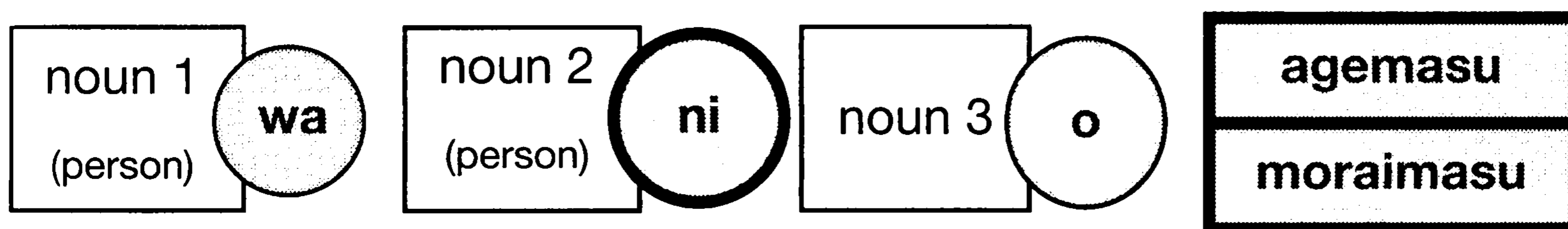
### Expressing one's gratitude

**Arigatō gozaimashita** is an expression to show one's gratitude. It is different from **arigatō gozaimasu** in that **arigatō gozaimashita** is used when the action that you feel grateful for has been completed.

- a. **Kinō wa arigatō gozaimashita.**  
Thank you for yesterday.
- b. **Kinō wa kusuri o arigatō gozaimashita.**  
Thank you for giving me the medicine yesterday.

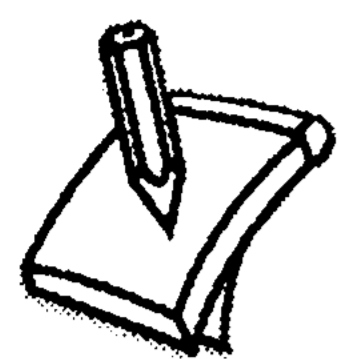
### Giving and receiving

The verbs **agemasu** and **moraimasu** mean “to give” and “to receive”. The recipient of the action is marked by **ni**.



- a. **Kurāku-san wa Akita-san ni kusuri o agemashita.**  
 Mr Clark gave Miss Akita some medicine.
- b. **Akita-san wa Kurāku-san ni kusuri o moraimashita.**  
 Miss Akita received some medicine from Mr Clark.

Note that when you are involved in this action as a giver or receiver, the action must be described from your viewpoint.



## Exercise 4

Underline the right word as in the example.

*Example* Yamada-san wa Kurāku-san ni DVD o (a. agemashita  
b. moraimashita). (receiver: Kurāku-san)

- 1 Watashi wa Yamada-san ni Igrisu no omiyage o (a. agemashita  
b. moraimashita). (receiver: Yamada-san)
- 2 Watashi wa Yamada-san ni hana o (a. agemashita  
b. moraimashita). (receiver: I)
- 3 (a. Maria-san b. Watashi) wa (c. Maria-san d. watashi)  
ni Nihon no hon o agetai desu. (giver: I)
- 4 Sensē wa maishū gakusē ni shukudai o (a. agemasu  
b. moraimasu). (giver: sensē)



## Vocabulary

omiyage souvenir, gift

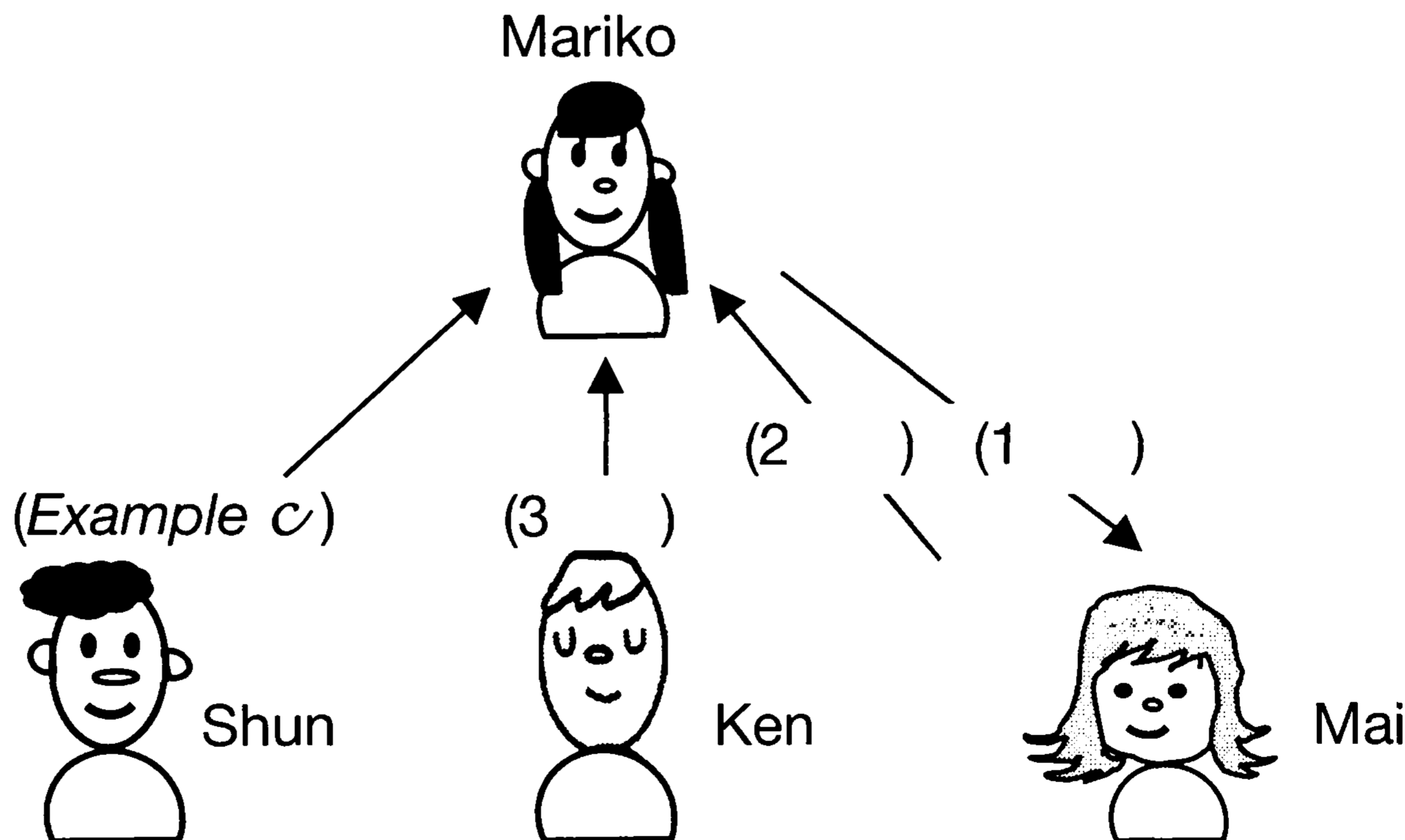
shukudai homework



## Exercise 5 (CD 2; 14)



Mariko has recently moved house. As house-warming presents, she received a lot of things from her friends but she also gave some of her belongings to them. Now another friend, Bob, has come to her house. Listen to their conversation and find out who gave what to whom.



a. tokē

b. terebi

c. ~~shashin~~ tate

d. denwa

e. hana

## Exercise 6



Put the correct particle or word in the space. Write ✕ if nothing is needed.

- 1 Watashi wa ima (o)mizu \_\_\_\_\_ hoshī desu.
- 2 Atama ga itai desu \_\_\_\_\_, kusuri o nomimasu.
- 3 Watashi wa tomodachi \_\_\_\_\_ omoshiroi hon o moraimashita.
- 4 Watashi wa yoku toshokan \_\_\_\_\_ shukudai o shimasu.
- 5 Watashi wa kuruma <sup>a</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ichi-dai <sup>b</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ arimasu.

## Exercise 7 (CD 2; 15)



Read out the following text and write ✓ if the statement agrees with the text and ✕ if not.



はるこさんは わたしの ともだちです。あしたは はるこさんの たんじょうびです。はるこさんは はなが すきですから、わたしは はるこさんに きれいな はなを あげます。そして、はるこさんは かびんが ありませんから、かびんも あげます。

Haruko-san wa watashi no tomodachi desu. Ashita wa Haruko-san no tanjōbi desu. Haruko-san wa hana ga suki desu kara, watashi wa Haruko-san ni kirēna hana o agemasu. Soshite, Haruko-san wa kabin ga arimasen kara, kabin mo agemasu.

- 1 ( ) I will give Haruko some beautiful flowers because she likes flowers.
- 2 ( ) I will give her a vase as well because I found a really nice one.

## Vocabulary

kabin vase



## Katakana of Unit 10

As with hiragana, “ヤ” “ユ” and “ヨ” can be attached to another katakana to create a combined sound. “ヤ” “ユ” and “ヨ” are written one quarter of the usual size.

キヤ(kya)	キュ(kyu)	キョ(kyo)	ギヤ(gya)	ギユ(gyu)	ギョ(gyo)
シャ sha)	シュ(shu)	ショ(sho)	ジャ(ja)	ジュ(ju)	ジョ(jo)
チャ cha)	チュ(chu)	チョ(cho)	チャ(ja)	チュ(ju)	チョ(jo)
ニヤ(nya)	ニユ(nyu)	ニョ(nyo)			
ヒヤ(hya)	ヒユ(hyu)	ヒョ(hyo)	ビヤ(bya)	ビユ(byu)	ビョ(byo)
ピヤ(pya)	ピユ(pyu)	ピョ(pyo)			
ミヤ(mya)	ミュ(myu)	ミョ(myo)			
リヤ(rya)	リュ(ryu)	リョ(ryo)			

In addition, “ア”, “イ”, “エ” and “オ” can be used with other Katakana.

ウイ: [ui] in ウイキペディア Wikipedia

ウエ: [ue] in ウエンディ Wendy

ウオ: [uo] in ウオーカー Walker

シェ: [she] in ミシェル Michelle

テイ: [ti] in ティム Tim

ジェ: [je] in ジェニー Jennie

デイ: [di] in ジュディス Judith

ファ: [fa] in クリストファー Christopher

フィ: [fi] in フィリップ Philip

フェ: [fe] in フェスティバル festival

フォ: [fo] in フォックス fox

[v] sound is spelled as either [B] (バビブベボ) or [V] (ヴァヴィヴ  
ヴェヴォ).

[tho] sound is spelled out as ソ [so] or ト [to]. Thornton ソーントン

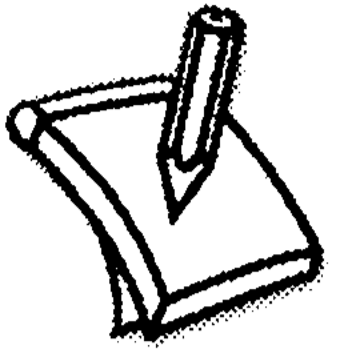
[thu] sound is spelled out as ス [su] Southampton サウスハン  
プトン

[tha/the] sound is spelled out as サ [sa]. Catherine キャサリン

[fa/fi/fu/fe/fo] and [pha/phi/phe/pho] become ファ、フィ、フ、  
フェ、フォ.

[or/er/ar/ir/ur] become long sounds (ー). George ジョージ,  
Robert ロバート

## Exercise 8



A. Which English names do the following names in katakana represent?

*Example* キャサリン (*d*)

- 1 エリザベス ( )
- 2 ビビアン/ヴィヴィアン ( )
- 3 ジェームズ ( )
- 4 ベンジャミン ( )
- 5 マシュー ( )

a. Vivian	b. Matthew	c. Benjamin
<del>d. Catherine</del>	e. Elizabeth	f. James

B. Which places do the following names in katakana represent?

- 1 カルフォルニア ( )
- 2 リオデジャネイロ ( )
- 3 バンクーバー ( )
- 4 バーミンガム ( )
- 5 ニューデリー ( )

a. Vancouver	b. Birmingham	c. California
d. New Delhi	e. Rio de Janeiro	

# Unit Eleven

## Shinjuku Gyoen wa hirokute kirēna kōen desu

Shinjuku Gyoen is a spacious and  
beautiful park



In this unit you will learn about:

- more adjectives
- how to connect sentences which contain **i**-adjectives, **na**-adjectives and nouns
- talking about the weather
- how to express a change of state, using adjective + **narimasu**
- how to change adjectives into adverbs
- kanji of Unit 11

一、二、三、四、五、六、七、八、九、十、百、千、万、円



### Dialogue 1



Shinjuku Gyoen is a spacious and beautiful park  
(CD 2; 16)

Mr Tanaka and Miss Smith are friends. They are discussing their plans for this weekend.

たなか スミスさんは きゅうじつ よく なにを しますか。

スミス わたしは よく こうえんへ さんぽに いきます。

たなか そうですか。じゃあ、こんしゅうの どようび いっしょに  
しんじゆく ぎょえんへ いきませんか。

スミス しんじゆくぎょえんは なんですか。



たなか しんじゅくぎょえんは ひろくて きれいな こうえんです。  
しんじゅくに あります。

スミス しんじゅくえきから とおいですか。

たなか いいえ、ちかいですよ。  
しんじゅくえきから あるいて 10ぶんぐらいです。

スミス それは べんりですね。  
じゃあ、こんしゅうの どようび いっしょに いきましょう。

TANAKA Sumisu-san wa kyūjitsu yoku nani o shimasu ka.

SUMISU Watashi wa yoku kōen e sanpo ni ikimasu.

TANAKA Sō desu ka. Jā, konshū no do-yōbi, issho ni Shinjuku Gyoen e ikimasen ka.

SUMISU Shinjuku Gyoen wa nan desu ka.

TANAKA Shinjuku Gyoen wa hirokute kirēna kōen desu. Shinjuku ni arimasu.

SUMISU Shinjuku eki kara tōi desu ka.

TANAKA Īe, chikai desu yo. Shinjuku eki kara aruite 10-pun gurai desu.

SUMISU Sore wa benri desu ne. Jā, konshū no do-yōbi, issho ni ikimashō.

## Vocabulary

A  
CB

きゅうじつ	kyūjitsu	off-duty day, day off
さんぽ (さんぽします)	sanpo (sanpo shimasu)	walk, stroll (to go for a walk)
しんじゅくぎょえん	Shinjuku Gyoen	one of the parks in Tokyo
ひろい (i-adj.)	hiro	spacious
ちかい (i-adj.)	chikai	near, close

## Dialogue 1 exercise

Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write X if not.

- ( ) Shinjuku Gyoen is a beautiful and spacious park.
- ( ) Shinjuku Gyoen is far from Shinjuku station.





## Language point

### Adjectives

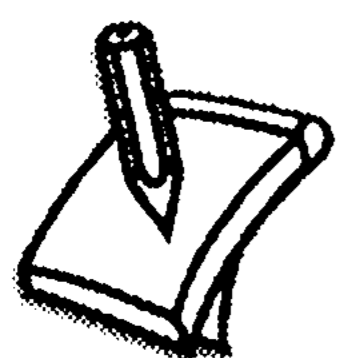
As you learned in Unit 5, Japanese adjectives have two types: **i**-adjectives and **na**-adjectives (pages 56–57). All **i**-adjectives have い (**i**) at the end whereas **na**-adjectives end with various sounds.

#### *i*-adjectives

あまい	<b>amai</b>	sweet	あかるい	<b>akarui</b>	bright
からい	<b>karai</b>	hot, spicy	くらい	<b>kurai</b>	dark
やわらかい	<b>yawarakai</b>	soft	おおい	<b>ōi</b>	many
ひろい	<b>hiro</b>	spacious	すくない	<b>sukunai</b>	few
せまい	<b>semai</b>	narrow	うるさい	<b>urusai</b>	noisy
おもい	<b>omoi</b>	heavy	こわい	<b>kowai</b>	scary
かるい	<b>karui</b>	light (weight)	うつくしい	<b>utsukushī</b>	beautiful

#### *na*-adjectives

けんこう(な)	<b>kenkō(na)</b>	healthy	あんぜん(な)	<b>anzen(na)</b>	safe
じゆう(な)	<b>jiyū(na)</b>	free			



## Exercise 1

Circle the appropriate adjective which matches the English translation.

- 1 (a. せまい    b. はやい    c. おそい)    電車 (a *fast* train)
- 2 (a. おもい    b. かるい    c. こわい)    かばん (a *light-weight* bag)
- 3 (a. あかるい    b. うるさい    c. くらい)    へや (a *dark* room)
- 4 (a. けんこうな    b. あんぜんな    c. じゆうな)    じかん (*free* time)
- 5 (a. あまい    b. からい    c. ちかい)    コーヒー (*sweet* coffee)



## Language point

### Connecting sentences which contain **i**-adjectives, **na**-adjectives and nouns

So far, you have learned how to connect nouns or sentences in the following ways: **to**, as in **hon to zasshi** “a book *and* a magazine” and

**soshite/sorekara**, as in **Kono kōen wa hiroi desu. Soshite, kirē desu** “This park is spacious. *And* it is beautiful”. In this unit, you will learn how to join two or more sentences into one by using the **te**-form.

## i-adjectives

When i-adjectives are followed by another predicate such as another adjective, “i” in the i-adjective (e.g. **atarashii**) becomes **kute** (**kunakute** for the negative form).

### Examples

(i-adj.)	————→	(drop i)	→	(add <b>kute</b> )		(add <b>kunakute</b> for negative)
<b>ōkii</b> big		<b>ōki</b>		<b>ōkikute</b>		<b>ōkikunakute</b>
<b>atarashii</b> new		<b>atarashi</b>		<b>atarashikute</b>		<b>atarashikunakute</b>

a. **Kono resutoran no tabemono wa oishikute, yasui desu.**

The food at this restaurant is delicious and cheap.

b. **Watashi wa amakute oishī kōhī ga suki desu.**

I like sweet and tasty coffee.

Note that **ii desu** “good” becomes **yokute** instead of **ikute**.

<b>ii</b> good		<b>yokute</b> good		<b>yokunakute</b> not good
----------------	--	--------------------	--	----------------------------

## na-adjectives and nouns

When na-adjectives or nouns are followed by another predicate, **desu** after the na-adjectives/nouns (e.g. **shizuka desu**, **gakusē desu**) becomes **de** (**dewanakute** for the negative form).

### Examples

#### na-adjectives

(na-adj.)	————→	(drop na)	→	(affirmative / negative)
<b>anzenna</b> safe		<b>enzen</b>		<b>enzen de</b> <b>enzen dewanakute</b>
<b>benrina</b> convenient		<b>benri</b>		<b>benri de</b> <b>benri dewanakute</b>
<b>shizukana</b> quiet		<b>shizuka</b>		<b>shizuka de</b> <b>shizuka dewanakute</b>

#### Nouns

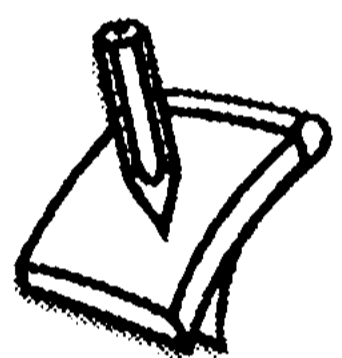
(noun)	————→	(affirmative / negative)
<b>gakusē</b> student		<b>gakusē de</b> <b>gakusē dewanakute</b>
<b>21-sai</b> 21 years old		<b>21-sai de</b> <b>21-sai dewanakute</b>

- a. **Yamada-san wa shizuka de, shinsetsuna hito desu.**  
Mrs Yamada is a quiet and kind person.
- b. **Kono machi wa anzen de benri desu.**  
This town is safe and convenient.
- c. **Watashi no ane wa 21-sai dewanakute, 22-sai desu.**  
My elder sister is not 21 but 22 years old.

Note that **ga** “but” is used when the connected sentences disagree with each other in terms of the positive/negative value.

**Kono resutoran wa kirē dewa arimasen ga oishī desu.**  
This restaurant is *not clean* but *its food is tasty*.

**Watashi no uchi wa benri desu ga chotto semai desu.**  
My house is *convenient* but *short of space*.



## Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms.

		Connective form (affirmative)	Connective form (negative)
i-adj.	atsui <b>desu</b> (hot)	atsukute	atsukunakute
	chikai desu (near)	1)	2)
	ī desu (good)	3)	4)
na-adj.	daijōbu <b>desu</b> (all right)	daijōbu <b>de</b>	daijōbu <b>dewanakute</b>
	suki desu (like)	5)	6)
	kenkō desu (healthy)	7)	8)
Noun	gakusē <b>desu</b> (student)	gakusē <b>de</b>	gakusē <b>dewanakute</b>
	kaisha desu (company)	9)	10)



## Exercise 3

Connect the following two sentences into one, using the appropriate connective form.

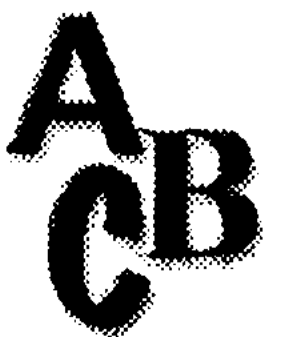
*Example* Kono kōen wa (hiroi) hirokute kirē desu.  
(This park is spacious and beautiful.)

- 1 Nihon-go wa (omoshiroi) \_\_\_\_\_ tanoshī desu.  
(Japanese is interesting and enjoyable.)
- 2 Nihon no tabemono wa karada ni (ī) \_\_\_\_\_ oishī desu.  
(Japanese food is healthy and tasty.)
- 3 Kinō no pātī wa (nigiyaka) \_\_\_\_\_ tanoshikatta desu.  
(The party yesterday was lively and fun.)
- 4 Yamada-san wa sakkā ga (jōzu) \_\_\_\_\_, furansu-go ga wakarimasu.  
(Mr Yamada is good at football and understands French.)
- 5 Kore wa (watashi no tokē) \_\_\_\_\_, sore wa otōto no tokē desu.  
(This is my watch and that is my younger brother's watch.)

## Vocabulary

karada ni ī healthy (*lit.* "good for one's body")

sakkā football



## Dialogue 2



It became warmer in the afternoon (CD 2; 17)

Mr Tanaka and Miss Smith are talking about last weekend.



- たなか スミスさんは せんしゅうの しゅうまつ なにを しましたか。  
 スミス ともだちと ちかくの やまへ きました。  
 たなか そうですか。てんきは どうでしたか。  
 スミス よかったですよ。ごぜんは すこし くもりで、さむかったですが、  
 ごごから あたたかく なりました。  
 たなか やまの ちょうじょうまで きましたか。  
 スミス はい。あるいて きましたから 2じかん かかりました。  
 たなか それは たいへんでしたね。  
 スミス はい。でも、ちょうじょうからの けしきは ほんとうに  
 うつくしかったです。  
 たなか ちょうじょうは ひどが おおかったですか。  
 スミス いいえ、すくなかったです。

TANAKA Sumisu-san wa senshū no shūmatsu nani o shimashita ka.  
 SUMISU Tomodachi to chikaku no yama e ikimashita.

- TANAKA Sō desu ka. Tenki wa dō deshita ka.  
 SUMISU Yokatta desu yo. Gozen wa sukoshi kumori de, samukatta desu ga, gogo kara atatakaku narimashita.  
 TANAKA Yama no chōjō made ikimashita ka.  
 SUMISU Hai. Aruite ikimashita kara, 2-jikan kakarimashita.  
 TANAKA Sore wa taihen deshita ne.  
 SUMISU Hai. Demo, chōjō kara no keshiki wa hontō ni utsukushikatta desu.  
 TANAKA Chōjō wa hito ga ōkatta desu ka.  
 SUMISU Īe, sukunakatta desu.



## Vocabulary

やま	yama	mountain
くもり	kumori	cloudy
あたたかい (i-adj.)	atatakai	warm
なります	narimasu	to become
ちょうじょう	chōjō	top, summit
けしき	keshiki	view, scenery



## Dialogue 2 exercise

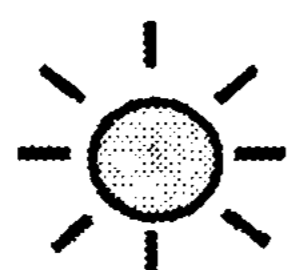
Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) On the day when Miss Smith went to the nearby mountain, it was cold in the morning but became warm in the afternoon.
- 2 ( ) Miss Smith could not see any view from the top of the mountain because of the cloud.



## Language points

### Vocabulary for weather



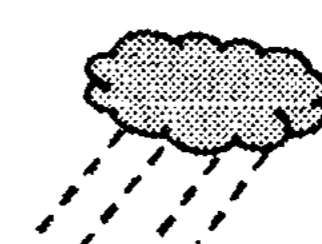
**hare** sunny



**kumori** cloudy



**kaze** wind



**ame** rain



**yuki** snow

- a. **Kyō wa hare desu.**  
It is fine weather today.
- b. **Kinō wa yuki deshita kara, samukatta desu.**  
Yesterday it was snowy so it was cold.
- c. **Ashita no tenki wa, kumori tokidoki ame desu.**  
As for tomorrow's weather, it will be cloudy with occasional rain.

## Expressing a change of state: adjective + narimasu

Adjective + **narimasu** “become” is used to indicate a change of state of something, someone, or some place. The form before **narimasu** differs between **i**-adjectives and **na**-adjectives/nouns as below:

### **i**-adjective + **narimasu**

When **i**-adjectives are in front of **narimasu**, you change **i** to **ku** as below:

- a. **Gogo kara atatakaku narimasu.**  
It will become warm from the afternoon.
- b. **Saikin gogo 8-ji kara kuraku narimasu.**  
It has been getting dark after 8 p.m. recently.

Note that **ī** “good” becomes **yoku** instead of “**iku**”.

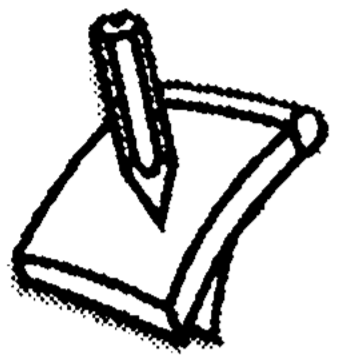
- c. **Tenki ga yoku narimashita.**  
The weather has become better.

### **na**-adjective/noun + **narimasu**

When **na**-adjectives or nouns are in front of **narimasu**, you add **ni** as below:

- d. **Kusuri o nomimashita kara, genkini narimashita.**  
I have got better (*lit.* become well), because I took some medicine.
- e. **Watashi wa tenisu ga jōzuni narimashita.**  
I became good at playing tennis.

- f. **Sengetsu 21-sai ni narimashita.**  
I became 21 years old last month.
- g. **Watashi wa Ēgo no sensē ni naritai desu.**  
I want to become an English teacher.



## Exercise 4

Change the words in the brackets appropriately as shown in the example.

*Example* Watashi no ane wa (isha) isha ni narimashita.

- 1 Kinō kara (samui) \_\_\_\_\_ narimashita.
- 2 Watashi wa Nihon no ēga ga (suki) \_\_\_\_\_ narimashita.
- 3 Watashi wa raigetsu (25-sai) \_\_\_\_\_ narimasu.
- 4 Ashita kara kyūjitsu desu kara (hima) \_\_\_\_\_ narimasu.



## Language point

### **Changing adjectives into adverbs**

Adjectives can be changed into adverbs as shown below:

**i**-adjectives: change **i** to **ku**

**karui** light – **karuku** lightly

**yawarakai** soft – **yawarakaku** softly

- a. **Ashita kara ryokō desu kara, watashi wa konban hayaku nemasu.**

Because I am going on a trip from tomorrow, I will go to bed early tonight.

- b. **Watashi wa namae o ōkiku kakimashita.**

I wrote my name in large print. (*lit.* “I wrote my name large”.)



**na**-adjectives: change **na** to **ni**

**shizuka**(*na*) quiet – **shizukani** quietly

**anzen**(*na*) safe – **anzenni** safely

c. **Kinō watashi wa toshokan de shizukani Nihon-go o benkyō shimashita.**

Yesterday, I studied Japanese quietly at the library.

d. **Ano hito wa jōzuni te de sushi o tabemasu.**

That person eats sushi with his/her hands well.

## Exercise 5

Change the following adjectives in the brackets into adverbs appropriately.



- 1 Watashi wa kesa (hayai)\_\_\_\_\_ okimashita.  
(I woke up early this morning.)
- 2 Buraun-san wa Nihon no uta o totemo (jōzu)\_\_\_\_\_ utaimasu.  
(Miss Brown sings a Japanese song very well.)
- 3 Watashi wa kinō (osoi)\_\_\_\_\_ nemashita.  
(I went to bed late yesterday.)
- 4 Kodomo ga (jiyū)\_\_\_\_\_ e o kakimasu.  
(A child draws a picture freely.)

## Vocabulary

<b>uta</b>	song
<b>utaimasu</b>	to sing
<b>kodomo</b>	child, children, kid



## Exercise 6 (CD 2; 18)

Listen to the conversation between Mr Tanaka and Miss Smith and write ✓ if the statement agrees with it and ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) It has become cold and dark.
- 2 ( ) Mr Tanaka and Miss Smith have decided to go to a coffee shop.



## Kanji: Historical background and kun-yomi/on-yomi

Kanji, which is commonly used along with hiragana and katakana, was imported from China to Japan around 2,000 years ago by Japanese monks. At that time, the Japanese language did not have its own writing system. After importing kanji, the Japanese people developed hiragana and katakana by simplifying or taking a part of a kanji. Nowadays, Japanese pupils learn 2,136 kanji set by the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology in 2010 before completing their nine-year compulsory education. This book will introduce you to approximately 60 kanji.

One of the characteristics of kanji is that it carries both sound and meaning. For example, kanji 「私」 tells you that its sound is **watashi** and it means I. What makes learning kanji slightly difficult is that the majority of kanji characters have multiple sounds and meanings. Those whose sounds have come from Japanese pronunciation are called **kun-yomi** and those whose sounds have come from Chinese pronunciation are called **on-yomi**. This book gives both readings, as shown in the following table. Hiragana and katakana are used for kun-yomi and on-yomi respectively, as found in Japanese dictionaries. However, you use hiragana when you transcribe kanji in order to read it.

<i>Kan-ji</i>	<i>Kun-yomi</i>	<i>On-yomi</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
私	わたし	シ	I, private
ノ ㄥ 千 才 朱 私 私			

As for when to use **kun/on-yomi**, the basic rule is that you use **kun-yomi** when the kanji is used either on its own or with hiragana but you use **on-yomi** when the kanji appears in conjunction with other kanji. For instance, you use **kun-yomi** for 私 when it appears on its own, whereas you use **on-yomi** for 私学 “private school” as it is used together with another kanji. Note, however, that a lot of

exceptions exist so it is advisable that you remember the kanji as part of your vocabulary.

It is very important to follow the stroke order when you write kanji. The basic rules regarding stroke order include (a) draw from left to right (e.g. 「一」), (b) draw from top to bottom (e.g. 「人」) and (c) draw from left component (e.g. for 「休」, draw 「亻」 first) or top component (e.g. 「売」, draw 「士」 first).

## Exercise 7



A. Write “K” when the underlined kanji uses kun-yomi and “O” when it uses on-yomi.

*Example* 富士山 (O) あの山 (K) 男子 (O) 男の子 (K)

- 1 この人 this person ( )
- 2 日本人 Japanese people ( )
- 3 休日 day off ( )
- 4 休みます to rest ( )
- 5 木 a tree ( )
- 6 木曜日 Thursday ( )
- 7 強いです strong ( )
- 8 勉強します to study ( )

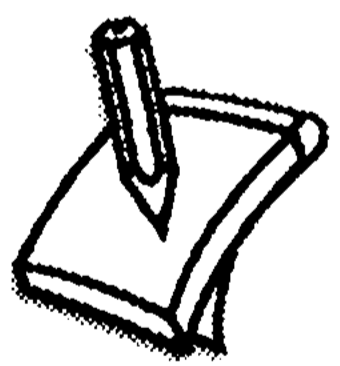
B. Draw 私 in the boxes below, according to the stroke order. Note that the right half of the character 「ム」 consists of only two strokes.

私	私	私	私	私
---	---	---	---	---

Extra kanji exercise sheets for Units 11–16 are free to download at:  
[www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304](http://www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304).

# Kanji of Unit 11: Kanji for numbers

Kanji	Kun-yomi	On-yomi	Meaning	Kanji	Kun-yomi	On-yomi	Meaning
一	ひとつ	イチ	one	八	やっ(つ)	ハチ	eight
一				八			
二	ふた(つ)	ニ	two	九	この(つ)	キュウ/ク	nine
二				九			
三	みっ(つ)	サン	three	十	とお	ジュウ	ten
三				十			
四	よっ(つ)	ヨン/シ	four	百		ヒヤク/ ビヤク/ピヤク	hundred
四				百			
五	いつ(つ)	ゴ	five	千	ち	セン/ゼン	thousand
五				千			
六	むっ(つ)	ロク	six	万		マン	ten thousand
六				万			
七	なな(つ)	ナナ/シチ	seven	円		エン	Yen, circle
七				円			



## Exercise 8

Write how to read the following numbers in hiragana as the example shows. Japanese is read right to left when written vertically.

Example <sup>ななじゅうきゅうえん</sup> 七十九円

十	九	八	七	六	五	四	三	二	一
八	二	一	六	二	一	十	千	三	百
つ	つ	つ	百	十	万	七	四	十	円
			二十	万	八	さい	百	九	
			円	円	千	い	五十	さい	
					円		円		

# Unit Twelve

## Musuko-san wa se ga takai desu ne

Your son is tall, isn't he?

In this unit you will learn about:

- how to describe one's physical features, using the **X wa Y ga** + adjective structure
- comparative and superlative expressions
- terms for body parts and colours
- kanji of Unit 12

人、山、川、女、子、口、上、下、大、小



### Dialogue 1



He is tall (CD 2; 19)

Mrs Kato is showing a picture of her son to her friend, Mr Jones.

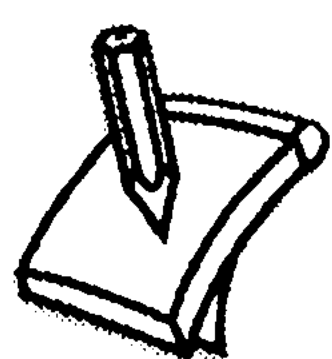


- かとう ジョーンズさん、これは むすこの しゃしんです。  
ジョーンズ かとうさんに そっくりですね。いま なんさいですか。  
かとう せんげつ 16さいに なりました。  
ジョーンズ むすこさんは あしが ながいですね。そして せが たかいですね。  
かとう はい、かぞくのなかで いちばん せが たかいです。  
ジョーンズ いま、なんセンチぐらい ですか。  
かとう たぶん 185センチぐらい です。

- KATŌ Jōnzu-san, kore wa musuko no shashin desu.  
 JŌNZU Katō-san ni sokkuri desu ne. Ima nan-sai desu ka.  
 KATŌ Sengetsu 16-sai ni narimashita.  
 JŌNZU Musuko-san wa ashi ga nagai desu ne. Soshite se ga takai desu ne.  
 KATŌ Hai, kazoku no naka de ichi-ban se ga takai desu.  
 JŌNZU Ima, nan-senchi gurai desu ka.  
 KATŌ Tabun 185-senchi gurai desu.

**A  
CB**
**Vocabulary**

むすこ	<b>musuko</b>	son
そっくり(な) (na-adj.)	<b>sokkuri(na)</b>	to closely resemble someone
あし	<b>ashi</b>	leg, foot
ながい (i-adj.)	<b>nagai</b>	long
せが たかい	<b>se ga takai</b>	tall
せ	<b>se</b>	stature, height
～のなかで	<b>... no naka de</b>	among
いちばん	<b>ichi-ban</b>	first, best, top, most
センチ	<b>senchi</b>	centimetre
たぶん	<b>tabun</b>	probably, maybe


**Dialogue 1 exercise**

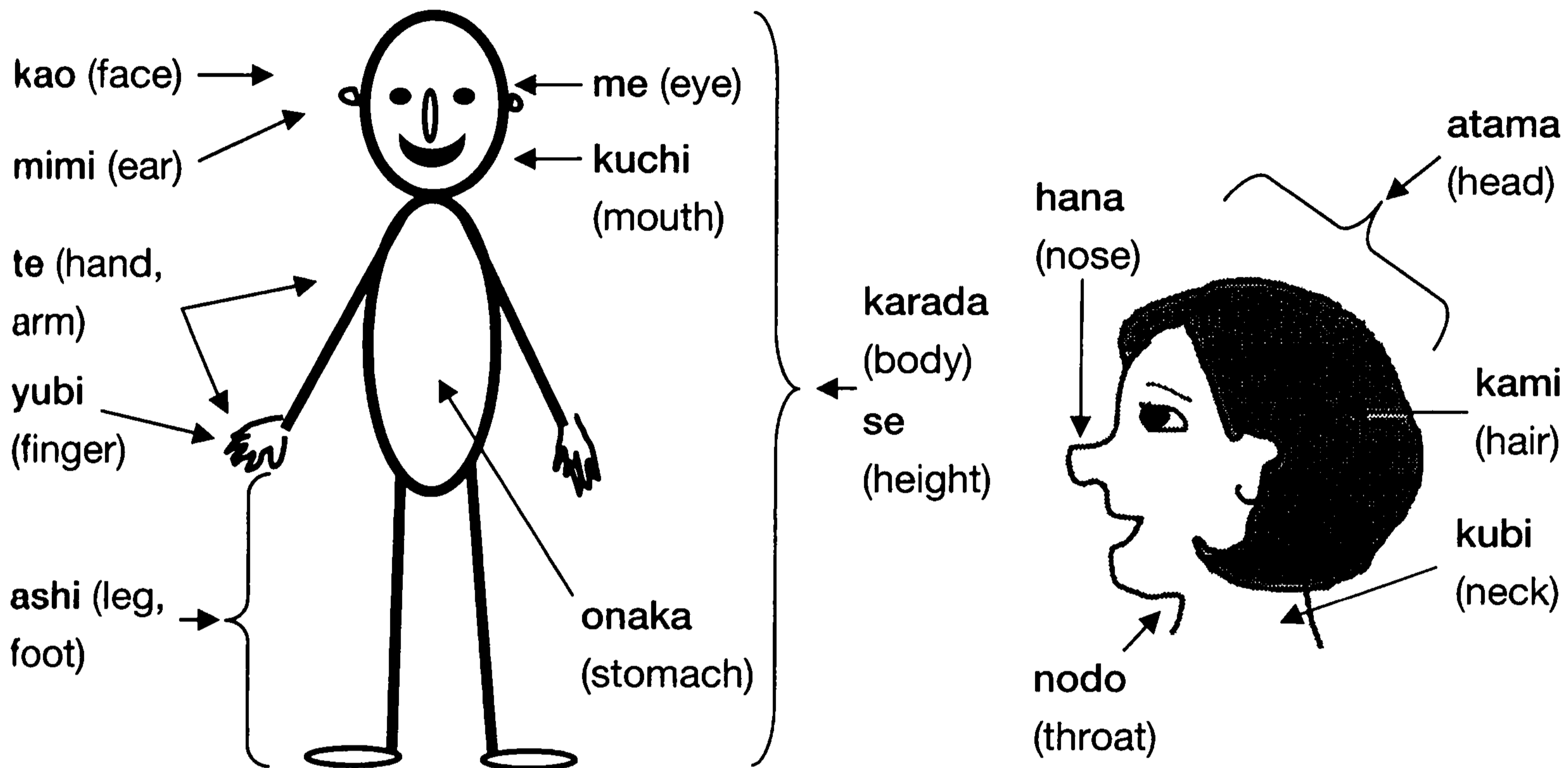
Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Mrs Kato's son has long legs.
- 2 ( ) Mrs Kato's son is smallest in the family.

## Language points

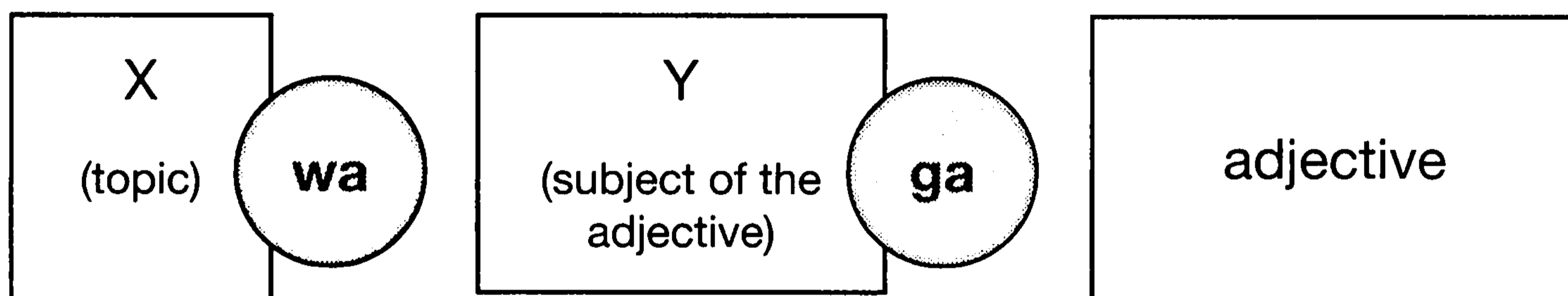


## Body parts

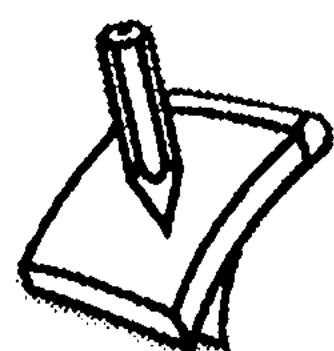


## Describing things with the X wa Y ga + adjective structure

In the **X wa Y ga + adjective** structure, X takes the main topic of the sentence and Y takes what is related to X, followed by the adjective which describes Y. For instance, you want to talk about Japan, particularly about its fish, which you find tasty. In this case, **Nihon** “Japan” is the main topic of the sentence (X) and **sakana** “fish” the related topic (Y) as in **Nihon wa sakana ga oishī desu**.



- Nihon wa sakana ga oishī desu.**  
Talking about Japan, its fish is tasty.
- Yamamoto-san wa kami ga kirē desu.**  
Miss Yamada has beautiful hair.
- Kimura-san wa me ga ōkī desu.**  
Mrs Kimura has big eyes.



## Exercise 1

Write the appropriate body parts in the brackets and adjectives on the line according to the English meaning.

*Example* Tokiko-san wa (*se*) ga takai desu. (Tokiko is tall.)

- 1 Tokiko-san wa ( ) ga \_\_\_\_\_ (Tokiko has long hair.)
- 2 Tokiko-san wa ( ) ga \_\_\_\_\_ (Tokiko has black eyes.)
- 3 Tokiko-san wa ( ) ga \_\_\_\_\_ (Tokiko has small hands.)
- 4 Tokiko-san wa ( ) ga \_\_\_\_\_ (Tokiko is clever. [*lit.* “Tokiko’s head/brain is good”])



## Vocabulary

**kuroi** (i-adj.) black



## Exercise 2

Answer the following questions, using the cue in the brackets. For question 4, write your own answer.

*Example* Nihon wa nani ga benri desu ka. (bullet train)  
*Nihon wa shinkansen ga benri desu.*

- 1 Nihon wa nani ga yūmē desu ka. (Mt. Fuji)
- 2 Kyōto wa nani ga ōi desu ka. (old temples)
- 3 Nihon no tabemono wa nani ga oishī desu ka. (sushi)
- 4 Anata no kuni wa nani ga yūmē desu ka.

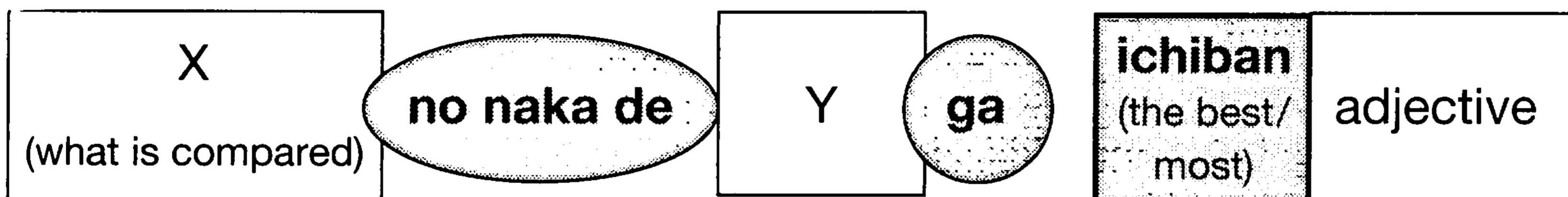


## Language point

### **Superlative expressions: ichi-ban + adjective**

When you want to say “the most + adjective”, you use **ichi-ban** “the best, the most” before the adjective. For instance, “I like tennis the most” in Japanese is **Watashi wa tenisu ga ichi-ban suki desu**. To specify what items are compared, . . . **no naka de** “among . . .” is used in two ways: 1) listing all the items (**X to Y to Z no naka de**) or 2) stating the category which X, Y and Z belong to (**[Category] no naka de**).





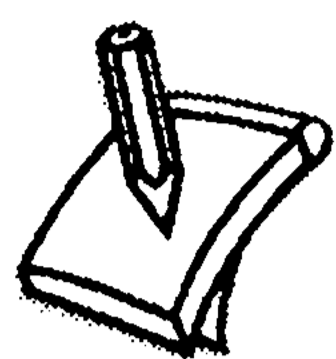
- a. ***Tenisu to sakkā to basukettobōru no naka de (watashi wa) tenisu ga ichi-ban suki desu.***  
I like *tennis* the best among tennis, football and basketball.
- b. ***Supōtsu no naka de (watashi wa) tenisu ga ichi-ban suki desu.***  
I like *tennis* the most among sports.

To ask a question with this structure, you put an interrogative word in the position of Y as shown above, followed by the verbal question marker **ka** at the end of the sentence. The interrogative word is determined by what is being asked (time, place, person, etc.).

- c. Q: ***Hiragana to katakana to kanji no naka de dore ga ichi-ban muzukashī desu ka.***  
Which do you find most difficult, Hiragana, Katakana or Kanji?
- A: ***Kanji ga ichi-ban muzukashī desu.***  
Kanji is most difficult.
- d. Q: ***Kuni no naka de doko ga ichi-ban ōkī desu ka.***  
Which country/where is the biggest country?
- A: ***Roshia ga ichi-ban ōkī desu.***  
Russia is the biggest.

Note that when the **~wa ~ga + adjective** structure is used in this pattern, **ga** will appear twice.

- e. Q: ***Kazoku no naka de, dare ga ichi-ban se ga takai desu ka.***  
Who is the tallest of the family?
- A: ***Watashi ga ichi-ban se ga takai desu.***  
I am the tallest.
- f. Q: ***Tomodachi no naka de dare ga ichi-ban ashi ga hayai desu ka.***  
Who is the fastest among your friends?
- A: ***Shinji-san ga ichi-ban ashi ga hayai desu.***  
Shinji is the fastest.



### Exercise 3

Translate the following English sentences into Japanese.

*Example* I like “な” the most among all the Hiragana.

*Watashi wa hiragana no naka de* [な]  
*ga ichiban suki desu.*

- 1 August is the hottest [month] of the year.
- 2 Wednesday is the busiest [day] of the week.
- 3 Of Spanish, Japanese and French, I am best at French.



### Vocabulary

ichi-nen a year

is-shūkan a week

「 」 Japanese quotation marks  
equivalent to English “ ”



### Dialogue 2



I prefer the brighter coloured one (**CD 2; 20**)

Mr Jones is buying a new pair of glasses and Mrs Kato is helping him to choose them.

ジョーンズ かとうさん、このめがねやは おきゃくさんが おおいですね。

かとう ここは やすくて にんきが ありますから。

ジョーンズ いろいろな めがねが ありますね。

かとう そうですね。ジョーンズさんは あかるい いろと くらい  
いろと どちらのほうが すきですか。

ジョーンズ あかるい いろ のほうが すきです。

かとう じゃあ、この あかい めがねは どうですか。

ジョーンズ ちょっと はでですね。

かとう じゃあ、この ちゃいろい めがねは どうですか。

ジョーンズ すてきですね。それに します。

JŌNZU Katō-san, kono megane-ya wa okyakusan ga ōi desu ne.

KATŌ Koko wa yasukute ninki ga arimasu kara.

JŌNZU Iroiro na megane ga arimasu ne.

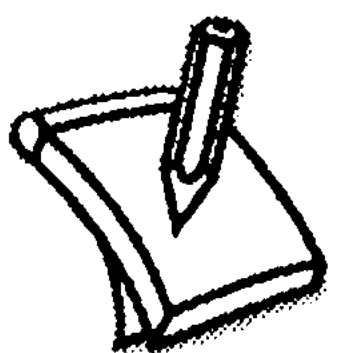
KATŌ	Sō desu ne. Jōnzu-san wa akarui iro to kurai iro to dochira no hō ga suki desu ka.
JŌNZU	Akarui iro no hō ga suki desu.
KATŌ	Jā, kono akai megane wa dō desu ka.
JŌNZU	Chotto hade desu ne.
KATŌ	Jā, kono chairoi megane wa dō desu ka.
JŌNZU	Suteki desu ne. Sore ni shimasu.

## Vocabulary



おきゃくさん	okyakusan	visitor, customer
にんき	ninki	popularity
いろ	iro	colour
どちら	dochira	which one of the two
のほうが～より + adj.	... no hō ga ... yori + adj.	be more (adj.) than ...
あかい (i-adj.)	akai	red
はで(な) (na-adj.)	hade(na)	showy, gaudy
ちやいろい (i-adj.)	chairoi	brown
すてき(な) (na-adj.)	suteki(na)	wonderful
～にします	... ni shimasu	I will take ..., an expression for stating one's own choice

## Dialogue 2 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- ( ) Mr Jones prefers bright colours to dark colours.
- ( ) Mr Jones has decided to buy a red pair of glasses.

## Language points



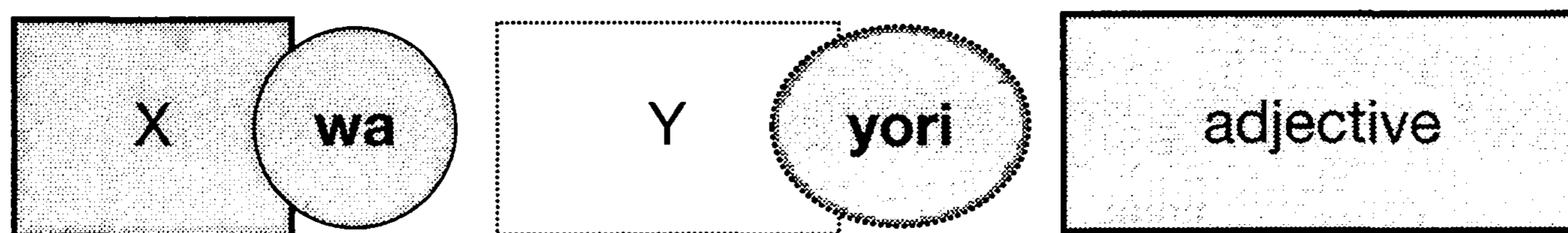
### Colours

The majority of colour terms are i-adjectives but there are some which are nouns. When “i” is dropped from the i-adjective colour term, it becomes a colour noun.

<i>i-adjective</i>			<i>Noun</i>	
<b>akai</b>	red	→	<b>aka</b>	red
<b>aoi</b>	blue	→	<b>ao</b>	blue
<b>kuroi</b>	black	→	<b>kuro</b>	black
<b>shiroi</b>	white	→	<b>shiro</b>	white
<b>kīroi</b>	yellow	→	<b>kīro</b>	yellow
<b>chairoi</b>	brown	→	<b>chairo</b>	brown
			<b>midori</b>	green
			<b>pinku</b>	pink

### Comparing two things: X wa Y yori + adjective

A sentence which compares two items (X and Y) takes the **X wa Y yori + adjective** structure. **Yori** is equivalent to the English “than” and is attached to the noun (Y) which is less [adjective]. Therefore, X is more [adjective] than Y.



a. **Nihon wa Igirisu yori ōkī desu.**

Japan is bigger than the UK.

b. **Kyō wa kinō yori samui desu.**

Today is colder than yesterday.

The interrogative for this pattern is **dochira (no hō)**, meaning “which one of the two”. The sentence pattern for questioning is **X to Y to dochira (no hō) ga + adjective ka**, whereas the pattern for replying is **X no hō ga + adjective**. **No hō** can be omitted in the question sentence, but not in the reply.

c. Q: **Akarui iro to kurai iro to dochira (no hō) ga suki desu ka.**

Which do you prefer, bright colours or dark colours?

A: **Akarui iro no hō ga suki desu.**

I prefer bright colours.

To answer “both of them”, you say **dochira mo**. Note that you do not use **ga** after **dochira mo**.

d. Q: **Shinkansen to hikōki to dochira (no hō) ga benri deshita ka.**

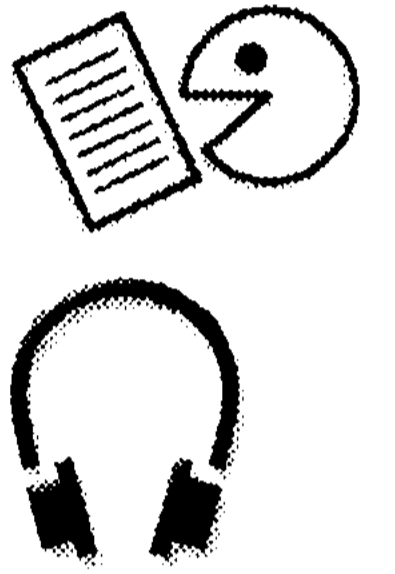
Which was more convenient, the bullet train or aeroplane?

A: **Dochira mo benri deshita.**

Both were convenient.

## Exercise 4 (CD 2; 21)

Read out the following sentences and answer the questions by indicating either a) or b) as shown in the example.



*Example* このほんは あのほんより おもいです。

Which is heavier, this book or that book over there?

a. このほん b. あのほん

1 ひのでスーパーは あさひスーパーより たかいです。

Which supermarket is more expensive?

a. ひのでスーパー b. あさひスーパー

2 でんしゃは バスより はやいです。

Which is faster, train or bus? a. でんしゃ b. バス

3 ほんださんは もりさんより かみが ながいです。

Who has shorter hair, Miss Honda or Miss Mori?

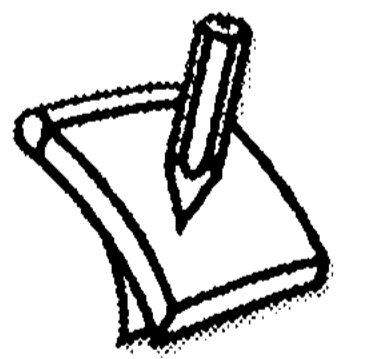
a. ほんださん b. もりさん

4 きのは きょうより あたたかかったです。

Which was colder, today or yesterday? a. きょう b. きのう

## Exercise 5

Answer the following questions in Japanese.



*Example* Basu to densha to dochira no hō ga suki desu ka.

(densha)

*Densha no hō ga suki desu.*

1 Getsu-yōbi to ka-yōbi to dochira no hō ga hima desu ka.

(getsu-yōbi)

2 Hiragana to katakana to dochira no hō ga muzukashī desu ka.

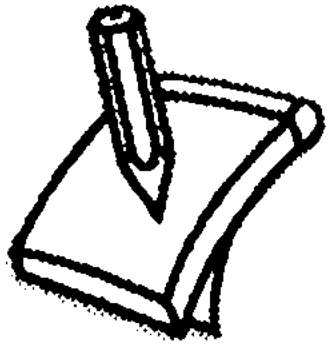
(katakana)

3 Umi to yama to dochira no hō ga suki desu ka. (both, like)



## Vocabulary

umi sea, ocean



### Exercise 6 (CD 2; 22)



Listen to a series of conversations between Kelley and Kenji and answer the following questions.

- 1 Who is tallest in Kenji's family?
  - a. Kenji's father
  - b. Kenji's elder sister
  - c. Kenji
- 2 Which guitar does Kenji use most often?
  - a. the new white guitar
  - b. the old white guitar
  - c. the big new guitar
- 3 What month does Kelley like most?
  - a. April
  - b. July
  - c. December



## Vocabulary

wakai (i-adj.) young

gitā guitar

tsukaimasu to use



### Exercise 7

Put the appropriate word in the space from the box below. The same word can be used more than once.

*Example* Tanaka-san wa me ga kirē desu.

- 1 Supōtsu no naka <sup>a</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ tenisu <sup>b</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ichi-ban suki desu.
- 2 Ashita wa kyō \_\_\_\_\_ atatakai desu.
- 3 Nihon <sup>a</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ yama <sup>b</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ōi desu.
- 4 Q: Akai megane <sup>a</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ chairoi megane <sup>b</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ dochira no hō  
<sup>c</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ī desu ka.  
 A: Chairoi megane no hō <sup>d</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ī desu.
- 5 Q: Bīru <sup>a</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ wain <sup>b</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ dochira no hō <sup>c</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ suki desu ka.  
 A: Dochira <sup>d</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ suki dewa arimasen.

ga	mo	wa	o
ori	no	de	to

## Kanji of Unit 12: Kanji with two or three strokes

Kanji	Kun-yomi	On-yomi	Meaning	Kanji	Kun-yomi	On-yomi	Meaning
人	ひと	ジン/ニン	person	口	くち	コウ	mouth
ノ人				丨 凵 凵			
山	やま	サン/ザン	mountain	上	うえ	ジョウ	above, on, up
丨 山 山				丨 ト 上			
川	かわ/がわ	セン	river	下	した	ゲ	below, under
丨 川 川				一 下 下			
女	おんな	ジョ	woman female	大	おお(きい)	ダイ	big
く 女 女				一 ナ 大			
子	こ	シ	child	小	ちい(さい)	ショウ	small
ア 子 子				丨 小 小			

### Exercise 8

Write how to read the underlined kanji in hiragana.

- 1 あの女の人は デパートで 口べに(lipstick)を か買います。
- 2 富士山\*は 日本の山です。 \*Mt. Fuji
- 3 あかちゃん (baby) は 手が 小さいです。
- 4 このエレベーターは 上に い行きますか。 下に い行きますか。
- 5 あの人は イギリス人ですか。 アメリカ人ですか。
- 6 昨日、一人\*で 大きいケーキを た食べました。 \*alone
- 7 私は 昨日 川で あそびました。



# Unit Thirteen

## Koko ni suwatte mo ī desu ka

May I sit down here?



In this unit you will learn about:

- verb grouping: Group 1, Group 2, Group 3
- how to make the **te**-form of a verb ([V-te]) from the **masu**-form ([V-masu])
- how to make a polite request using [V-te] + **kudasai**
- saying “how to . . .”
- how to ask, grant and deny permission
- kanji of Unit 13

日、月、火、水、木、土、今、友、少、分



### Dialogue 1



Please tell me how to read this kanji (**CD 2; 23**)

Mr Holmes is at a Japanese noodle bar (**udon-ya**), examining a menu written in Japanese.

ホームズ あのう、すみませんが、このかんじの よみかたをおしえてください。

てんいん ああ、そのかんじは「てんぷら」です。

ホームズ そうですか。じゃあ、「てんぷらうどん」をください。

てんいん はい、かしこまりました。

ホームズ それから、「てんぷらうどん」といっしょにビールも 一ぱんもってきてください。

てんいん はい、かしこまりました。



- HŌMUZU Anō sumimasen ga, kono kanji no yomikata o oshiete kudasai.
- TEN'IN Ā, sono kanji wa “tempura” desu.
- HŌMUZU Sō desu ka. Jā, “tempura udon” o kudasai.
- TEN'IN Hai, kashikomarimashita.
- HŌMUZU Sorekara, “tempura udon” to issho ni bīru mo ippon motte kite kudasai.
- TEN'IN Hai, kashikomarimashita.

## Vocabulary



よみかた	<b>yomikata</b>	how to read
[V-stem] かた	[V-stem] + <b>kata</b>	how to . . .
おしえてください	<b>oshiete kudasai</b>	please tell me
[V-て] ください	[V-te] + <b>kudasai</b>	please (do)
てんぷら	<b>tempura</b>	<i>tempura</i> (a Japanese dish)
うどん	<b>udon</b>	Japanese noodles made of wheat flour
もってきてください	<b>motte kite kudasai</b>	please bring (something)
もってきます	<b>motte kimasu</b>	to bring (something to somewhere)
かしこまりました	<b>kashikomarimashita</b>	certainly

## Dialogue 1 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Mr Holmes asked the waitress how to cook “tempura udon”.
- 2 ( ) Mr Holmes asked the waitress to bring both “tempura udon” and beer together.

## Language point



### Verb grouping

Just as there are two types of adjective (*i*-adjectives and *na*-adjectives), there are three groups of Japanese verbs: Group 1, Group 2 and Group 3. This grouping is very important when it comes to making

various forms such as the **te-form** (which you will learn in this unit), the **ta-form** (Unit 15) and the **dictionary form** (Unit 16). Below is a list of the new verbs in this unit. The numbers 1, 2 and 3 indicate which group each verb belongs to. Can you find any rule for each group?



## Vocabulary

はらいます	haraimasu	1	to pay
おきます	okimasu	1	to put (something)
おくります	okurimasu	1	to send (e.g. an email)
もっていきます	motte ikimasu	1	to take (something to somewhere)
つれていきます	tsurete ikimasu	1	to take (someone to somewhere)
おもいだします	omoidashimasu	1	to remember, recall
がんばります	ganbarimasu	1	to hang on, work hard to do, try one's best
よびます	yobimasu	1	to call (a taxi)
きをつけます	ki o tsukemasu	2	to be careful
とめます	tomemasu	2	to pull up (a car), stop
たすけます	tasukemasu	2	to help, rescue
みせます	misemasu	2	to show
おぼえます	oboemasu	2	to remember, memorize
とどけます	todokemasu	2	to deliver
おしえます	oshiemasu	2	to teach, tell
つれてきます	tsurete kimasu	3	to bring (someone to somewhere)
クリックします	kurikku shimasu	3	to click

The following shows how to tell which group each verb belongs to from its **masu**-form.

### Group 1 verbs

Verbs that end with the "i" sound before **masu**:

い <u>き</u> ます go	よ <u>み</u> ます read	あ <u>い</u> ます meet
<b>iki masu</b>	<b>yomi masu</b>	<b>ai masu</b>

Note that some verbs such as those below belong to Group 2, though they end with the “i” sound before **masu**.

お <u>き</u> ます get up	か <u>り</u> ます borrow	お <u>り</u> ます get off
<b>oki masu</b>	<b>kari masu</b>	<b>ori masu</b>

## Group 2 verbs

Verbs with only *one Hiragana syllable* before **masu**:

<u>み</u> ます see, watch	<u>い</u> ます be, exist	<u>ね</u> ます sleep
<b>mi masu</b>	<b>i masu</b>	<b>ne masu</b>

Verbs that end with the “e” sound before **masu**:

た <u>べ</u> ます eat	あ <u>げ</u> ます give	か <u>け</u> ます make a call
<b>tabe masu</b>	<b>age masu</b>	<b>kake masu</b>

## Group 3 verbs (irregular)

There are only two irregular verbs plus verbs with **shimasu** (e.g. **benkyō shimasu**).

<u>き</u> ます come	<u>し</u> ます do
<b>ki masu</b>	<b>shi masu</b>

You can find a full list of verbs with groupings and various conjugations in the Appendix.

## Exercise 1

Indicate which group the following verbs belong to.



*Example* motte ikimasu (take something to somewhere) [1]

- |                   |               |     |
|-------------------|---------------|-----|
| 1 oboemasu        | (to remember) | [ ] |
| 2 okimasu         | (to put)      | [ ] |
| 3 okurimasu       | (to send)     | [ ] |
| 4 kurikku shimasu | (to click)    | [ ] |
| 5 haraimasu       | (to pay)      | [ ] |
| 6 kimasu          | (to come)     | [ ] |
| 7 shimasu         | (to do)       | [ ] |
| 8 misemasu        | (to show)     | [ ] |



## Language point

### Verb te-form (1): how to make the “te-form”

So far, you have learned four types of **masu**-form conjugation.

<i>non-past</i>	<i>non-past</i>	<i>past</i>	<i>past</i>
<i>affirmative</i>	<i>negative</i>	<i>affirmative</i>	<i>negative</i>
たべます	たべません	たべました	たべませんでした
<b><u>tabemasu</u></b>	<b><u>tabemasen</u></b>	<b><u>tabemashita</u></b>	<b><u>tabemasendeshita</u></b>

In this unit, you will learn a new form, the **te**-form. The **te**-form ([V-**te**]) is very useful because with it, you can express more, such as a polite request (e.g. “Please tell me . . .”), asking permission (e.g. “May I use . . . ?”), action in progress (“I am writing . . .”), etc.

How to make the **te**-form from the **masu**-form is determined by which group the verb belongs to.

#### Group 1 verbs

In order to make the **te**-form from a group 1 verb, find the sound before **masu** and change it according to the rules below:

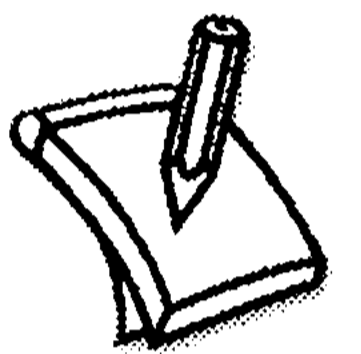
い (i)、ち (chi)、り (ri)	→	って (tte)
あ <u>い</u> ます <b>a<u>i</u>masu</b> meet	→	あ <u>っ</u> て <b>a<u>tt</u>e</b>
ま <u>ち</u> ます <b>ma<u>ch</u>imasu</b> wait	→	ま <u>っ</u> て <b>ma<u>tt</u>e</b>
い <u>き</u> ます <b>ik<u>i</u>masu</b> go	→	い <u>っ</u> て <b>it<u>t</u>e</b>
び (bi)、み (mi)、に (ni)	→	んで (nde)
あ <u>そ</u> びます <b>aso<u>b</u>imasu</b> play	→	あ <u>そ</u> んで <b>aso<u>nd</u>e</b>
の <u>み</u> ます <b>no<u>m</u>imasu</b> drink	→	の <u>ん</u> で <b>no<u>nd</u>e</b>
き (ki)、ぎ (gi)	→	いて (ite)、いで (ide)
か <u>き</u> ます <b>ka<u>k</u>imasu</b> write	→	か <u>い</u> て <b>ka<u>it</u>e</b>
い <u>そ</u> ぎます <b>iso<u>g</u>imasu</b> hurry	→	い <u>そ</u> いで <b>iso<u>id</u>e</b>
し (shi)	→	して (shite)
は <u>な</u> します <b>ha<u>n</u>ashimasu</b> talk	→	は <u>な</u> して <b>ha<u>n</u>ashite</b>

Note that the **te**-form of **いきます ikimasu** “go” is **いって itte**, not **いきて ikite**.

## Group 2 and 3 verbs

In order to make the **te**-form from group 2 and 3 verbs, you delete **masu** and add **te** as below:

ます (masu)	→	て (te)
2 たべ <u>ます</u> <b>tabemasu</b> eat	→	たべ <u>て</u> <b>tabete</b>
2 み <u>ます</u> <b>mimasu</b> see	→	み <u>て</u> <b>mite</b>
2 ね <u>ます</u> <b>nemasu</b> sleep	→	ね <u>て</u> <b>nete</b>
3 き <u>ます</u> <b>kimasu</b> come	→	き <u>て</u> <b>kite</b>
3 し <u>ます</u> <b>shimasu</b> do	→	し <u>て</u> <b>shite</b>

Exercise 2

Change the following verbs into the **te**-form. For Group 1, look at the sound before **masu**.

- |                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 あそび <u>ます</u>                     | 2 つれ <u>て</u> き <u>ます</u>            |
| 3 い <u>き</u> ます                     | 4 が <u>ん</u> ば <u>り</u> ま <u>す</u>   |
| 5 お <u>ぼ</u> え <u>ま</u> す           | 6 み <u>せ</u> ま <u>す</u>              |
| 7 も <u>っ</u> てい <u>き</u> ま <u>す</u> | 8 い <u>そ</u> ぎ <u>ま</u> す            |
| 9 お <u>く</u> り <u>ま</u> す           | 10 クリ <u>ッ</u> ク <u>し</u> ま <u>す</u> |

## Language point



### Verb te-form (2): polite requests using (V-te) + kudasai

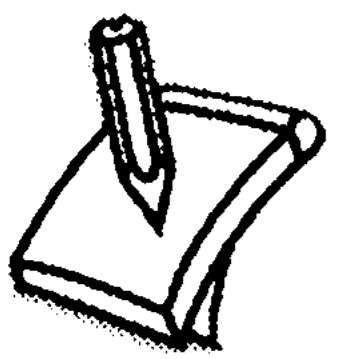
[V-te] + **kudasai** is an expression used to make a polite request.

verb-te	kudasai
---------	---------

- Sono shashin o misete kudasai.**  
Please show me that photo.
- Kasa o motte kite kudasai.**  
Please bring an umbrella with you.
- Sumimasen ga kono kanji no kakikata o oshiete kudasai.**  
Excuse me but please tell me how to write this kanji.

Omitting **kudasai** makes the request sound very casual, which is suitable only among those in a close relationship, such as friends.

d. **Sono shashin o misete.**      Show me that photo.



### Exercise 3

Connect the following verbs and **kudasai** appropriately and write the English meaning in the brackets.

*Example* misemasu + kudasai = misete kudasai  
(please show (me))

- 1 kakimasu + kudasai = \_\_\_\_\_  
( )
- 2 kyanseru shimasu + kudasai = \_\_\_\_\_  
( )
- 3 ki o tsukemasu + kudasai = \_\_\_\_\_  
( )
- 4 oshiemasu + kudasai = \_\_\_\_\_  
( )
- 5 okimasu + kudasai = \_\_\_\_\_  
(please wake up)
- 6 okimasu + kudasai = \_\_\_\_\_  
(please put (something))



### Exercise 4 (CD 2; 24)

Listen to the conversation between a male speaker and a female speaker and underline what the male speaker has agreed to do.



*Example* a. takushī o yobimasu      b. takushī o tomemasu

- 1 a. shashin o misemasu      b. shashin o torimasu
- 2 a. chizu o okurimasu      b. chizu o kakimasu



## Language point

### How to ...

To say “how to ...”, simply take away **masu** from the verb and add **kata** to form a noun.

**yomimasu + kata = yomikata** how to read  
**oboemasu + kata = oboekata** how to remember

Note that the object of the verb is marked by **no**, not **o**.

a. **Kono kanji no yomikata o oshiete kudasai.**

Please tell me how to read this kanji.

## Exercise 5



Suppose you are in the following situation. Make a polite request in Japanese.

- 1 You are in a restaurant. You want the restaurant staff to tell you how to use chopsticks.
- 2 You want to know how to go to the Fuji Hotel. Ask a passer-by politely.

## Dialogue 2



You must not wear the slippers in the room (CD 2; 25)



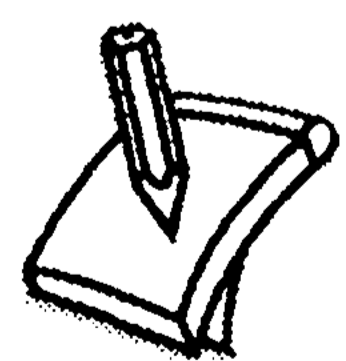
Mr Holmes has just arrived at a Japanese inn (**ryokan**) with his colleagues. This is his first time staying at a Japanese inn. Now he is asking a couple of questions of his colleague and friend, Mrs Nagano, who has taken him to his room.

- ながの ホームズさんのへやは ここです。  
 ホームズ ここですか。ひろいですね。あれ、へやのなかに げんかんがありますね。どうしてですか。  
 ながの へやのなかで くつを はいてはいけませんから。  
 ホームズ そうですか。あれ、げんかんに スリッパが ありますね。へやのなかで スリッパを はきますか。  
 ながの いいえ、へやのなかで はいてはいけません。へやのそとで はいてください。  
 ホームズ わかりました。ところで、へやのなかで たばこを すってもいいですか。  
 ながの いいえ、ホームズさんのへやは きんえんですから、たばこを すっては いけません。でも、りよかんの ロビーで すってもいいですよ。

- NAGANO Hōmuzu-san no heya wa koko desu.  
 HŌMUZU Koko desu ka. Hiroi desu ne. Are, heya no naka ni genkan ga arimasu ne. Dōshite desu ka.  
 NAGANO Heya no naka de kutsu o haitewa ikemasen kara.  
 HŌMUZU Sō desu ka. Are, genkan ni surippa ga arimasu ne. Heya no naka de surippa o hakimasu ka.  
 NAGANO Īe, heya no naka de haitewa ikemasen. Heya no soto de haite kudasai.  
 HŌMUZU Wakarimashita. Tokorode, heya no naka de, tabako o sutte mo ī desu ka.  
 NAGANO Īe, Hōmuzu-san no heya wa kin'en desu kara, tabako o suttewa ikemasen. Demo, ryokan no robī de sutte mo ī desu yo.

**A  
CB**
**Vocabulary**

あれ	are	Look!, Oh no!
はきます	hakimasu	to wear (shoes, trousers, etc.)
はいてもいいです	haite mo ī desu	(one) may wear
[V-て]もいいです	[V-te] + mo ī desu	(you) may do
はいてはいけません	haitewa ikemasen	(one) must not wear
[V-て]はいけません	[V-te] + wa ikemasen	must not
たばこ	tabako	tobacco, cigarette
すいます	suimasu	to smoke
スリッパ	surippa	(a pair of) slippers
きんえん	kin'en	non-smoking
ロビー	robī	lobby


**Dialogue 2 exercise**

Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- ( ) The slippers in the entrance room are for Mr Holmes to use inside the room.
- ( ) A smoking area can be found in the lobby of the inn.



## Language point

**Verb te-form (3): asking, granting and denying permission**

[V-te] + **mo ī desu** is used to grant permission. To ask permission, simply add **ka** at the end as [V-te] + **mo ī desu ka**.

verb-te	<b>mo ī desu</b> (may)
---------	------------------------

a. Q: **Pātī ni tomodachi o tsurete kite mo ī desu ka.**

May I bring my friends to the party?

A1: **Hai, (tsurete kite mo) ī desu yo.** Yes, you can.

A2: **Hai, dōzo.** Yes, please do.

b. Q: **Koko ni kuruma o tomete mo ī desu ka.**

May I park a car here?

A: **Sumimasen ga chotto . . .**

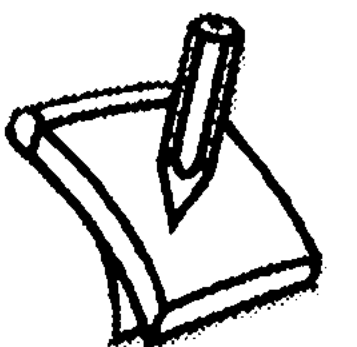
I am afraid that it is slightly [problematic].

[V-te] + **wa ikemasen** is used to deny permission. This expression is a strong denial (prohibition) and its usage is usually restricted to cases such as stating the law, regulations, etc.

verb-te	<b>wa ikemasen</b> (must not)
---------	-------------------------------

c. **Kono tatemono no naka de tabako o suttewa ikemasen.**

No smoking is permitted in this building.

**Exercise 6**

Translate the following English sentences into Japanese.

*Example* May I read books here?

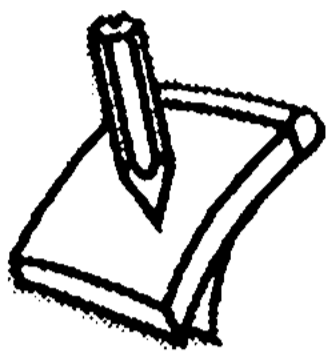
*Koko de hon o yonde mo ī desu ka.*

- 1 May I pay by credit card?
- 2 May I use this pen?
- 3 You must not drink alcohol here.



## Vocabulary

kādo de by (credit) card



### Exercise 7

Connect the first and second parts of the sentence appropriately using the phrases in the box below. The first part is the reason why one is asking for permission.

*Example* Atama ga itai desu kara (c)

- 1 Kono kaban wa omoi desu kara ( )
- 2 Kono kotoba ga wakarimasen kara ( )
- 3 Sukoshi samui desu kara ( )

a. koko ni oite mo ī desu ka.	b. mado o shimete mo ī desu ka.
e. <del>kaette mo ī desu ka.</del>	d. jisho o mite mo ī desu ka.



## Vocabulary

kotoba word  
 mado window  
 shimemasu to close, shut



### Exercise 8 (CD 2; 26)



The following text describes a certain place. Read out the text and guess where it is.

ここは ばしょです。とても ひろい ばしょです。たくさん いすが あります。ここで ほんを よんでもいいです。ビールや ワインを のんでもいいです。そして、えいがを みながら、ごはんを たべてもいいです。しかし、たばこを すってはいけません。それから、けいたいでんわで はなしてはいけません。まどを あけてもいけません。あぶないですから、このなかで はしってはいけません。このなかには たくさん ひとが いますから、うるさくしてはいけません。ここは どこですか。

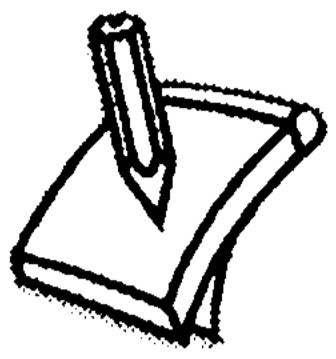
## Vocabulary



ばしょ	basho	place
いす	isu	chair
しかし	shikashi	but
あぶない (i-adj.)	abunai	dangerous
みながら	minagara	while watching, while seeing
～ながら	-nagara	while doing . . .
あけます	akemasu	to open
うるさくします	urusaku shimasu	to make a noise

## Kanji of Unit 13: Kanji with 3 or 4 strokes

<i>Kanji</i>	<i>Kun-yomi</i>	<i>On-yomi</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Kanji</i>	<i>Kun-yomi</i>	<i>On-yomi</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
日	ひ/び/か	ニチ/ニ/ジツ	day, sun	土	つち	ド	ground, soil
丨 冂 日 日				一 十 土			
月	つき	ゲツ/ガツ	month, moon	今	いま	コン	now
丨 月 月 月				ノ 八 厶 今			
火	ひ	カ	fire	友	とも	ユウ	friend
丨 丨 丨 火				一 ナ 方 友			
水	みず	スイ	water	少	すく(ない) すこ(し)	ショウ	little, few
丨 丨 丨 水				丨 小 小 少			
木	き	モク	tree	分	わ(ける)	ブン/ブン	divide, minute
一 十 丨 木				ノ 八 分 分			



## Exercise 9

Write how to read the underlined kanji in hiragana.

- 1 今日\*は火曜日\*\*です。昨日は月曜日\*\*でした。\*今日, meaning “today” is read irregularly and does not use either on-yomi or kun-yomi. \*\*日 in this case uses **kun-yomi**.
- 2 私は 少し 水が 飲みたい飲みます。
- 3 あの木の下に 私の友達\*が います。\*友 in this case uses kun-yomi.
- 4 明日は 土曜日日です。
- 5 この漢字の読み方方が 分かりません。
- 6 日本は 今、3時15分です。
- 7 「今月」は英語で this month です。

# Unit Fourteen

## Kinō no yoru 8-ji goro ēga o mite imashita

I was watching a film at around 8 p.m. yesterday

In this unit you will learn about:

- stating a sequence of actions, using [V-te] and [V-te] + **kara**
- describing an action in progress: [V-te] + **imasu**
- describing a present state: [V-te] + **imasu**
- describing habitual actions: [V-te] + **imasu**
- kanji of Unit 14

手、中、外、左、右、文、父、母、田、目



### Dialogue 1



Please get on the bus and then get off at the stop "In front of Sakura Hospital" (CD 2; 27)



Mr Enokida is giving his colleague, Ms Kim, directions to his house because she is visiting his place this Saturday for the first time.

えのきだ キムさんは どのようび なにで わたしのうちへ きますか。

キム でんしゃで いきます。

えのきだ じゃあ、「さくらえき」で でんしゃを おりて、みなみぐちから  
でてください。みなみぐちの まえに バスていが ありますから、  
そこで 73ばんの バスに のって 「さくらびょういんまえ」で  
おりてください。

キム 「さくらびょういんまえ」は いくつめの バスてい ですか。  
えのきだ 4つめの バスていです。

ENOKIDA Kimu-san wa do-yōbi nani de watashi no uchi e kimasu ka.

KIMU Densha de ikimasu.

ENOKIDA Jā, "Sakura eki" de densha o orite, minami-guchi kara dete kudasai. Minami-guchi no mae ni basutē ga arimasu kara, soko de 73-ban no basu ni notte "Sakura Byōin Mae" de orite kudasai.

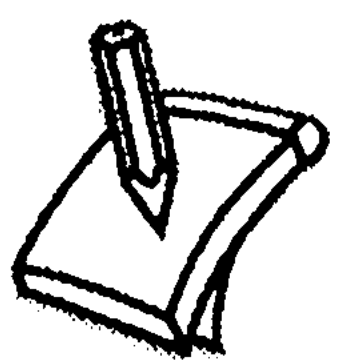
KIMU "Sakura Byōin Mae" wa ikutsu-me no basutē desu ka.

ENOKIDA Yottsu-me no basutē desu.

## A CB

### Vocabulary

おります	orimasu	to get off
みなみぐち	minami-guchi	south exit
みなみ	minami	south
～ぐち	-guchi	exit
バスてい	basutē	bus stop
でます	demasu	to leave, get out
のります	norimasu	to get on, ride
いくつめ	ikutsu-me	how many
～め	-me	order in numbers



### Dialogue 1 exercise

Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- Mr Enokida lives in front of Sakura station.
- Ms Kim will have to take a train and then catch a bus to get to Mr Enokida's house.

## Language point



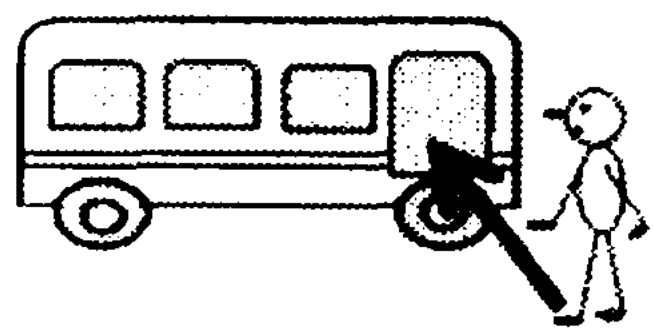
## Giving directions

Here is some vocabulary related to directions. Check with the pictures below which particle is used with which movement.

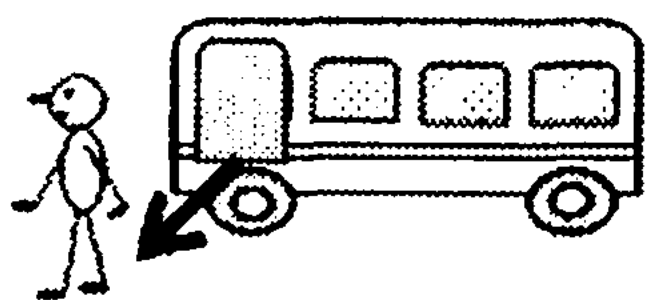
## Vocabulary

A  
CB

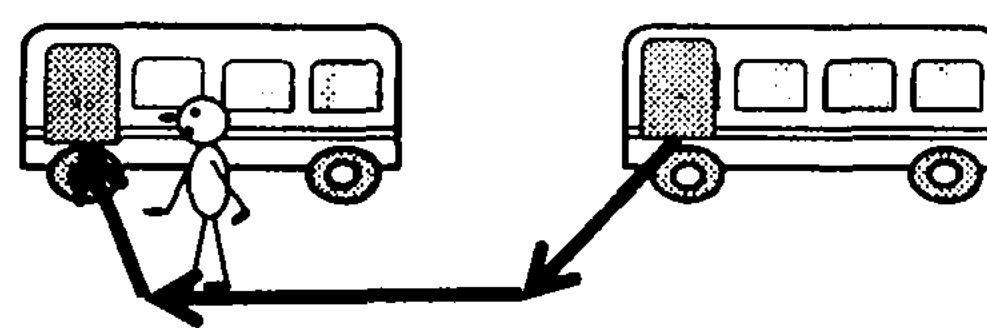
みち	michi	street, road
かど	kado	corner
はし	hashi	bridge
こうさてん	kōsaten	crossroads
しんごう	shingō	traffic lights
つき	tsugi	next
のります	norimasu	to get on
おります	orimasu	to get off
のりかえます	norikaemasu	to change (means of transportation)
わたります	watarimasu	to cross
まがります	magarimasu	to turn



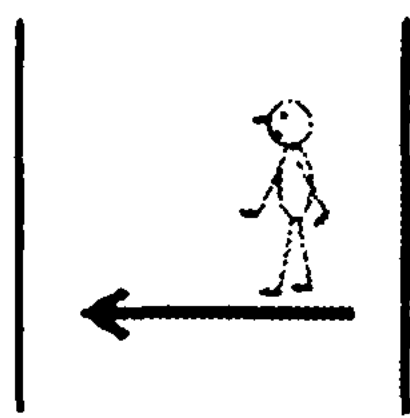
basu ni norimasu



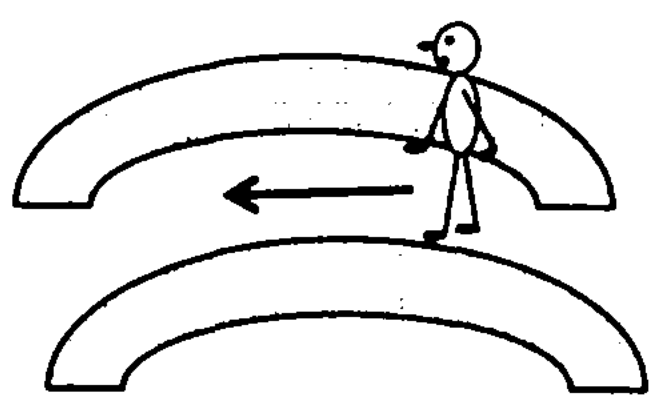
basu o orimasu



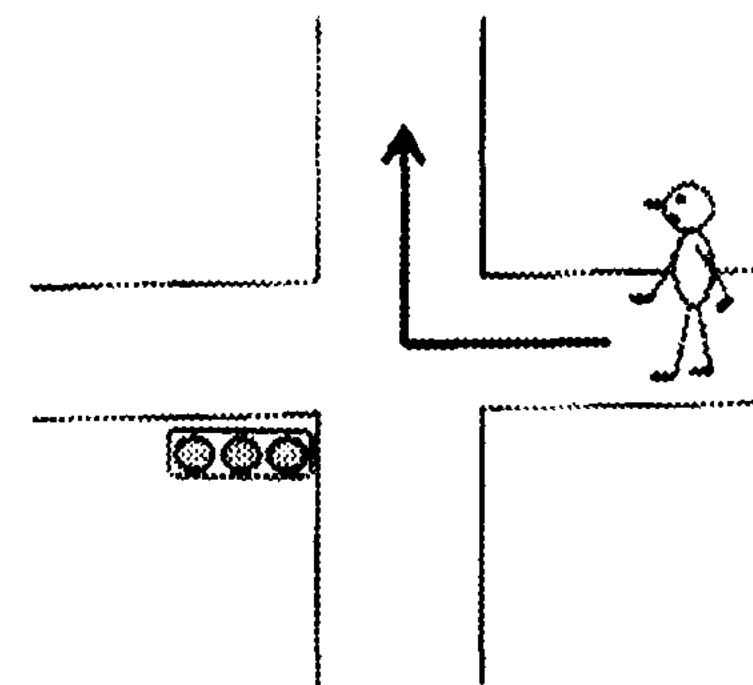
A kara B ni norikaemasu



michi o watarimasu



hashi o watarimasu

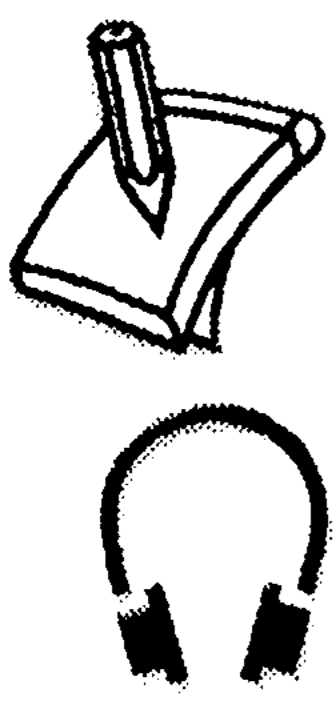


kado o (migi ni) magarimasu

-me is used to indicate the order with numbers.

**hitotsu-me/futatsu-me/mittsu-me (no kado)**

first/second/third (corner)



### Exercise 1 (CD 2; 28)

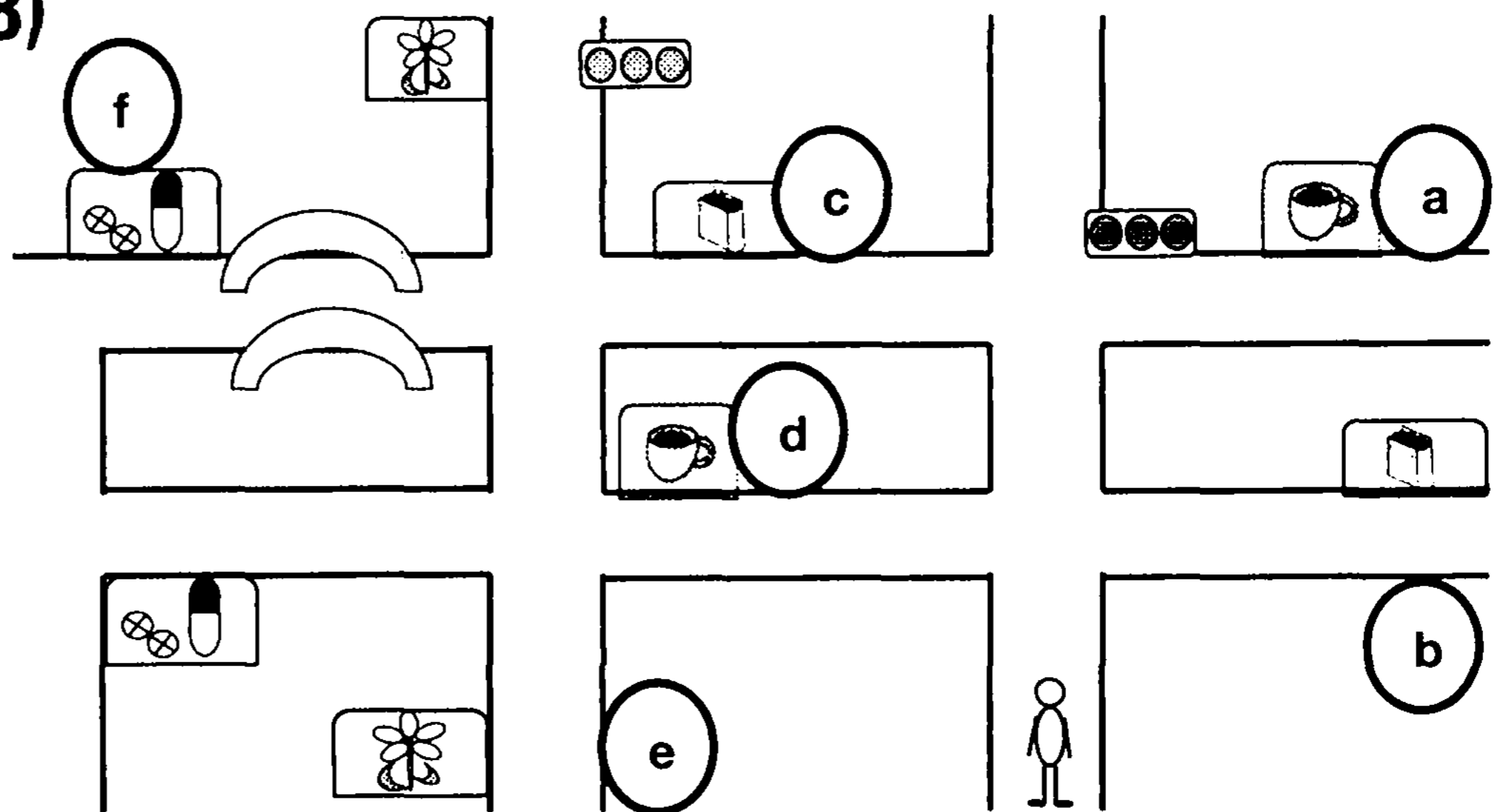
Which buildings are the following hotels?

*Example*

Fuji Hoteru ( *d* )

1 ABC Hoteru (   )

2 Sakura Hoteru (   )



## Vocabulary

massugu straight on, ahead



## Language point

### Verb te-form (4): actions in succession

The **te**-form of a verb is used when a sentence has more than one verb and the actions in the sentence happen (or happened) in succession. For example, “I wake up, eat and go” are **okite, tabete, ikimasu**. The tense of the sentence is indicated by the last verb.

verb- <b>te</b> (action 1)	verb- <b>te</b> (action 2)	<b>V-masu/mashita</b> <b>V-tai desu</b> (want to) <b>[V-te] + mo ī desu</b> (may) <b>[V-te] + kudasai</b> (please), etc.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------	---

- a. **Ane wa ashita machi e itte, Nihon-go no jisho o kaimasu.**  
My elder sister will go into town and buy a Japanese dictionary tomorrow.
- b. **Watashi wa kinō gohan o tabete, shawā o abite, nemashita.**  
I ate supper, took a shower and went to bed yesterday.
- c. **Watashi wa itsuka Nihon ni itte, Nihon no kaisha de hatarakitai desu.**  
I want to go to Japan and work for a Japanese company some day.



d. **Basu ni notte, yottsu-me no basutē de orite kudasai.**

Please catch a bus and get off at the fourth stop.

## Vocabulary

A  
CB

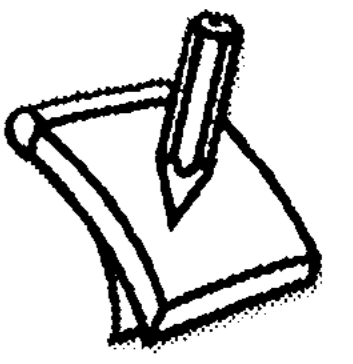
shawā shower

sumimasu to live

abimasu to take (a shower)

hatarakimasu to work

## Exercise 2



Make a sentence using the information in the brackets as shown in the example. All sentences start with **watashi**.

*Example* (ashita/tomodachi ni aimasu/sushi o tabemasu)

*Watashi wa ashita tomodachi ni atte,  
sushi o tabemasu.*

- 1 (kinō/toshokan e ikimashita/hon o karimashita)
- 2 (kyō/7-ji ni okimashita/shawā o abimashita/terebi o mimashita)
- 3 (rainen/Nihon e ikitai desu/Fujisan ni noboritai desu)

## Vocabulary

A  
CB

noborimasu to climb

## Language point



### Verb te-form (5): after doing ...

When **kara** follows the **te**-form of a verb, it emphasizes the completion of the action.



a. **Watashi wa itsumo ha o migaite kara nemasu.**

I always brush my teeth and then go to bed.

b. Q: **Uchi ni kaette kara nani o shimasu ka.**  
 What do you do *after* returning home?

A: **30-pun kurai yasumimasu.**  
 I take a rest for about 30 minutes.



## Vocabulary

ha teeth

migakimasu to brush



## Exercise 3

Make a sentence using the information in the brackets as shown in the example. All sentences start with **watashi**.

*Example* (wash clothes → watch DVD)

*Watashi wa sentaku shite kara DVD o mimasu.*

- 1 (have a meal → take a shower)
- 2 (cleaned my room → had a rest)
- 3 (arrived in Japan → phoned Mr Mori)



## Vocabulary

sentaku shimasu to wash clothes

shokuji shimasu to have a meal

sōji shimasu to clean (a room, house, park, etc.)

(ni) tsukimasu to arrive (at)



## Dialogue 2



I was watching a Korean film at home (**CD 2; 29**)

Mr Enokida and Ms Kim are talking in the company office.

えのきだ キムさん、こんにちは。

キム あ、えのきださん、こんにちは。

えのきだ キムさんは きのうのよる 8じごろ なにを していましたか。

キム きんうは あめが ふっていましたから うちで かんこくの えいがを みていました。

えのきだ おもしろかったですか。

キム はい、とても おもしろかったです。わたしは DVDを もっていますから、いつか えのきださんも みてください。

ENOKIDA Kimu-san, konnichiwa.

KIMU A, Enokida-san, konnichiwa.

ENOKIDA Kimu-san wa kinō no yoru 8-ji goro nani o shite imashita ka.

KIMU Kinō wa ame ga futte imashita kara, uchi de Kankoku no ēga o mite imashita.

ENOKIDA Omoshirokatta desu ka.

KIMU Hai, totemo omoshirokatta desu. Watashi wa DVD o motte imasu kara, itsuka Enokida-san mo mite kudasai.

## Vocabulary

A  
CB

していました	<b>shite imashita</b>	was/were doing
[V-て]います	[V-te] + <b>imasu</b>	be [verb]-ing (present progressive action)
もっています	<b>motte imasu</b>	to own, possess
もちます	<b>mochimasu</b>	to hold, have, own
[V-て]います	[V-te] + <b>imasu</b>	describing a state of someone or something
いつか	<b>itsuka</b>	one day, some day

## Dialogue 2 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Ms Kim was watching a Korean film at 8 p.m. last night.
- 2 ( ) It was Mr Enokida who recommended that film to Ms Kim.

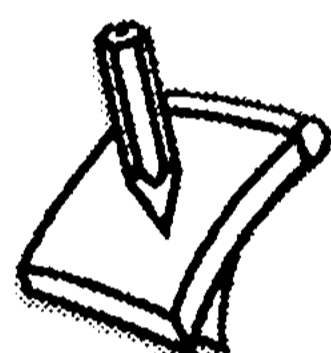


## Language point

### Verb te-form (6): describing an action in progress

[Verb-te] + **imasu** is used to describe an action in progress.

- a. **Watashi wa ima kōhī o nonde imasu.**  
I am drinking a cup of coffee now.
- b. **Watashi wa kyonen no ima goro Nihon o ryokō shite imashita.**  
I was travelling in Japan this time last year.



### Exercise 4

Complete the following sentences, using the information in brackets.

*Example* Ai-san wa ima (sing a song)  
*uta o utatte imasu.*

- 1 Yōko-san wa ima (brush her teeth)
- 2 Lī-san wa ima (write an email)
- 3 Tōmasu-san wa kinō no 6-ji goro (work)
- 4 Kenji-san wa kinō no 10-ji goro (take a shower)



## Language point

### Verb te-form (7): describing a state

[V-te] + **imasu** is also used to describe a state of someone or something. Verbs such as **suwarimasu** “sit down”, **tachimasu** “stand up”, **kekkon shimasu** “marry” and **sumimasu** “live” are often used with this pattern.

- a. **Otoko no hito ga asoko ni suwatte imasu.**  
A man is seated over there.
- b. **Watashi wa kekkon shite imasen.**  
I am not married.

## Vocabulary



<i>Action</i>		<i>State</i>	
<b>mochimasu</b>	to hold	<b>motte imasu</b>	to own, possess
<b>sumimasu</b>	to live	<b>sunde imasu</b>	to live
<b>shirimasu</b>	to get to know	<b>shitte imasu</b>	to know
<b>tachimasu</b>	to stand up	<b>tatte imasu</b>	to be standing
<b>suwarimasu</b>	to sit down	<b>suwatte imasu</b>	to be seated
<b>iremasu</b>	to put (something) in	<b>irete imasu</b>	to have (something) in
<b>kekkon shimasu</b>	to marry	<b>kekkon shite imasu</b>	to be married

The following examples show the difference between **sumimasu/****sunde imasu** “live” and **mochimasu/motte imasu** “have”:

c1. **Watashi no ani wa ima Nihon ni sunde imasu.**

My elder brother currently lives in Japan.

c2. **Watashi wa rainen kara Nihon ni sumimasu.**

I will live in Japan from next year.

d1. **Watashi wa Nihon-go no jisho o motte imasu.**

I own a Japanese dictionary.

d2. **Yamada-san, kaban o mochimashō ka.**

Shall I carry your bag, Mrs Yamada?

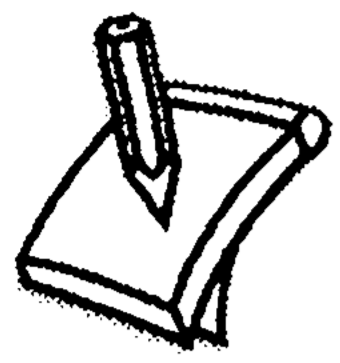
Note that the negative form of **shitte imasu** “know” is **shirimasen**, instead of “**shitte imasen**”.

e. Q: **Yamada-san o shitte imasu ka.**

Do you know Mrs Yamada?

A: **Īe, shirimasen.**

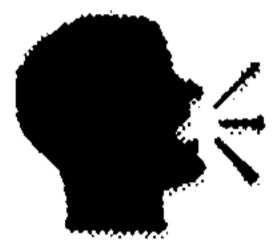
No, I do not know her.



## Exercise 5

Translate the following into Japanese.

- 1 Mr Mori is seated in a car.
- 2 Mrs Okada owns two PCs.
- 3 Mr Takeda is married.
- 4 I do not know this song but I know that song.



## Dialogue 3



I eat vegetables every day (CD 2; 30)

Mr Enokida and Ms Kim are talking about how they keep fit.

キム えのきださんは けんこうのために なにを していますか。

えのきだ わたしは まいにち やさいを たべています。それから  
ジョギングも しています。キムさんは。

キム わたしは まいしゅうまつ ちかくの プールで およいでいます。

えのきだ どのくらい およいでいますか。

キム 1じかんぐらい およいでいます。

えのきだ すごいですね。

KIMU Enokida-san wa kenkō no tame ni nani o shite imasu ka.

ENOKIDA Watashi wa mainichi yasai o tabete imasu. Sorekara  
jogingu mo shite imasu. Kimu-san wa.

KIMU Watashi wa maishūmatsu chikaku no pūru de oyoide imasu.

ENOKIDA Donokurai oyoide imasu ka.

KIMU 1-jikan gurai oyoide imasu.

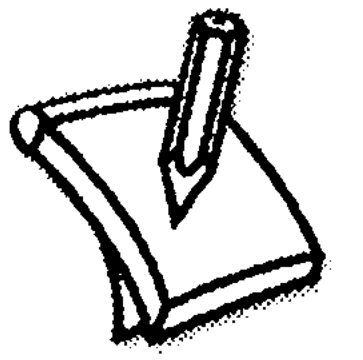
ENOKIDA Sugoi desu ne.



## Vocabulary

[noun] のために	[noun] <b>no tame ni</b>	for the benefit of [noun]
ジョギングをします	<b>jogingu o shimasu</b>	to jog
まいしゅうまつ	<b>maishūmatsu</b>	every weekend
ちかくの	<b>chikaku no</b>	nearby
すごい (i-adj.)	<b>sugoi</b>	great

## Dialogue 3 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Mr Enokida keeps fit by eating vegetables and jogging every day.
- 2 ( ) Ms Kim has decided to swim from the coming weekend.

## Language point



### **Verb te-form (8): habitual action (V-te)**

+ **imasu**

An activity which is done regularly or habitually is also expressed by [V-te] + **imasu**.

- a. **Watashi wa Nihon no kaisha de hataraitte imasu.**  
I work for a Japanese company.
- b. **Watashi no tomodachi wa daigaku de Ēgo o oshiete imasu.**  
(My friend teaches English at university.)
- c. **Kono kaisha wa kuruma o tsukutte imasu.**  
This company manufactures cars.

## Exercise 6



What does Ms Kim do every day to improve her Japanese? Write what she does, using the information in the brackets.

*Example* (write Kanji 10 times)

*Kimu-san wa mainichi kanji o 10-kai  
kaite imasu.*

- 1 (listen to Japanese music)
- 2 (memorize words)
- 3 (watch Japanese TV)
- 4 (sing her favourite Japanese songs)

## Kanji of Unit 14: Kanji with 4 or 5 strokes

Kanji	Kun-yomi	On-yomi	Meaning	Kanji	Kun-yomi	On-yomi	Meaning
手	て	シュ	hand	文		ブン/モン	letter, sentence
ノ	ム	ム	手	、	ナ	ナ	文
中	なか	チュウ	middle, inside	父	ちち	フ	father
、	口	口	中	、	ハ	ハ	父
外	そと	ゲ/ガイ	out, other, foreign	母	はは	ボ	mother
、	ク	タ	外	、	母	母	母
左	ひだり	サ	left	田	た/だ	テン	rice field
、	ナ	ナ	左	、	田	田	田
右	みぎ	ウ/ユウ	right	目	め	モク	eye
、	ナ	ナ	右	、	目	目	目



### Exercise 7

Write how to read the underlined kanji in hiragana.

- 私の父と母は 今 外国<sup>こく</sup>に います。\*abroad
- 山田\*さんは 目が とても きれいです。\*Japanese name uses Kun-yomi.
- 田中\*さんのお父さんは レストランの中に います。
- マリアさんは テニスが 上手\*です。\*be good at
- 私は 手で すしを 食<sup>た</sup>べます。
- この文を 読<sup>よ</sup>んでください。
- あのコンビニの右に 郵便局<sup>ゆうびんきょく</sup>が あります。コンビニの左に おいしいレストランが あります。



# Unit Fifteen

## Pūru de oyoidari, toshokan de hon o karitari shimasu

I do various things such as swimming in the pool and borrowing books from the library

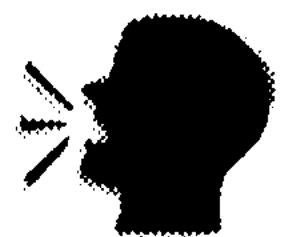
In this unit you will learn about:

- Vocabulary for clothes and accessories
- how to make the **ta**-form of a verb: [V-**ta**]
- how to link verb sentences using the [V-**ta**] + **ri** [V-**ta**] + **ri** . . . pattern
- saying “after . . .” using [V-**ta**] + **ato de**
- talking about one’s experiences in the past
- kanji of Unit 15

本、先、生、学、好、何、字、年、車、毎



## Dialogue 1



I want to do various things such as swimming in the pool, borrowing books from the library, etc.  
**(CD 2; 31)**



Miss Inoue is Mr Hancock’s friend. They are now talking about their plans for this weekend.

ハンコック いのうえさんは、こんしゅうまつ なにを したいですか。

いのうえ そうですね。プールで およいだり、としょかんで ほんを かりたり したいです。ハンコックさんは。

ハンコック わたしは まちへ ふくを かいに いきたいです。  
 いのうえ なにを かいたいですか。  
 ハンコック あたらしい ズボンや セーターを かいたいです。  
 いのうえ そうですか。

HANKOKKU Inoue-san wa konshūmatsu nani o shitai desu ka.  
 INOUE Sō desu ne. Pūru de oyoidari, toshokan de hon o karitari shitai desu. Hankokku-san wa?  
 HANKOKKU Watashi wa machi e fuku o kai ni ikitai desu.  
 INOUE Nani o kaitai desu ka.  
 HANKOKKU Atarashī zubon ya sētā o kaitai desu.  
 INOUE Sō desu ka.



## Vocabulary

およぎます	<b>oyogimasu</b>	to swim
[V-た]り、[V-た]り	[V-ta] + ri, [V-ta] + ri	verb, verb, etc.
ふく	<b>fuku</b>	clothes
ズボン	<b>zubon</b>	trousers
セーター	<b>sētā</b>	sweater



## Dialogue 1 exercise

Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Miss Inoue does not want to swim this weekend.
- 2 ( ) Mr Hancock wants to buy some clothes this weekend.



## Language points

### Vocabulary for clothes and accessories

ふく **fuku** is a generic term for clothes. There are several verbs for “wear, put on” in Japanese: きます **kimasu**, はきます **hakimasu**, かぶります **kaburimasu**, かけます **kakemasu** and します **shimasu**. The type of the clothes or accessories determines which verb should be used.

## Vocabulary

Items used with **kimasu**

**sētā** sweater, **shatsu** shirt, **kōto** coat, **sūtsu** suit, **shitagi** underwear, **kimono** Japanese clothes, kimono

Items used with **hakimasu**

**zubon** trousers, **sukāto** skirt, **kutsu** shoes, **kutsushita** socks

Items used with **kaburimasu**

**bōshi** cap, hat

Items used with **kakemasu**

**megane** glasses

Items used with **shimasu**

**nekutai** tie, **nekkuresu** necklace, **tokē** watch

The [V-**te**] + **imasu** pattern is used to describe what one wears (state).

a. **Yamada-san wa akai sētā o kite imasu.**

Mr Yamada wears a red sweater.

b. **Jonson-san wa megane o kakete imasu.**

Miss Johnson wears a pair of glasses.

**How to make the verb ta-form**

Like the **te**-form, you use the **ta**-form ([V-**ta**]) to make various expressions such as talking about one's experience, listing representative activities, etc. To form the **ta**-form from the **masu**-form, you apply the **te**-form rule (Unit 13, pages 156–7) but change **te** or **de** to **ta** or **da** respectively, as shown below:

## Group 1 verbs

Change the sound before **masu** according to the rules below:

## a. い (i)、ち (chi)、り (ri) → った (tta)

meet	あ <u>い</u> ます	<b>ai</b> masu	→	あ <u>っ</u> た	<b>atta</b>
wait	ま <u>ち</u> ます	<b>ma</b> chimasu	→	ま <u>っ</u> た	<b>matta</b>
go	い <u>き</u> ます	<b>iki</b> masu	→	い <u>っ</u> た	<b>itta</b>

b. び (bi)、み (mi)、に (ni) → んだ (nda)

play あそびます **asobimasu** → あそんだ **asonda**

drink のみます **nomimasu** → のんだ **nonda**

c. き (ki) → いた (ita)、ぎ (gi) → いだ (ida)

write かきます **kakimasu** → かいた **kaita**

hurry いそぎます **isogimasu** → いそいだ **isoida**

d. し (shi) → した (shita)

talk はなします **hanashimasu** → はなした **hanashita**

Note that the **ta**-form of いきます **ikimasu** “go” is いった **itta**, not いった **ikita** “ikita”.

## Group 2 and 3 verbs

Simply change **masu** to **ta** as below:

### Group 2

eat たべます **tabemasu** → たべた **tabeta**

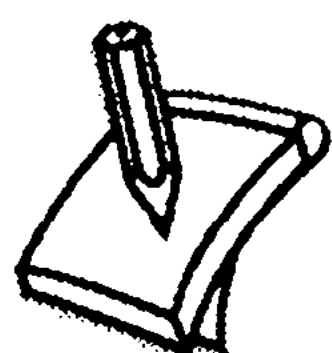
watch みます **mimasu** → みた **mita**

sleep ねます **nemasu** → ねた **neta**

### Group 3

come きます **kimasu** → きた **kita**

do します **shimasu** → した **shita**



## Exercise 1

Change the following verbs from the **masu**-form to the **ta**-form. The number in the brackets indicates which verb group they belong to.

*Example* たべます (2) たべた

1 きます (2)

\*to wear

2 きます (3)

\*to come

3 します (3)

4 かけます (2)

5 はなします (1)

6 いきます (1)

7 およぎます (1)

8 かります (2)

9 はきます (1)

10 かぶります (1)

## Language point



### Verb ta-form (1): linking verb sentences

In Unit 14 (pages 168–9), you learned how to link verbs with the verb **te-form** ([V-**te**]). In this unit, you will learn another way of linking verbs with the verb **ta-form**: [V-**ta**] + **ri**, [V-**ta**] + **ri** . . . This [V-**ta**] + **ri** [V-**ta**] + **ri** . . . pattern implies that the activities mentioned are merely an example of what the agent of the action does (or did, etc.), whereas the [V-**te**], [V-**te**] . . . pattern does not have such an implication, as shown below:

- a. **Watashi wa kinō terebi o mitari, hon o yondari shimashita.**  
Yesterday, I did various activities such as watching TV, reading a book.
- b. **Watashi wa kinō terebi o mite, hon o yomimashita.**  
Yesterday, I watched TV and then read a book.

Note that this pattern requires **shimasu** and its variations at the end.

- c. **Koko de tabako o suttari shashin o tottari shitewa ikemasen.**  
You must not smoke, take photos, and so on.
- d. **Watashi wa ashita ēga o mitari, pūru de oyoidari shitai desu.**  
I want to do various things tomorrow such as watching a film, swimming in the pool.

## Exercise 2



Change the verb in the brackets appropriately.

*Example* Konban tomodachi to denwa de (hanashimasu) hanashita ri, tegami o (kakimasu) kaita ri shitai desu.

- 1 Kinō wa heya o (sōji shimasu) <sup>a)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, (sentaku shimasu) <sup>b)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ri shimashita.
- 2 Ashita gyūnyū o (kaimasu) <sup>a)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ri, toshokan de hon o (karimasu) <sup>b)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ri shimasu.

- 3 Watashi wa shūmatsu yoku machi e kaimono ni (ikimasu)  
 a) \_\_\_\_\_ ri, naitokurabu de (odorimasu) b) \_\_\_\_\_ ri  
 shimasu.
- 4 Kinō mēru o (chekku shimasu) a) \_\_\_\_\_ ri, tomodachi ni  
 denwa o (kakemasu) b) \_\_\_\_\_ ri shimashita.



## Vocabulary

gyūnyū	milk	denwa o	to make a
naitokurabu	nightclub	kakemasu	phone call
odorimasu	to dance		

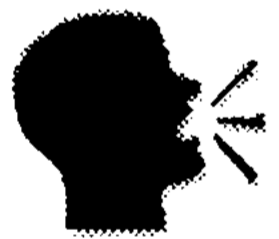


## Exercise 3 (CD 2; 32)

Kenji is talking to Mariko about what he did last weekend. Listen to their conversation and put a **X** for the activities which Kenji did over the weekend.



- |                            |                  |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| a. watch a DVD ( )         | b. buy a hat ( ) |
| c. study English ( )       | d. swim ( )      |
| e. eat at a restaurant ( ) | f. rest ( )      |



## Dialogue 2



### What did you do after graduating? (CD 2; 33)

Mr Hancock is asking Miss Inoue about her university.

ハンコック いのうえさんは いつ だいがくを そつぎょうしましたか。  
 いのうえ わたしは おとし そつぎょうしました。  
 ハンコック そつぎょうしたあと(で)、なにを しましたか。  
 いのうえ いろいろな くにを りょこうしました。  
 ハンコック そうですか。いいですね。

HANKOKKU Inoue-san wa itsu daigaku o sotsugyō shimashita ka.  
 INOUE Watashi wa ototoshi sotsugyō shimashita.  
 HANKOKKU Sotsugyō shita ato (de), nani o shimashita ka.  
 INOUE Iroiro na kuni o ryokō shimashita.  
 HANKOKKU Sō desu ka. Ī desu ne.

## Vocabulary



そつぎょうします	sotsugyō shimasu	to graduate
そつぎょうしたあとで	sotsugyō shita ato de	after graduating
～あとで	... ato de	after . . .

## Dialogue 2 exercise



Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

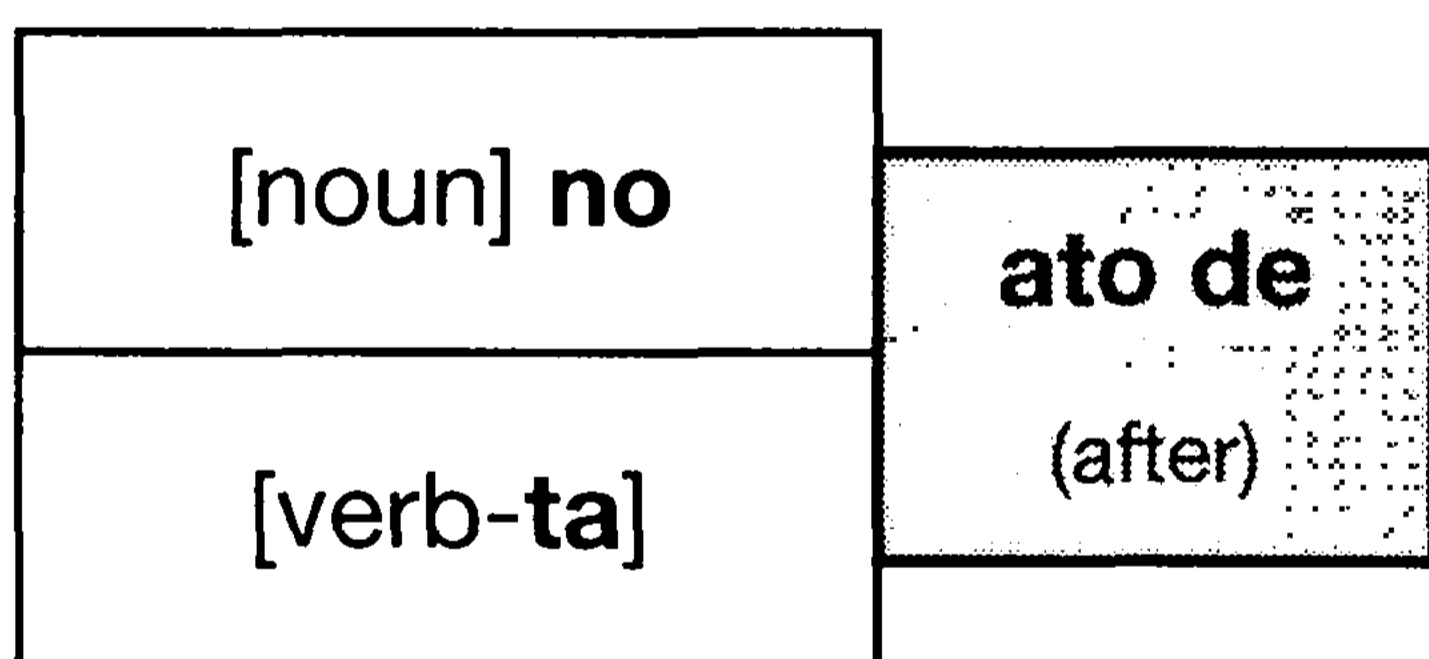
- 1 ( ) Miss Inoue graduated from university two years ago.
- 2 ( ) Miss Inoue went back to Japan after her graduation.

## Language point



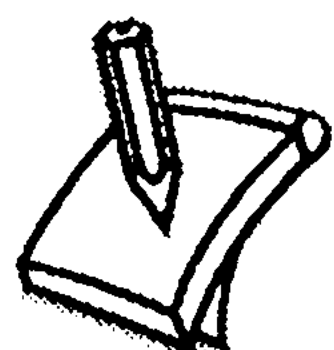
### Verb ta-form (2): after ~

“After” in Japanese is **ato de**. This can be used with nouns and verbs as below:



- a. **Daigaku o sotsugyō shita ato de nani o shitai desu ka.**  
What do you want to do after graduating from university?
- b. Q: **Itsu shukudai o shimasu ka.**  
When do you do your homework?  
A1: **Gohan no ato de shimasu.**  
I do it after the meal.  
A2: **Gohan o tabeta ato de shimasu.**  
I do it after eating the meal.

Note that **de** in **ato de** is often omitted in informal speech.



## Exercise 4

Describe Miss Inoue's daily morning routine, using the information in brackets.

*Example* (jog for 30 minutes → rest)

*Inoue-san wa asa 30-pun jogingu o shita ato de, yasumimasu.*

- 1 (rest → take a shower)
- 2 (drink tea → cook breakfast)
- 3 (eat breakfast → brush her teeth)
- 4 (brush her teeth → put on her clothes)



## Vocabulary

**tsukurimasu** to make, cook



## Dialogue 3



Have you ever borrowed a book from this library? **(CD 2; 34)**

Miss Inoue has taken Mr Hancock to a local library.

いのうえ      ハンコックさんは、このとしょかんで ほんを かりたことがありますか。

ハンコック      いいえ、ありません。としょかんカードが ありませんから。

いのうえ      じゃあ、きょう カードを つくりましょう。

ハンコック      むずかしくないですか。

いのうえ      いいえ、かんたんですよ。

INOUE      Hankokku-san wa kono toshokan de hon o karita koto ga arimasu ka.

HANKOKKU      Īe, arimasen. Toshokan kādo ga arimasen kara.

INOUE      Jā, kyō kādo o tsukurimashō.

HANKOKKU      Muzukashikunai desu ka.

INOUE      Īe, kantan desu yo.



## Vocabulary

かりたことがあります	karita koto ga arimasu	have borrowed
[V-ta] ことがあります	[V-ta] + koto ga arimasu	have (done)
(としょかん) カード	(toshokan) kādo	(library) card
かんたん(な) (na-adj.)	kantan(na)	easy

## Dialogue 3 exercise

Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

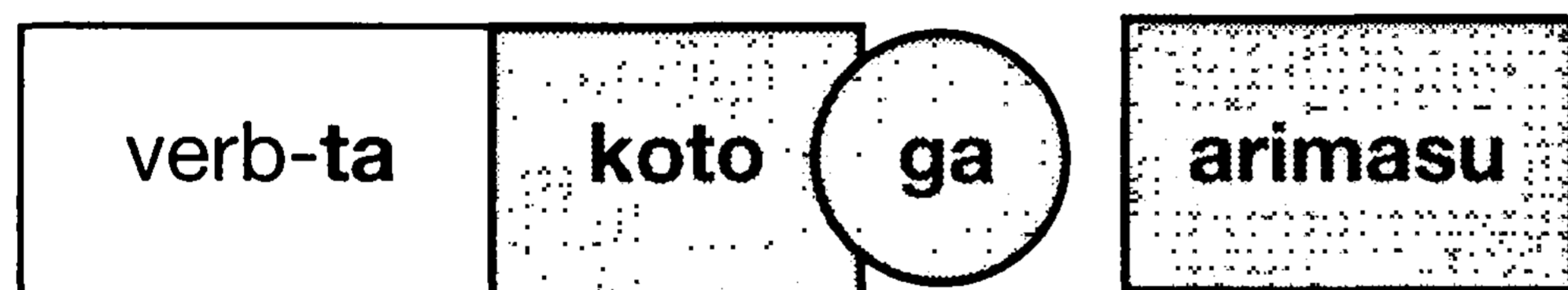
- ( ) Mr Hancock has never borrowed books from the library where he is now.
- ( ) Miss Inoue is going to make Mr Hancock's library card today.



## Language point

### Verb ta-form (3): talking about one's experiences in the past

[V-ta] + **koto ga arimasu** is an expression used to describe one's experiences. To negate this sentence pattern, you simply change **arimasu** to **arimasen**.



a. **Watashi wa kimono o kita koto ga arimasu.**

I have worn Kimono in the past. (*lit.* "I have an experience of wearing Kimono".)

b. Q: **Jon-san wa Fujisan ni nobotta koto ga arimasu ka.**

Have you ever climbed Mt. Fuji, John?

A1: **Hai, (nobotta koto ga) arimasu.**

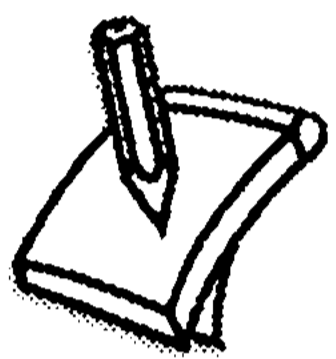
Yes, I have.

A2: **Īe, (nobotta koto ga) arimasen.**

No, I have not.

[V-ta] + **koto ga arimasu** and [V-mashita] differ in that the former focuses on whether or not one has had a certain experience but the latter simply indicates that a certain action took place in the past.

- c. **Watashi wa kimono o kita koto ga arimasu.**  
I have an experience of wearing kimono.
- d. **Watashi wa kyonen kimono o kimashita.**  
I wore Kimono last year.



### Exercise 5

Translate the following sentences into Japanese, using [V-ta] + **koto ga arimasu/arimasen**.

*Example* I have been to Japan.

*Watashi wa Nihon e itta koto ga arimasu.*

- 1 I have climbed Mt. Fuji.
- 2 My younger sister has not worn kimono.
- 3 Have you ever eaten sushi, Mr Hancock?
- 4 I have made sushi.



### Exercise 6 (CD 2; 35)

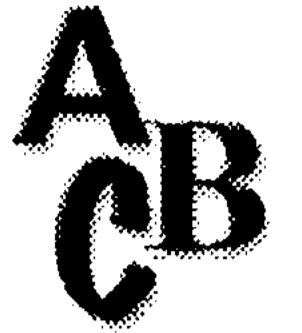


Read out the following text and write ✓ for the activities Mrs Lee has done before and ✗ for what she has not done yet.

わたしは リーです。きよねんまで にほんに すんでいました。にほんの  
せいかつは とても たのしかったです。わたしは にほんで ふじさんに  
のぼったり、かぶきを みたり しました。そして ともだちと すしを  
つくったり てんぷらを たべたり しました。でも、わたしは まだ おんせん  
にはいったことが ありません。そして、にほんの おまつりを みたことも  
ありません。ですから、ことしの なつ また にほんへ いきたいです。

- |                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| 1 climbing Mt. Fuji         | ( ) |
| 2 eating tempura            | ( ) |
| 3 seeing Japanese festivals | ( ) |
| 4 watching kabuki           | ( ) |
| 5 going to a hot spring     | ( ) |
| 6 making sushi              | ( ) |

## Vocabulary

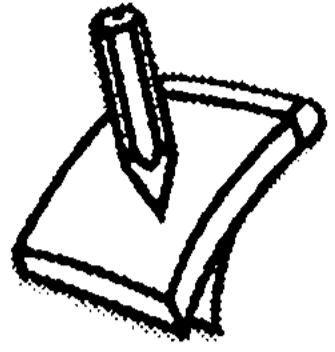


かぶき kabuki a Japanese theatrical play

## Kanji of Unit 15: Kanji with more than 5 strokes

Kanji Kun-yomi On-yomi Meaning Kanji Kun-yomi On-yomi Meaning

本	もと	ホン	book, origin	何	なに/なん	what
一	十	才	木	本		
先	さき	セン	previous	字	ジ	letter, character
一	一	一	一	一	一	一
生	い(きる)/ う(まれる)	セイ	birth, live	年	とし	year, age
一	一	一	一	一	一	一
学	まな(ぶ)	ガク/ガッ	study	車	くるま	car
一	一	一	一	一	一	一
好	す(き)	コウ	like	每	マイ	every
一	一	一	一	一	一	一



## Exercise 7

Write how to read the underlined Kanji in Hiragana.

- 1 あの女の方は 私の 日本語の 先生です。
- 2 日本語の学生は 漢字を 勉強しています。
- 3 かばんの中に 何が ありますか。
- 4 私は 一年(間)、日本に 住んでいました。
- 5 私は 日本人の友達に この本を もらいました。
- 6 私の友達は 日本の車が 好きです。
- 7 あなたは 毎日 電車に 乗りますか。

# Unit Sixteen

## Sukoshi dake Supein-go o hanasu koto ga dekimasu

I can speak a little bit of Spanish

In this unit you will learn about:

- talking about one's hobbies and leisure activities
- how to make the dictionary form of a verb ([V-dic.])
- how to change a verb into a noun, using [V-dic.] + **koto**
- describing one's ability or possibility: [V-dic.] + **koto ga dekimasu**
- kanji of Unit 16

姉、妹、兄、弟、男、前、後、金、週、曜



### Dialogue 1



My hobby is collecting guitars (CD 2; 36)



Mr Yanagi and Miss White are talking about their hobbies.

ホワイト やなぎさんは たくさん ギターを もっていますね。

やなぎ はい。わたしのしゅみは ギターを あつめることですから。

ホワイトさんのしゅみは なんですか。

ホワイト わたしのしゅみは ピアノを ひくことです。

やなぎ そうですか。じゃあ いつか いっしょに ピアノのコンサートへ  
いきませんか。

ホワイト いいですね。ぜひ いきましょう。

HOWAITO Yanagi-san wa takusan gitā o motte imasu ne.

YANAGI Hai, watashi no shumi wa gitā o atsumeru koto desu  
kara. Howaito-san no shumi wa nan desu ka.

HOWAITO Watashi no shumi wa piano o hiku koto desu.

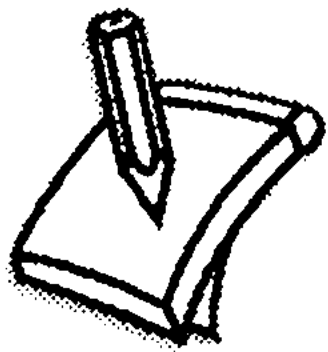
YANAGI Sō desu ka. Jā, itsuka isscho ni piano no konsāto e ikimasen ka.

HOWAITO Ī desu ne. Zehi ikimashō.

# ABC

## Vocabulary

しゅみ	<b>shumi</b>	hobby
あつめること	<b>atsumeru koto</b>	collecting
あつめます	<b>atsumemasu</b>	to collect
ひくこと	<b>hiku koto</b>	playing
ひきます	<b>hikimasu</b>	to play (a keyboard or stringed instrument)
コンサート	<b>konsāto</b>	concert



## Dialogue 1 exercise

Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Mr Yanagi's hobby is playing the guitar.
- 2 ( ) Miss White's hobby is playing the piano.



## Language points

### Hobbies and leisure activities

**Shumi** means “hobby”. Below is some vocabulary relating to hobbies and leisure activities:

#### *Exercise-related activities*

<b>suiē</b>	swimming
<b>sukī</b>	skiing
<b>sukēto</b>	skating
<b>karate</b>	karate
<b>jūdō</b>	judo
<b>gorufu</b>	golf

#### *Indoor activities*

<b>piano</b>	piano
<b>gitā</b>	guitar
<b>dokusho</b>	reading
<b>ikebana</b>	flower arrangement
<b>sadō</b>	tea ceremony
<b>shodō</b>	calligraphy

a. **Watashi no shumi wa dokusho desu.**

My hobby is reading.

b. Q: **Kitamura-san no shumi wa nan desu ka.**

What is your hobby, Mr Kitamura?

A: **Watashi no shumi wa suiē desu.**

My hobby is swimming.

## The dictionary form of a verb

The dictionary form of a verb, referred to as the verb dictionary form ([V-dic.]), is the basic form of the verb. This form is called “dictionary form” because the Japanese dictionary uses this form. Like the **te**-form (Unit 13, pages 156–7), and the **ta**-form (Unit 15, pages 179–80), the verb dictionary form is used along with other expressions to make various meanings.

The following shows how to make the dictionary form from the **masu**-form.

Group 1 verbs: Replacing **-imasu** with the **-u** sound

<i>masu</i> -form	→	replace <b>-imasu</b> with <b>-u</b>	→	dictionary form
<b>kaerimasu</b> go back		<b>kaer</b> + <b>u</b>		<b><u>kaeru</u></b>
<b>kakimasu</b> write		<b>kak</b> + <b>u</b>		<b><u>kaku</u></b>
<b>nomimasu</b> drink		<b>nom</b> + <b>u</b>		<b><u>nomu</u></b>

Group 2 verbs: Replacing **-masu** with the **-ru** sound

<i>masu</i> -form	→	replace <b>-masu</b> with <b>-ru</b>	→	dictionary form
<b>tabemasu</b> eat		<b>tabe</b> + <b>ru</b>		<b><u>taberu</u></b>
<b>misemasu</b> show		<b>mise</b> + <b>ru</b>		<b><u>miseru</u></b>
<b>nemasu</b> sleep		<b>ne</b> + <b>ru</b>		<b><u>neru</u></b>

Group 3 verbs: They follow an irregular pattern

*masu-form*

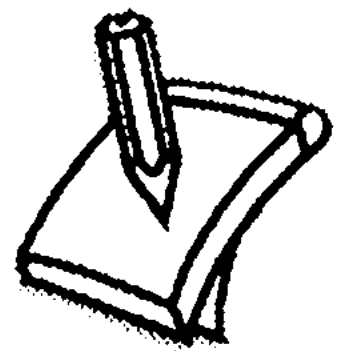
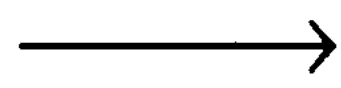
*dictionary form*

**shimasu** do

**suru**

**kimasu** come

**kuru**



## Exercise 1

Change the following verbs from the **masu**-form to the dictionary form. The number in the brackets indicates which verb group they belong to.

1 よみます (1)

2 します (3)

3 いきます (1)

4 ひきます (1)

5 もってきます (3)

6 しらべます (2)



## Vocabulary

しらべます **shirabemasu** to investigate, examine, check, study



## Language point

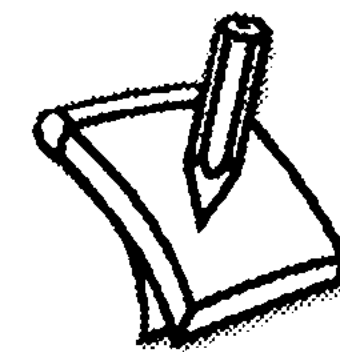
### **Verb dictionary form (1): (V-dic.) + koto as a noun**

As “-ing” is added to an English verb to change it from a verb to a noun (e.g. playing, watching), **koto** “thing” is added to a Japanese verb to turn it into an action or noun. Note that the form of the verb needs to be the dictionary form as in [V-dic.] + **koto**.

<b>kikimasu</b>	listen	→	<b>kiku koto</b>	listening
<b>mimasu</b>	watch	→	<b>miru koto</b>	watching
<b>benkyō shimasu</b>	study	→	<b>benkyō suru koto</b>	studying
<b>tegami o</b>	write	→	<b>tegami o kaku</b>	writing
<b>kakimasu</b>	a letter		<b>koto</b>	a letter



## Exercise 2



Change the following verbs to nouns, using [V-dic.] + **koto** and then write their English meaning.

*Example* (a) かきます かくこと *writing*  
 (b) てがみを かきます てがみを かくこと  
*writing a letter*

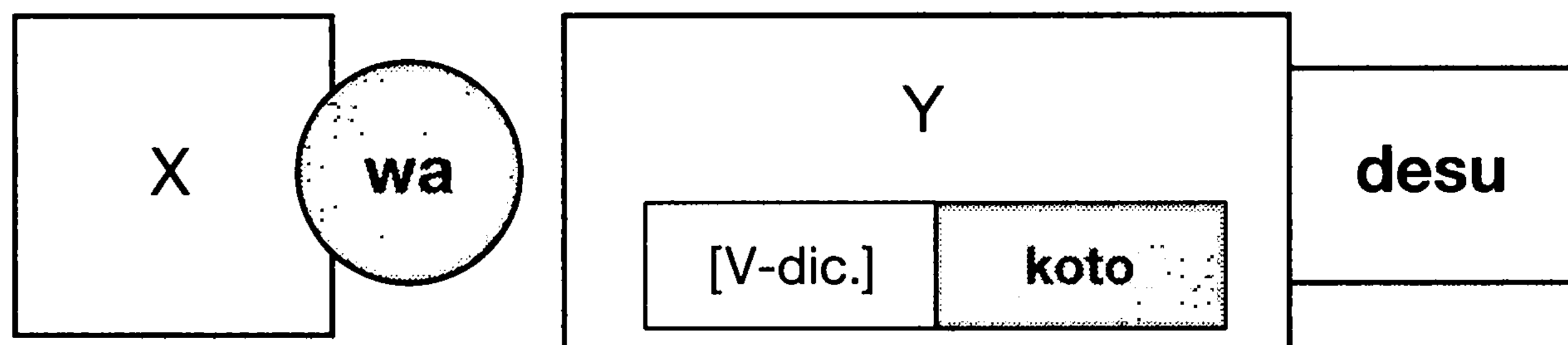
- |              |       |       |
|--------------|-------|-------|
| 1 ひきます       | _____ | _____ |
| 2 およぎます      | _____ | _____ |
| 3 します        | _____ | _____ |
| 4 テレビを みます   | _____ | _____ |
| 5 しゃしんを とります | _____ | _____ |
| 6 ほんを よみます   | _____ | _____ |
| 7 きってを あつめます | _____ | _____ |

## Language point

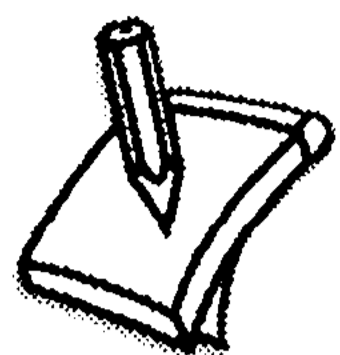


**Verb dictionary form (2):** X wa **(V-dic.)** + koto desu

[V-dic.] + **koto** can appear in Y in the **X wa Y desu** structure.



- Watashi no shumi wa sakkā desu.**  
My hobby is *football*.
- Watashi no shumi wa sakkā o suru koto desu.**  
My hobby is *playing* football.
- Watashi no yume wa kashu ni naru koto desu.**  
My dream is *becoming* a singer.



### Exercise 3

What are their hobbies/dreams? Write an appropriate sentence as shown in the example. For 5, write your own hobbies or dreams.

*Example* Mr Yoshida/playing the piano

*Yoshida-san no shumi wa piano o hiku koto desu.*

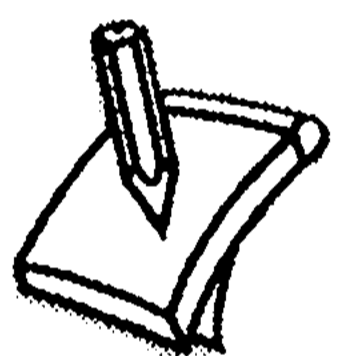
- 1 Mr Honda/hobby/cooking
- 2 Miss White/dream/making films
- 3 My friend/hobby/taking photos
- 4 My younger brother/dream/becoming a baseball player
- 5



### Vocabulary

yume dream

yakyū senshu a baseball player



### Exercise 4 (CD 2; 37)

Listen to the dialogue and choose the male speaker's hobby.



- 1 Yamamoto-san: a. playing golf b. skiing
- 2 Morita-san: a. going to concerts b. going to plays at the theatre
- 3 Hōmuzu-san: a. creating music b. listening to music



### Vocabulary

geki theatre play

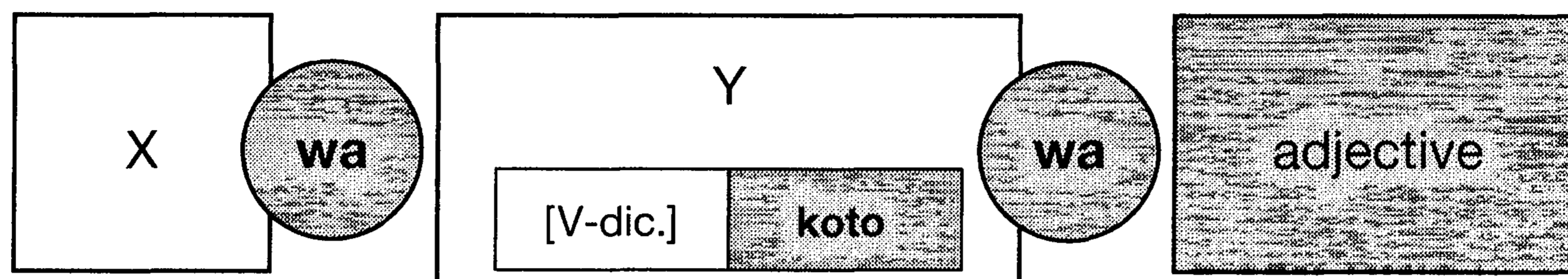
kashu singer



### Language point

**Verb dictionary form (3): X wa (V-dic.) + koto ga + adjective**

The nominalized verb [V-dic.] + **koto** can appear in Y in the **X wa Y ga + adjective** structure as well. Adjectives in this pattern are **suki** “like”, **kirai** “dislike”, **jōzu** “good at” and **heta** “poor at”.



a. **Watashi wa Nihon no ongaku o kiku koto ga suki desu.**

I like listening to Japanese music.

b. **Watashi wa sakkā o suru koto ga amari jōzu dewa arimasen.**

I am not so good at playing football.

## Exercise 5



Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

- 1 I like watching Japanese films.
- 2 My friend is good at playing the guitar.
- 3 I do not like driving a car so much.
- 4 My younger sister is good at drawing pictures.

## Dialogue 2



### Can you speak Spanish? (CD 2; 38)



Mr Yanagi is asking Miss White about her past before coming to Japan.

やなぎ ホワイトさんは にほんへ くるまえに どこに すんでいましたか。

ホワイト わたしは メキシコに すんでいました。

やなぎ じゃあ、スペインごを はなすことが できますか。

ホワイト はい、すこしだけ はなすことが できます。

やなぎ すごいですね。

YANAGI Howaito-san wa Nihon e kuru mae ni doko ni sunde imashita ka.

HOWAITO Watashi wa Mekishiko ni sunde imashita.

YANAGI Jā, Supein-go o hanasu koto ga dekimasu ka.

HOWAITO Hai, sukoshi dake hanasu koto ga dekimasu.

YANAGI Sugoi desu ne.



## Vocabulary

くるまえに	<b>kuru mae ni</b>	before coming
[V-dic.] まえに	[V-dic.] <b>mae ni</b>	before [+ verb]
だけ	<b>dake</b>	only
はなすことができます	<b>hanasu koto ga dekimasu</b>	can speak
できます	<b>dekimasu</b>	can



### Dialogue 2 exercise

Write ✓ if the statement agrees with the dialogue. Write ✗ if not.

- 1 ( ) Miss White lived in Mexico before coming to Japan.
- 2 ( ) Miss White cannot speak Spanish at all.



### Language point

#### Verb dictionary form (4): before ...

**Mae ni** means “before”. Like **ato de** “after”, which you learned in Unit 15 (page 183), it can be used with nouns and verbs. Note that while **ato de** takes the verb **ta**-form before it ([V-ta] + **ato de**), **mae ni** takes the dictionary form ([V-dic.] + **mae ni**).

[noun] <b>no</b>	<b>mae ni</b> (before)
[V-dic.]	

- a. **Gohan no mae ni shukudai o shimasu.**  
I do my homework before the meal.
- b. **Gohan o taberu mae ni te o aratte kudasai.**  
Please wash your hands before eating the meal.

Note that the numeric counter such as **-nen** “year” and **-jikan** “hour” does not take **no** when it is used with this expression.

- c. **Howaito-san wa san-nen mae ni Nihon e kimashita.**  
Miss White came to Japan three years ago.

d. **Watashi wa ni-jikan mae ni gohan o tabemashita.**

I ate the meal two hours ago.

## Exercise 6



Complete the following sentences according to the English meaning in the brackets.

*Example* Watashi wa taberu mae ni te o araimasu.  
(I wash my hands before eating.)

- 1 Kimura-san wa \_\_\_\_\_ uchi o tatemashita.  
(Mr Kimura built a house before marrying.)
- 2 Watashi wa hon o \_\_\_\_\_ denki o tsukemasu.  
(I switch on the light before reading a book.)
- 3 Watashi wa kami o \_\_\_\_\_ kami o araimasu.  
(I have my hair washed before it is cut (lit. “cutting”).)
- 4 Watashi wa \_\_\_\_\_ nikki o kakimasu.  
(I write my diary before going to bed.)
- 5 Howaito-san wa \_\_\_\_\_ Nihon e kimashita.  
(Miss White came to Japan five years ago.)

## Vocabulary

**araimasu** to wash

**tatemasu** to build

**denki** light, electricity

**tsukemasu** to turn on

**kirimasu** to cut

**nikki** diary

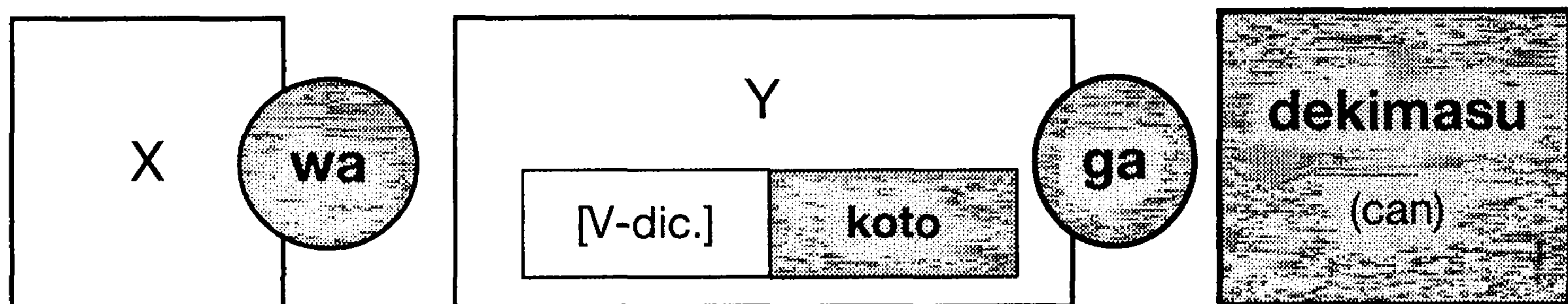
A  
CB

## Language point



### **Verb dictionary form (5): describing ability or possibility**

**Dekimasu** is a verb meaning “can do”. The **X wa Y ga dekimasu** pattern is used to describe one’s ability. Y takes either a noun or a nominalized verb ([V-dic.] + **koto**).



a. **Kimura-san wa gitā ga dekimasu.**

Mr Kimura can play the guitar.

b. **Kimura-san wa piano o hiku koto ga dekimasen.**

Mr Kimura cannot play the piano.

c. Q: **Kimu-san wa oyogu koto ga dekimasu ka.**

Can you swim, Miss Kim?

A-1: **Hai, (watashi wa oyogu koto ga) dekimasu.**

Yes, I can.

A-2: **Īe, (watashi wa oyogu koto ga) dekimasen.**

No, I cannot.

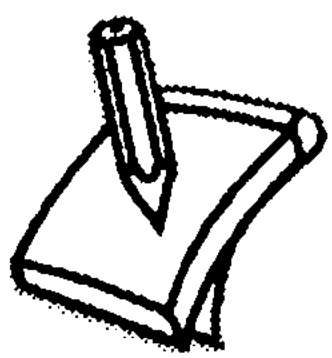
This pattern is also used to express whether or not something is possible/allowed.

d. Q: **Koko de oyogu koto ga dekimasu ka.**

Is swimming allowed here?

A: **Īe, dekimasen.**

No, it is not allowed.



## Exercise 7

Complete the following dialogues appropriately as shown in the example.

*Example*

MICHIKO Tomu-san wa piano o hiku koto ga dekimasu ka. (play the piano)

TOMU Hai, dekimasu.

1 MICHIKO \_\_\_\_\_ (speak French)

TOMU Īe, dekimasen.

2 MICHIKO \_\_\_\_\_ (sing a Japanese song)

TOMU Hai, dekimasu.

3 MICHIKO \_\_\_\_\_ (skiing)

TOMU Hai, dekimasu.

4 MICHIKO \_\_\_\_\_ (write Kanji)  
TOMU Hai, sukoshi dekimasu.

### Exercise 8 (CD 2; 39)

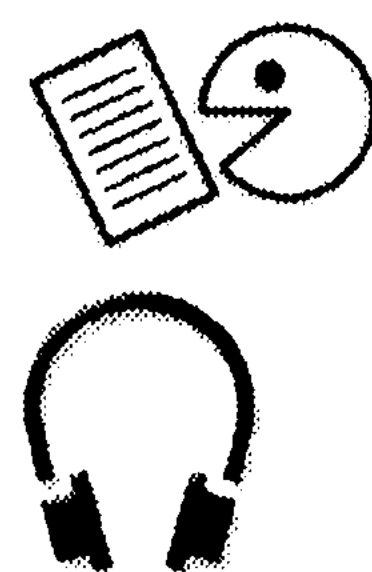
Michiko is talking with her Chinese friend, Mr Chen. He recently bought a new mobile phone. Listen to their conversation and write ✓ for the functions the mobile phone has.



- 1 ( ) play golf                      2 ( ) play tennis                      3 ( ) create music  
4 ( ) write Chinese                  5 ( ) read Chinese                      6 ( ) watch TV  
7 ( ) check Kanji pronunciation

### Exercise 9 (CD 2; 40)

Mr Brown, who is currently on holiday, wrote a postcard to his friend Miss Machida. Read the card aloud first and write ✓ if the statements below agree with it, and ✗ if not.



まちださん

げんきですか。わたしは とても げんきです。いま おきなわに います。うみのまえの ホテルに とまっています。とても すてきな ホテルです。ホテルから うみまで あるいて いくことができますから、わたしは まいにち うみへ いきます。でも、まだ すこし さむいですから うみで およぐことが できません。ごんねんですね。

らいしゅう どうきょうへ かえります。どうきょうへ かえるまえに、たくさん おみやげを かいます。まちださんの おみやげも かいますから たのしみに してくださいね。

じゃあ、また。

ブラウンより

## Vocabulary

たのしみにします **tanoshimini shimasu** to look forward to



- 1 ( ) Mr Brown is staying at a hotel from where he can walk to the beach.
- 2 ( ) Mr Brown enjoys swimming in Okinawa every day.
- 3 ( ) Mr Brown has not bought a souvenir for Miss Machida yet.

## Kanji of Unit 16: Kanji with more than 5 strokes

Kanji	Kun-yomi	On-yomi	Meaning	Kanji	Kun-yomi	On-yomi	Meaning
姉	あね	シ	elder sister	前	まえ	ゼン	front, before
く 女 女 女 女 姉 姉 姉				、 〃 一 艹 艹 前 前 前 前			
妹	いもうと	マイ	younger sister	後	あと / うしろ	ゴ	behind, after
く 女 女 女 女 妹 妹 妹				、 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 後 後			
兄	あに	キョウ / ケイ	elder brother	金	かね	キン	money, gold
、 〃 〃 兄 兄				、 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 金 金			
弟	おとうと	ダイ	younger brother	週		シュウ	week
、 〃 〃 弟 弟 弟				、 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 週 週 週 週 週 週			
男	おとこ	ダン / ナン	man, male	曜		ヨウ	day of the week
、 〃 〃 〃 〃 男 男				、 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 〃 曜 曜 曜 曜 曜 曜 曜 曜			



## Exercise 10



Write how to read the underlined kanji in hiragana.

- 1 私の妹は 駅の前に 立っています。
- 2 私は 弟が 二人います。
- 3 あなたは 毎週 金曜日 何を しますか。
- 4 あの木の下の男の人は 私の兄です。
- 5 私のポケットの中に お金が 入っています。
- 6 テストの後、一緒に あそびに いきましょう。
- 7 兄弟 (brothers) と 姉妹 (sisters)

# Translations of dialogues

This section contains translations of dialogues in Units 9 to 16. Translations of earlier dialogues can be found in the units.

## Unit 9

### Dialogue 1

---

- NORIO *Emma, have you already bought the train tickets?*  
EMMA *No, not yet. I am going to buy them online this afternoon.*  
NORIO *Really? Is this your first time going to Nagano, Emma?*  
EMMA *Yes, this is my first time.*  
NORIO *What do you want to do in Nagano?*  
EMMA *I want to take a lot of photos. And I want to try the hot spring.*
- 

### Dialogue 2

---

- NORIO *Where did you go over the summer holiday, Emma?*  
EMMA *I went to America in the summer holiday.*  
NORIO *Why did you go there?*  
EMMA *I went there to see my friend in New York.*  
NORIO *What did you do in New York?*  
EMMA *I went sightseeing in New York with my friend.*
- 

### Dialogue 3

---

- NORIO *Emma, have you ever watched sumo before?*  
EMMA *No, not yet. I would love to watch it.*

- 
- NORIO *Then why don't you go to watch sumo with me this weekend?*  
EMMA *Really? I would be delighted to. But what day of the week is it?*  
NORIO *It is Sunday. Are you busy this Sunday, Emma?*  
EMMA *No, I am free.*  
NORIO *My friend is also coming but is that OK for you?*  
EMMA *Of course.*  
NORIO *Then let's go together.*
- 

## Unit 10

### Dialogue 1

---

- MR CLARK *Miss Akita, tomorrow is bonus day, isn't it?  
What do you want with that bonus?*  
MISS AKITA *I want a new computer.*  
MR CLARK *Why do you want a new computer?*  
MISS AKITA *Because my current computer is already old. Besides,  
the current one is slightly slow.*  
MR CLARK *Is that so?*
- 

### Dialogue 2

---

- MR CLARK *I am going to go to karaoke with the others. Won't you  
come with us as well, Miss Akita?*  
MISS AKITA *I want to go but I will go home today because I have a  
headache.*  
MR CLARK *That is bad. I have some medicine. Would you like to  
take it?*  
MISS AKITA *Thank you. (Then,) please give me some.*
- 

### Dialogue 3

---

- MISS AKITA *Mr Clark, thank you for giving me the medicine last Friday.*  
MR CLARK *You're welcome. Are you all right now?*

- 
- MISS AKITA *Yes, I received some medicine from a doctor last Saturday.*  
MR CLARK *Really? That was good.*  
MISS AKITA *By the way, how was karaoke last Friday?*  
MR CLARK *It was very enjoyable. Let's go (to karaoke) together next time.*  
MISS AKITA *Yes, by all means.*
- 

## Unit 11

### Dialogue 1

---

- MR TANAKA *Miss Smith, what do you usually do on your days off?*  
MISS SMITH *I often go to the park for a walk.*  
MR TANAKA *Really? Then, shall we go to Shinjuku Gyoen together this Saturday?*  
MISS SMITH *What is Shinjuku Gyoen?*  
MR TANAKA *It is a spacious and beautiful park. It is in Shinjuku ward.*  
MISS SMITH *Is it far from Shinjuku station?*  
MR TANAKA *No, it is nearby. It is about a ten-minute walk from Shinjuku station.*  
MISS SMITH *That is handy. Then, let's go (there) together this Saturday.*
- 

### Dialogue 2

---

- MR TANAKA *Miss Smith, what did you do last weekend?*  
MISS SMITH *I went to a mountain nearby with my friend.*  
MR TANAKA *Really? How was the weather?*  
MISS SMITH *It was good. It was slightly cloudy and cold in the morning, but it became warm in the afternoon.*  
MR TANAKA *Did you go to the top of the mountain?*  
MISS SMITH *Yes. It took two hours because we walked.*  
MR TANAKA *That must be tough.*  
MISS SMITH *Yes. But the view from the top was really beautiful.*  
MR TANAKA *Were there a lot of people there?*  
MISS SMITH *No, there were not many (lit. few) people.*
-

## Unit 12

### Dialogue 1

---

- MRS KATO *Mr Jones, this is a photo of my son.*  
MR JONES *He looks very like you. How old is he now?*  
MRS KATO *He became 16 years old last month.*  
MR JONES *Really? He has long legs. And he is tall.*  
MRS KATO *Yes, he is the tallest in the family.*  
MR JONES *How tall is he?*  
MRS KATO *He is probably around 185cm.*
- 

### Dialogue 2

---

- MR JONES *Mrs Kato, this optician has many customers hasn't it.*  
MRS KATO *It is because this place is cheap and popular.*  
MR JONES *There are glasses with various colours.*  
MRS KATO *Indeed. Which colour do you prefer, a bright colour or a dark colour?*  
MR JONES *I prefer bright colours.*  
MRS KATO *Then, how about this red pair of glasses?*  
MR JONES *It is a little gaudy.*  
MRS KATO *Then, how about this brown pair of glasses?*  
MR JONES *They are lovely. I will take them.*
- 

## Unit 13

### Dialogue 1

---

- MR HOLMES *Excuse me but please tell me how to read this kanji.*  
A WAITRESS *Ah, that kanji is "tempura".*  
MR HOLMES *Really? Then, I will have "tempura udon".*  
A WAITRESS *Certainly.*  
MR HOLMES *And please bring a bottle of beer with it.*  
A WAITRESS *Certainly.*
-

---

## Dialogue 2

- MRS NAGANO *Mr Holmes, this is your room.*
- MR HOLMES *Is this it? It is spacious. Oh, there is an entrance hall in the room. Why?*
- MRS NAGANO *It is because you must not wear shoes inside the room.*
- MR HOLMES *Really? Oh, there are slippers in the entrance hall. Do I wear slippers inside the room?*
- MRS NAGANO *No, you must not wear slippers inside the room. Please use them outside the room.*
- MR HOLMES *I see. By the way, may I smoke in the room?*
- MRS NAGANO *No, you must not smoke because your room is "non-smoking". But you can smoke in the lobby.*
- 

## Unit 14

### Dialogue 1

- 
- MR ENOKIDA *Ms Kim, how are you coming to my place this Saturday?*
- MS KIM *I am going by train.*
- MR ENOKIDA *Then, please get off at Sakura station and go out of the south exit. A bus stop is in front of the south exit so please take a 73 bus and get off at the bus stop called "In front of Sakura Hospital".*
- MS KIM *How many stops do I have before arriving at "In front of Sakura Hospital"?*
- MR ENOKIDA *It is the fourth stop.*
- 

### Dialogue 2

- 
- MR ENOKIDA *Hello, Ms Kim.*
- MS KIM *Oh hello, Mr Enokida.*
- MR ENOKIDA *Ms Kim, what were you doing at 8 p.m. in the evening yesterday?*
- MS KIM *I was watching a Korean film at home because it was raining yesterday.*
-

MR ENOKIDA *Was it enjoyable?*  
MS KIM *Yes, it was very enjoyable. I have the DVD of that film so please watch it some day.*

---

### Dialogue 3

---

MS KIM *Mr Enokida, what do you do for your health?*  
MR ENOKIDA *I eat vegetables every day. And I also go jogging every weekend. How about you, Ms Kim?*  
MS KIM *I swim at the pool nearby.*  
MR ENOKIDA *How long do you swim?*  
MS KIM *I swim for about one hour.*  
MR ENOKIDA *That is great.*

---

## Unit 15

### Dialogue 1

---

MR HANCOCK *Miss Inoue, what do you want to do this weekend?*  
MISS INOUE *Well, I want to do various things such as swimming in the pool, borrowing some books from the library. How about you, Mr Hancock?*  
MR HANCOCK *I want to go to the city centre to buy some clothes.*  
MISS INOUE *What do you want to buy?*  
MR HANCOCK *I want to buy clothes such as a new pair of trousers and a sweater.*  
MISS INOUE *Really?*

---

### Dialogue 2

---

MR HANCOCK *Miss Inoue, when did you graduate from university?*  
MISS INOUE *I graduated from university the year before last.*  
MR HANCOCK *What did you do after graduating?*

MISS INOUE *I travelled in various countries.*

MR HANCOCK *Really. That sounds nice.*

---

### Dialogue 3

---

MISS INOUE *Mr Hancock, have you ever borrowed a book from this library?*

MR HANCOCK *No, I have not. (It is) because I do not have a library card.*

MISS INOUE *Then, let's create one today.*

MR HANCOCK *Isn't it difficult?*

MISS INOUE *No, it is easy.*

---

## Unit 16

### Dialogue 1

---

MISS WHITE *Mr Yanagi, you have many guitars, haven't you?*

MR YANAGI *Yes. That is because my hobby is collecting guitars. What about your hobby, Miss White?*

MISS WHITE *My hobby is playing the piano.*

MR YANAGI *Really? Then, shall we go to a piano concert some day?*

MISS WHITE *That is great. Definitely.*

---

### Dialogue 2

---

MR YANAGI *Where did you live before coming to Japan?*

MISS WHITE *I lived in Mexico.*

MR YANAGI *Then, can you speak Spanish?*

MISS WHITE *Yes, I can speak it only a little.*

MR YANAGI *That is great.*

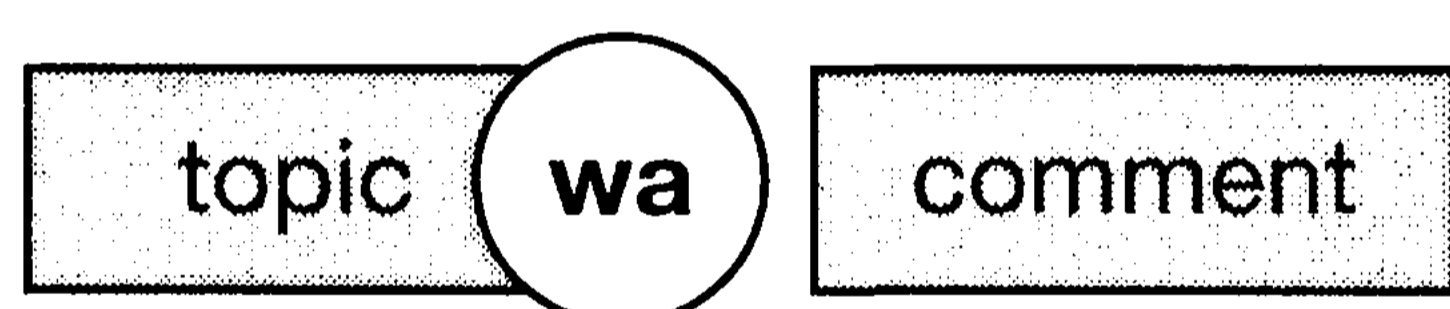
---



# Grammar summary

## 1 Topic marker **wa**

Unlike English, Japanese word order is very flexible (for example, “I study Japanese at the library every day” could be [I/every day/at the library/Japanese/study], [I/at the library/Japanese/every day/study], [every day/at the library/I/Japanese/study], or [Japanese/every day/at the library/study]). Hence, the word order does not specify the function of the word in the sentence but the particles do (a full list of the particles can be found in section 7). One of the most important particles is the topic marker **wa**. The word followed by **wa** indicates what the sentence is talking about. For example, when you are talking about yourself (**watashi**) or the Japanese language (**Nihon-go**), you start the sentence with **Watashi wa** or **Nihon-go wa**, respectively. What follows the topic marker **wa** is the comment about the topic.



## 2 Sentence pattern

Although word order is flexible in Japanese, a Japanese sentence always ends in either a verb, an adjective, or a copula. The following shows how they conjugate (or inflect).

## Noun + copula (desu)

I am/am not/was/was not Japanese.

<i>Topic</i>		<i>Comment</i>	
		<i>Noun</i>	<i>Copula</i>
<b>Watashi</b>	<b>wa</b>	<b>Nihon-jin</b>	<b>desu</b> (non-past affirmative)
			<b>dewa/ja arimasen</b> (non-past negative)
			<b>deshita</b> (past affirmative)
			<b>dewa/ja arimasendeshita</b> (past negative)

## i-adjectives and na-adjectives

Japanese has two types of adjective: **i**-adjectives and **na**-adjectives. They inflect differently as shown below:

### i-adjectives

Japan is/is not/was/was not small.

<i>Topic</i>		<i>Comment</i>	
		<i>i-adjective</i>	
<b>Nihon</b>	<b>wa</b>	<b>chīsai <u>desu</u></b> (non-past affirmative)	
		<b>chīsakunai <u>desu</u></b> (non-past negative)	
		<b>chīsakatta <u>desu</u></b> (past affirmative)	
		<b>chīsakunakatta <u>desu</u></b> (past negative)	

**na**-adjectives

Japan is/is not/was/was not beautiful/clean.

Topic		Comment	
<i>na</i> -adjective			
Nihon	wa	<b>kirē <u>desu</u></b>	(non-past affirmative)
		<b>kirē <u>dewa/ja arimasen</u></b>	(non-past negative)
		<b>kirē <u>deshita</u></b>	(past affirmative)
		<b>kirē <u>dewa/ja arimasendeshita</u></b>	(past negative)

When adjectives precede nouns, **i**-adjectives (e.g. **ī desu** “good”) drop **desu** whereas **na**-adjectives (e.g. **yūmē desu** “famous”) drop **desu** but take **na** as shown below:

**i/na**-adjective + noun

This is a good/famous book.

Topic		Comment			
<i>adjective</i> <i>noun</i> <i>copula</i>					
Kore	wa	ī  yūmē <u>na</u>	hon	<b>desu</b>	(non-past affirmative)
				<b>dewa/ja arimasen</b>	(non-past negative)
				<b>deshita</b>	(past affirmative)
				<b>dewa/ja arimasendeshita</b>	(past negative)

**Verbs**

Japanese verbs, which conjugate as follows: **-masu**, **-masen**, **-mashita** and **-masendeshita**, appear at the end of the sentence. The object of the verb usually appears between the topic and the verb and it is marked by the object marker **o**.

I eat/do not eat/ate/did not eat an apple.

<i>Topic</i>		<i>Comment</i>		
		<i>Object</i>	<i>Verb</i>	
<b>Watashi</b>	<b>wa</b>	<b>ringo</b>	<b>o</b>	<b>tabemasu</b> (non-past affirmative)
				<b>tabemasen</b> (non-past negative)
				<b>tabemashita</b> (past affirmative)
				<b>tabemasendeshita</b> (past negative)

### 3 Asking questions

To change a sentence into a question, the word order remains the same but **ka** is added at the end of the sentence.

- a. **Yamada-san wa Nihon-jin desu.**  
Mr Yamada is Japanese.
- b. **Yamada-san wa Nihon-jin desu ka.**  
Is Mr Yamada Japanese?

For a non-yes/no-question, the appropriate interrogative is used in the place of the missing information in addition to **ka** at the end of the sentence.

- a. **Yamada-san wa Nihon-jin desu.**  
Mr Yamada is Japanese.
- b. **Yamada-san wa nani-jin desu ka.**  
What nationality is Mr Yamada?

A full list of interrogative words can be found in section 8.

### 4 Plain style form

While the **desu/masu** form (shown in section 2) is a polite form which can be used in a formal situation, there is a plain style form counterpart. Plain style form is often used in conversation in a close relationship such as between friends or family members. If you want to learn more about this form, visit the website [www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/](http://www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/).

## 5 Other expressions

Japanese verbs take more forms such as:

Verb stem ([V-stem]): **tabe** (the remaining part of the verb without **masu**)

Verb **te**-form ([V-te]): **tabete** (Units 13, 14)

Verb **ta**-form ([V-ta]): **tabeta** (Unit 15)

Verb dictionary form ([V-dic.]): **taberu** (Unit 16)

Along with other expressions, they make a variety of meanings, as shown below:

### (V-stem) +

[V-stem] + <b>masen ka</b>	Won't you [V]?	<b>Nichi-yōbi isscho ni ēga o <u>mimasen ka.</u></b>	<b>9</b>
[V-stem] + <b>mashō</b>	Let's [V]	<b>Hai, (isscho ni) <u>tabemashō.</u></b>	<b>9</b>
[V-stem] + <b>mashō ka</b>	Shall I [V]?	<b>Yamada-san, kaban o <u>mochimashō ka.</u></b>	<b>14</b>
[V-stem] + <b>ni ikimasu</b>	The purpose of going/coming/ returning	<b>Watashi wa sūpā e pan o <u>kai ni ikimasu.</u></b>	<b>9</b>
[V-stem] + <b>tai desu</b>	I want to [V]	<b>Watashi wa sushi o/ga <u>tabetai desu.</u></b>	<b>9</b>

### (V-te) +

[V-te] + <b>imasu</b>	be [V]-ing	<b>Ai-san wa ima Nihon-go o benkyō <u>shite imasu.</u></b>	<b>14</b>
[V-te] + <b>imasu</b>	continuing state	<b>Watashi wa kekkon <u>shite imasen.</u></b>	<b>14</b>
[V-te] + <b>imasu</b>	habitual action	<b>Watashi wa Nihon no kaisha de <u>hataraitte imasu.</u></b>	<b>14</b>
[V-te] + <b>kara . . .</b>	After [V1], do [V2]	<b>Watashi wa itsumo ha o <u>migaite kara nemasu.</u></b>	<b>14</b>

[V-te] + <b>kudasai</b>	Please [V]	<b>Sono shashin o <u>misete</u> <u>kudasai</u>.</b>	<b>13</b>
[V-te] + <b>mo</b> <b>ī desu</b>	(You) may [V]	<b>Koko ni <u>suwatte mo ī</u> <u>desu ka</u>.</b>	<b>13</b>
[V-te], [V-te], ...	to connect verb sentences	<b>Watashi wa kinō gohan o <u>tabete</u>, shawā o <u>abite</u>, nemashita.</b>	<b>14</b>
[V-te] + <b>wa</b> <b>ikemasen</b>	(You) must not [V]	<b>Kutsu o <u>haitewa</u> <u>ikemasen</u>.</b>	<b>13</b>

**(V-ta) +**

[V-ta] + <b>koto</b> <b>ga arimasu</b>	have experience of [V]-ing	<b>Watashi wa kimono o <u>kita koto ga arimasu</u>. Jon-san wa Fujisan ni <u>nobotta koto ga</u> <u>arimasu ka</u>.</b>	<b>15</b>
[V-ta] + <b>ri</b> , [V-ta] + <b>ri</b>	[V] and [V] and etc.	<b>Watashi wa kinō terebi o <u>mitari</u>, hon o <u>yondari</u> shimashita.</b>	<b>15</b>
[V-ta] + <b>ato</b> <b>de ...</b>	after [V]	<b>Sotsugyō <u>shita ato de</u> nani o shimashita ka.</b>	<b>15</b>

**(V-dic.) +**

[V-dic.] + <b>koto ga</b> <b>dekimasu</b>	can [V]	<b>Sukoshi dake Supein-go o <u>hanasu koto ga</u> <u>dekimasu</u>.</b>	<b>16</b>
[V-dic.] + <b>koto</b>	changing verbs into nouns	<b>Watashi no shumi wa piano o <u>hiku koto</u> desu.</b>	<b>16</b>
[V-dic.] + <b>mae ni ...</b>	before [V]	<b>Gohan o <u>taberu mae ni te</u> o aratte kudasai.</b>	<b>16</b>

## 6 ko, so, a, do

	<i>Thing</i>	<i>Place</i>	<i>Place and direction (polite expression)</i>	<i>People</i>	<i>Demonstrative (ko-so-a-do + noun)</i>
<b>ko</b>	<b>kore</b> this	<b>koko</b> here	<b>kochira</b> here/this way	<b>kochira</b> this person	<b>kono hon</b> this book
<b>so</b>	<b>sore</b> that	<b>soko</b> there	<b>sochira</b> there/that way	<b>sochira</b> that person	<b>sono hon</b> that book
<b>a</b>	<b>are</b> that one over there	<b>asoko</b> that place over there	<b>achira</b> that place/way over there	<b>achira</b> that person over there	<b>ano hon</b> that book over there
<b>do</b>	<b>dore</b> which one	<b>doko</b> where	<b>dochira</b> where	<b>donata</b> who	<b>dono hon</b> which book

## 7 Particles

<i>Particle</i>	<i>Meaning and example</i>	<i>Unit</i>
<b>wa</b>	<b>は</b> sentence topic marker <b>Watashi <u>wa</u> Nihon-jin desu</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>mo</b>	<b>も</b> also, to, as well as, even <b>Tanaka-san wa 29-sai desu. Watashi <u>mo</u> 29-sai desu.</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>kara</b>	<b>から</b> from (beginning point in time or place, origin) <b>Ginkō wa gozen 10-ji <u>kara</u> desu.</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>made</b>	<b>まで</b> until (up to and including) <b>Ginkō wa gogo 4-ji <u>made</u> desu.</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>no</b>	<b>の</b> 1) of <b>Anata <u>no</u> shigoto wa nan desu ka.</b> <b>Sore wa terebi <u>no</u> rimokon desu.</b>	<b>1</b> <b>4</b>
	2) possessive marker <b>Sono kasa wa watashi <u>no</u> desu.</b>	<b>4</b>

<i>Particle</i>		<i>Meaning and example</i>	<i>Unit</i>
<b>de</b>	で	1) means, method (by, with) <b>Watashi wa basu <u>de</u> uchi e kaerimashita.</b>	6
		<b>Watashi wa te <u>de</u> sushi o tabemasu.</b>	7
		2) in, at (location in/at which the action occurs or is done) <b>Watashi wa yoku sūpā <u>de</u> hirugohan o kaimasu.</b>	7
<b>o</b>	を	direct object marker (thing acted upon) <b>Watashi wa yoku sūpā de hiru-gohan <u>o</u> kaimasu.</b>	7
<b>ni</b>	に	1) indirect object ("receiver" of the action) <b>Watashi wa Akita-san <u>ni</u> purezento o agemasu.</b>	10
		2) location in/at which something exists, resides, etc. <b>Ōsaka <u>ni</u> yūmē na oshiro ga arimasu.</b>	8
		<b>Watashi no ani wa ima Nihon <u>ni</u> sunde imasu.</b>	14
		3) time (at, in) <b>Watashi wa maiasa gozen 7-ji <u>ni</u> okimasu.</b>	7
		4) purpose (to) <b>Watashi wa ashita sūpā e pan o kai <u>ni</u> ikimasu.</b>	9
		5) with <b>Nichi-yōbi issho <u>ni</u> ēga o mimasen ka?</b>	9
<b>ga</b>	が	subject marker <b>Ōsaka ni yūmē na oshiro <u>ga</u> arimasu.</b>	8
		<b>Donna ongaku <u>ga</u> suki desu ka.</b>	5
		<b>Musuko-san wa se <u>ga</u> takai desu ne.</b>	12
		<b>Dōshite atarashī pasokon <u>ga</u> hoshī desu ka.</b>	10
<b>e</b>	へ	direction (to, towards) <b>Watashi wa rainen Nihon <u>e</u> ikimasu.</b>	6
<b>ya</b>	や	..., ..., etc. <b>Watashi no heya ni beddo <u>ya</u> tsukue ga arimasu.</b>	8



<i>Particle</i>		<i>Meaning and example</i>	<i>Unit</i>
<b>to</b>	と	1) . . . and . . . (for nouns) <b>hon <u>to</u> zasshi</b>	<b>11</b>
		2) together with <b>Watashi wa tomodachi <u>to</u> ikimasu.</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>yo</b>	よ	emphasis <b>Īe, chikai desu <u>yo</u>.</b> Yo is used for assertion. Some English equivalents are “I tell you”, “you know”, “believe me” and “I’d say”.	<b>11</b>
<b>ne</b>	ね	tag question marker <b>Musuko-san wa se ga takai desu <u>ne</u>.</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>yor</b>	より	than, more . . . than . . . <b>Nihon wa Ijirisu <u>yor</u> ōkī desu.</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>dake</b>	だけ	only <b>Sukoshi <u>dake</u> Supein-go o hanasu koto ga dekimasu.</b>	<b>16</b>

## Other grammatical markers (conjunctions, etc)

<i>Marker</i>		<i>Meaning and example</i>	<i>Unit</i>
<b>ga</b>	が	but (conjunctive usage) <b>Nihon-go wa omoshiroi desu <u>ga</u>, muzukashī desu.</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>demo</b>	でも	however, but <b>Nihon-go wa omoshiroi desu. <u>Demo</u> muzukashī desu.</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>soshite</b>	そして	and, and then <b>Totemo oishī desu. <u>Soshite</u> totemo yasui desu.</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>sorekara</b>	それから	after that, and then <b><u>Sorekara</u> nani o shimashita ka.</b>	<b>7</b>

Marker		Meaning and example	Unit
mae ni	まえに	1) in front of <b>Hito no <u>mae</u> ni ringo ga arimasu.</b>	8
		2) before <b>Gohan no <u>mae ni</u> shukudai o shimasu.</b>	16
kara	から	1) because Q: <b>Fujisan wa dōshite yūmē desu ka.</b> A: <b>(Fujisan wa) Nihon de ichi-ban takai yama desu <u>kara</u>.</b>	10
		<b>Fujisan wa kirē desu <u>kara</u>, yūmē desu.</b>	10
		2) after <b>Uchi ni kaettek<u>ara</u> nani o shimasu ka.</b>	14
soreni	それに	besides, moreover <b><u>Soreni</u>, ima no konpyūta wa sukoshi osoi desu <u>kara</u>.</b>	10
shikashi	しかし	however, but <b>Ēga o minagara gohan o tabetemo ī desu.</b> <b><u>Shikashi</u> tabako o suttewa ikemasen.</b>	13
goro	ごろ	about, around <b>Kinō no yoru 8-ji <u>goro</u> ēga o mite imashita.</b>	14

## 8 Interrogatives

Interrogative		English	Example	Unit
dare	だれ	who	<b>Ano hito wa <u>dare</u> (donata) desu ka.</b>	4
dare ga	だれが	who (subject)	<b>(O)shiro ni <u>dare ga</u> imasu ka.</b>	8
dare ni	だれに	to whom	<b><u>Dare ni</u> hon o agemashita ka.</b>	10
dare no	だれの	whose	<b>Kono kasa wa <u>dare no</u> kasa desu ka.</b>	4
dare to	だれと	with whom	<b>Imai-san wa <u>dare to</u> Itaria e ikimasu ka.</b>	6

<i>Interrogative</i>		<i>English</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Unit</i>
dō	どう	how	Nihon no sēkatsu wa <u>dō</u> desu ka.	5
doko	どこ	where	(O)tearai wa <u>doko</u> desu ka.	3
doko de	どこで	(at/in/on) where	<u>Doko de</u> hon o yomimashita ka.	7
doko ni	どこに	(in) where	Biggu Ben wa <u>doko ni</u> arimasu ka.	8
doko no	どこの	from where	Sore wa <u>doko no</u> ongaku desu ka.	5
donna	どんな	what kind of	<u>Donna</u> ongaku ga suki desu ka.	5
dono	どの	which	Yamada-san wa <u>dono</u> tokē o kaimashita ka.	4
donokurai	どのくらい	how much/ how long/ how far	Rondon kara Tōkyō made hikōki de <u>donokurai</u> kakarimasu ka.	6
			<u>Donokurai</u> oyoide imasu ka.	14
dore	どれ	which (one)	Terebi no rimokon wa <u>dore</u> desu ka.	4
dōshite	どうして	why	Fujisan wa <u>dōshite</u> yūmē desu ka.	10
ikura	いくら	how much	Ano kamera wa <u>ikura</u> desu ka.	4
ikutsu	いくつ	how many	Ringo ga <u>ikutsu</u> arimasu ka.	8
itsu	いつ	when	Tanjōbi wa <u>itsu</u> desu ka.	2
nan	なん	what	Anata no onamae wa <u>nan</u> desu ka.	1
nan/ nani de	なん/なにで	how, by what means	<u>Nani de</u> bijutsukan e ikimashita ka.	6
nan-ban	なんばん	what number	Anata no denwa bangō wa <u>nan-ban</u> desu ka.	1
nan-gatsu	なんがつ	what month	Kinō wa <u>nan-gatsu</u> nan-nichi deshita ka.	2
nani ga	なにが	what (subject)	Tōkyō ni <u>nani ga</u> arimasu ka.	8
			Kekkon iwai ni <u>nani ga</u> hoshī desu ka.	10
nani o	なにを	what (object)	Sorekara <u>nani o</u> shimashita ka.	7
			Sūpā de <u>nani o</u> kaimashita ka.	8

<i>Interrogative</i>		<i>English</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Unit</i>
nan-ji	なんじ	what time	Ima <u>nan-ji</u> desu ka.	3
nan-nichi	なんにち	what day of the month	Kinō wa nan-gatsu <u>nan-nichi</u> deshita ka.	2
nan-sai	なんさい	how old	Sumisu-san wa <u>nan-sai</u> desu ka.	2
nan-yōbi	なんようび	what day of the week	Kyō wa <u>nan-yōbi</u> desu ka.	2

## 9 Adverbs and adverbial expressions

### Degree

totemo	とても	very (much)	Kappu-rāmen wa <u>totemo</u> oishī desu.	5
chotto	ちょっと	slightly, a little	Kono machi wa <u>chotto</u> ōkī desu.	5
amari	あまり	not so much	Kono machi wa <u>amari</u> ōkikunai desu.	5
zenzen	ぜんぜん	not at all	Kono machi wa <u>zenzen</u> ōkikunai desu.	5

### Quantity

takusan	たくさん	a lot, many	Machi ni omise ga <u>takusan</u> arimasu.	8
sukoshi	すこし	a few, a little	Machi ni omise ga <u>sukoshi</u> arimasu.	10
amari	あまり	not much, not many	Machi ni omise ga <u>amari</u> arimasen.	5
zenzen	ぜんぜん	none at all	Machi ni omise ga <u>zenzen</u> arimasen.	5

## Frequency

itsumo	いつも	always	<b>Watashi wa <u>itsumo</u></b>	7
			kissaten e ikimasu.	
yoku	よく	often	<b>Watashi wa <u>yoku</u></b>	7
			kissaten e ikimasu.	
tokidoki	ときどき	sometimes	<b>Watashi wa <u>tokidoki</u></b>	7
			kissaten e ikimasu.	
tamani	たまに	occasionally	<b>Watashi wa <u>tamani</u></b>	7
			kissaten e ikimasu.	
amari	あまり	not very often	<b>Watashi wa <u>amari</u></b>	7
			kissaten e <u>ikimasen</u> .	
zenzen	ぜんぜん	never	<b>Watashi wa <u>zenzen</u></b>	7
			kissaten e <u>ikimasen</u> .	

## Other adverbs and adverbial expressions

ichi-ban	いちばん	first, best most	<b>Watashi wa gitā ga</b>	12
			<u>ichi-ban</u> suki desu.	
mada	まだ	not yet	<b>Īe, <u>mada</u> desu.</b>	9
mata	また	again	<b>Jā <u>mata</u>, ashita.</b>	5
mō	もう	already	<b><u>Mō</u> hoteru o yoyaku</b>	9
			shimashita ka.	
mochiron	もちろん	of course	<b>Hai, <u>mochiron</u> ī</b>	9
			desu yo.	
mō ichido	もういちど	once more	<b><u>Mō ichido</u> yukkuri</b>	3
			onagai shimasu.	
motto	もっと	more	<b><u>Motto</u> yukkuri</b>	6
			onegaishimasu.	
tabun	たぶん	probably, maybe	<b><u>Tabun</u> 185-senchi</b>	12
			kurai desu.	
yukkuri	ゆっくり	slowly	<b><u>Mō ichido</u> <u>yukkuri</u></b>	3
			onagai shimasu.	
zahi	ぜひ	by all means, definitely	<b>Ī desu ne. <u>Zahi</u></b>	16
			ikimashō.	
zenbu de	ぜんぶで	in total	<b><u>Zenbu de</u> ikutsu heya</b>	8
			ga arimasu ka.	

## 10 Numbers

<i>Roman letters</i>	<i>Hiragana</i>	<i>Kanji</i>		<i>Roman letters</i>	<i>Hiragana</i>	<i>Kanji</i>
1 <b>ichi</b>	いち	一		50 <b>gojū</b>	ごじゅう	五十
2 <b>ni</b>	に	二		60 <b>rokujū</b>	ろくじゅう	六十
3 <b>san</b>	さん	三		70 <b>nanajū</b>	ななじゅう	七十
4 <b>yon/shi</b>	よん/し	四		80 <b>hachijū</b>	はちじゅう	八十
5 <b>go</b>	ご	五		90 <b>kyūjū</b>	きゅうじゅう	九十
6 <b>roku</b>	ろく	六		99 <b>kyūjū kyū</b>	きゅうじゅうきゅう	九十九
7 <b>nana/shichi</b>	なな/しち	七		100 <b>hyaku</b>	ひゃく	百
8 <b>hachi</b>	はち	八		200 <b>nihyaku</b>	にひゃく	二百
9 <b>kyū/ku</b>	きゅう/く	九		300 <b>sanbyaku</b>	さんびゃく	三百
10 <b>jū</b>	じゅう	十		400 <b>yonhyaku</b>	よんひゃく	四百
11 <b>jū ichi</b>	じゅういち	十一		500 <b>gohyaku</b>	ごひゃく	五百
12 <b>jū ni</b>	じゅうに	十二		600 <b>roppyaku</b>	ろっぴゃく	六百
13 <b>jū san</b>	じゅうさん	十三		700 <b>nanahyaku</b>	ななひゃく	七百
14 <b>jū yon</b>	じゅうよん	十四		800 <b>happyaku</b>	はっぴゃく	八百
<b>jū shi</b>	じゅうし			900 <b>kyūhyaku</b>	きゅうひゃく	九百
15 <b>jū go</b>	じゅうご	十五				
16 <b>jū roku</b>	じゅうろく	十六	1,000	<b>sen</b>	せん	千
17 <b>jū nana</b>	じゅうなな	十七	2,000	<b>nisen</b>	にせん	二千
<b>jū shichi</b>	じゅうしち		3,000	<b>sanzen</b>	さんぜん	三千
18 <b>jū hachi</b>	じゅうはち	十八	4,000	<b>yonsen</b>	よんせん	四千
19 <b>jū kyū</b>	じゅうきゅう	十九	5,000	<b>gosen</b>	ごせん	五千
<b>jū ku</b>	じゅうく		6,000	<b>rokusen</b>	ろくせん	六千
20 <b>nijū</b>	にじゅう	二十	7,000	<b>nanasen</b>	ななせん	七千
30 <b>sanjū</b>	さんじゅう	三十	8,000	<b>hassen</b>	はっせん	八千
40 <b>yonjū</b>	よんじゅう	四十	9,000	<b>kyūsen</b>	きゅうせん	九千
			10,000	<b>ichiman</b>	いちまん	一万
			100,000	<b>jūman</b>	じゅうまん	十万
			1,000,000	<b>hyakuman</b>	ひゃくまん	百万
			10,000,000	<b>issenman</b>	いっせんまん	一千万
			100,000,000	<b>ichioku</b>	いちおく	一億

## 11 Counters

*tsu-system*  
(general things)

**-tsu/〜つ**

Q	<b>ikutsu</b>	いくつ	幾つ
1	<b>hitotsu</b>	ひとつ	一つ
2	<b>futatsu</b>	ふたつ	二つ
3	<b>mittsu</b>	みっつ	三つ
4	<b>yotstu</b>	よっつ	四つ
5	<b>itsutsu</b>	いつつ	五つ
6	<b>muttsu</b>	むっつ	六つ
7	<b>nanatsu</b>	ななつ	七つ
8	<b>yattsu</b>	やっつ	八つ
9	<b>kokonotsu</b>	ここのつ	九つ
10	<b>tō</b>	とお	十
11	<b>jūichi</b>	じゅういち	十一
12	<b>jūni</b>	じゅうに	十二

*Thin, flat objects*  
(paper, stamps, shirts, CDs,  
DVDs, etc.)

**-mai/〜まい/〜枚**

Q	<b>nan-mai</b>	なんまい	何枚
1	<b>ichi-mai</b>	いちまい	一枚
2	<b>ni-mai</b>	にまい	二枚
3	<b>san-mai</b>	さんまい	三枚
4	<b>yon-mai</b>	よんまい	四枚
5	<b>go-mai</b>	ごまい	五枚
6	<b>roku-mai</b>	ろくまい	六枚
7	<b>nana-mai</b>	ななまい	七枚
8	<b>hachi-mai</b>	はちまい	八枚
9	<b>kyū-mai</b>	きゅうまい	九枚
10	<b>jū-mai</b>	じゅうまい	十枚
11	<b>jūichi-mai</b>	じゅういちまい	十一枚
12	<b>jūni-mai</b>	じゅうにまい	十二枚

*Small things*  
(eggs, apples, dice, etc.)

**-ko/〜こ/〜個**

Q	<b>nan-ko</b>	なんこ	何個
1	<b>ik-ko</b>	いっこ	一個
2	<b>ni-ko</b>	にこ	二個
3	<b>san-ko</b>	さんこ	三個
4	<b>yon-ko</b>	よんこ	四個
5	<b>go-ko</b>	ごこ	五個
6	<b>rok-ko</b>	ろっこ	六個
7	<b>nana-ko</b>	ななこ	七個
8	<b>hak-ko</b>	はっこ	八個
9	<b>kyū-ko</b>	きゅうこ	九個
10	<b>juk-ko</b>	じゅっこ	十個
11	<b>jūik-ko</b>	じゅういっこ	十一个
12	<b>jūni-ko</b>	じゅうにこ	十二個

*Long, slender objects*  
(pens, bottles, umbrellas,  
belts, etc.)

**-pon, hon, bon/  
〜ぽん、ほん、ぼん、/〜本**

Q	<b>nan-bon</b>	なんぼん	何本
1	<b>ip-pon</b>	いっぽん	一本
2	<b>ni-hon</b>	にほん	二本
3	<b>san-bon</b>	さんぼん	三本
4	<b>yon-hon</b>	よんほん	四本
5	<b>go-hon</b>	ごほん	五本
6	<b>rop-pon</b>	ろっぽん	六本
7	<b>nana-hon</b>	ななほん	七本
8	<b>hap-pon</b>	はっぽん	八本
9	<b>kyū-hon</b>	きゅうほん	九本
10	<b>jup-pon</b>	じゅっぽん	十本
11	<b>jūip-pon</b>	じゅういっぽん	十一本
12	<b>jūni-hon</b>	じゅうにほん	十二本

*Person, people**Machines, vehicles**(TVs, PCs, cameras, cars, bicycles, etc.)*

---

**-nin/～にん/～人**

---

---

**-dai/～だい/～台**

---

Q	<b>nan-nin</b>	なんにん	何人	Q	<b>nan-dai</b>	なんだい	何台
1	<b>hitori</b>	ひとり	一人	1	<b>ichi-dai</b>	いちだい	一台
2	<b>futari</b>	ふたり	二人	2	<b>ni-dai</b>	にだい	二台
3	<b>san-nin</b>	さんにん	三人	3	<b>san-dai</b>	さんだい	三台
4	<b>yo-nin</b>	よにん	四人	4	<b>yon-dai</b>	よんだい	四台
5	<b>go-nin</b>	ごにん	五人	5	<b>go-dai</b>	ごだい	五台
6	<b>roku-nin</b>	ろくにん	六人	6	<b>roku-dai</b>	ろくだい	六台
7	<b>nana-nin</b>	ななにん	七人	7	<b>nana-dai</b>	ななだい	七台
	<b>shichi-nin</b>	しちにん					
8	<b>hachi-nin</b>	はちにん	八人	8	<b>hachi-dai</b>	はちだい	八台
9	<b>kyū-nin</b>	きゅうにん	九人	9	<b>kyū-dai</b>	きゅうだい	九台
	<b>ku-nin</b>	くにん					
10	<b>jū-nin</b>	じゅうにん	十人	10	<b>jū-dai</b>	じゅうだい	十台
11	<b>jūichi-nin</b>	じゅういちにん	十一人	11	<b>jūichi-dai</b>	じゅういちだい	十一台
12	<b>jūni-nin</b>	じゅうににん	十二人	12	<b>jūni-dai</b>	じゅうにだい	十二台

*Floors of a house or building**Frequency, times*

---

**-kai/～かい/～階**

---

---

**-kai/～かい/～回**

---

Q	<b>nan-gai</b>	なんがい	何階	Q	<b>nan-kai</b>	なんかい	何回
1	<b>ik-kai</b>	いっかい	一階	1	<b>ik-kai</b>	いっかい	一回
2	<b>ni-kai</b>	にかい	二階	2	<b>ni-kai</b>	にかい	二回
3	<b>san-gai</b>	さんがい	三階	3	<b>san-kai</b>	さんかい	三回
4	<b>yon-kai</b>	よんかい	四階	4	<b>yon-kai</b>	よんかい	四回
5	<b>go-kai</b>	ごかい	五階	5	<b>go-kai</b>	ごかい	五回
6	<b>rok-kai</b>	ろっかい	六階	6	<b>rok-kai</b>	ろっかい	六回
7	<b>nana-kai</b>	ななかい	七階	7	<b>nana-kai</b>	ななかい	七回
8	<b>hak-kai</b>	はっかい	八階	8	<b>hak-kai</b>	はっかい	八回
	<b>hachi-kai</b>	はちかい					
9	<b>kyū-kai</b>	きゅうかい	九階	9	<b>kyū-kai</b>	きゅうかい	九回
10	<b>juk-kai</b>	じゅっかい	十階	10	<b>juk-kai</b>	じゅっかい	十回
11	<b>jūik-kai</b>	じゅういっかい	十一階	11	<b>jūik-kai</b>	じゅういっかい	十一回
12	<b>jūni-kai</b>	じゅうにかい	十二階	12	<b>jūni-kai</b>	じゅうにかい	十二回



## 12 Time expressions

*Minutes**Hours*

---

**-fun, pun/**〜ふん、ぷん/〜分

---

**-jikan/**〜じかん/〜時間

---

Q	<b>nan-pun</b>	なんぷん	何分	Q	<b>nan-jikan</b>	なんじかん	何時間
1	<b>ip-pun</b>	いっぷん	一分	1	<b>ichi-jikan</b>	いちじかん	一時間
2	<b>ni-fun</b>	にふん	二分	2	<b>ni-jikan</b>	にじかん	二時間
3	<b>san-pun</b>	さんぷん	三分	3	<b>san-jikan</b>	さんじかん	三時間
4	<b>yon-pun</b>	よんぷん	四分	4	<b>yo-jikan</b>	よじかん	四時間
5	<b>go-fun</b>	ごふん	五分	5	<b>go-jikan</b>	ごじかん	五時間
6	<b>rop-pun</b>	ろっぷん	六分	6	<b>roku-jikan</b>	ろくじかん	六時間
7	<b>nana-fun</b>	ななふん	七分	7	<b>nana-jikan</b>	ななじかん	七時間
8	<b>hap-pun</b>	はっぷん	八分	8	<b>hachi-jikan</b>	はちじかん	八時間
9	<b>kyū-fun</b>	きゅうふん	九分	9	<b>ku-jikan</b>	くじかん	九時間
10	<b>jup-pun</b>	じゅっぷん	十分	10	<b>jū-jikan</b>	じゅうじかん	十時間
11	<b>jūip-pun</b>	じゅういっぷん	十一分	11	<b>jūichi-jikan</b>	じゅういちじかん	十一時間
12	<b>jūni-fun</b>	じゅうにふん	十二分	12	<b>jūni-jikan</b>	じゅうにじかん	十二時間

---

*Days**Weeks*

---

**-nichi/**〜にち/〜日

---

**-shūkan/**〜しゅうかん/〜週間

---

Q	<b>nan-nichi</b>	なんにち	何日	Q	<b>nan-shūkan</b>	なんしゅうかん	何週間
1	<b>ichi-nichi</b>	いちにち	一日	1	<b>is-shūkan</b>	いっしゅうかん	一週間
2	<b>futsu-ka</b>	ふつか	二日	2	<b>ni-shūkan</b>	にしゅうかん	二週間
3	<b>mik-ka</b>	みっか	三日	3	<b>san-shūkan</b>	さんしゅうかん	三週間
4	<b>yok-ka</b>	よっか	四日	4	<b>yon-shūkan</b>	よんしゅうかん	四週間
5	<b>itsu-ka</b>	いつか	五日	5	<b>go-shūkan</b>	ごしゅうかん	五週間
6	<b>mui-ka</b>	むいか	六日	6	<b>roku-shūkan</b>	ろくしゅうかん	六週間
7	<b>nano-ka</b>	なのか	七日	7	<b>nana-shūkan</b>	ななしゅうかん	七週間
8	<b>yō-ka</b>	ようか	八日	8	<b>has-shūkan</b>	はっしゅうかん	八週間
9	<b>kokono-ka</b>	ここのか	九日	9	<b>kyū-shūkan</b>	きゅうしゅうかん	九週間
10	<b>tō-ka</b>	とおか	十日	10	<b>jus-shūkan</b>	じゅっしゅうかん	十週間
11	<b>jūichi-nichi</b>	じゅういち にち	十一日	11	<b>jūis-shūkan</b>	じゅういっしゅ うかん	十一週間
12	<b>jūni-nichi</b>	じゅうに にち	十二日	12	<b>jūni-shūkan</b>	じゅうにしゅう かん	十二週間

---

Months				Years			
-kagetsu/～かげつ/～か月				-nen/～ねん/～年			
Q	<b>nan-kagetsu</b>	なんかげつ	何ヶ月	Q	<b>nan-nen</b>	なんねん	何年
1	<b>ik-kagetsu</b>	いっかげつ	一ヶ月	1	<b>ichi-nen</b>	いちねん	一年
2	<b>ni-kagetsu</b>	にかげつ	二ヶ月	2	<b>ni-nen</b>	にねん	二年
3	<b>san-kagetsu</b>	さんかげつ	三ヶ月	3	<b>san-nen</b>	さんねん	三年
4	<b>yon-kagetsu</b>	よんかげつ	四ヶ月	4	<b>yo-nen</b>	よねん	四年
5	<b>go-kagetsu</b>	ごかげつ	五ヶ月	5	<b>go-nen</b>	ごねん	五年
6	<b>rok-kagetsu</b>	ろっかげつ	六ヶ月	6	<b>roku-nen</b>	ろくねん	六年
7	<b>nana-kagetsu</b>	ななかげつ	七ヶ月	7	<b>nana-nen</b>	ななねん	七年
8	<b>hachi-kagetsu</b>	はちかげつ	八ヶ月	8	<b>hachi-nen</b>	はちねん	八年
	<b>hak-kagetsu</b>	はっかげつ					
9	<b>kyū-kagetsu</b>	きゅうかげつ	九ヶ月	9	<b>kyū-nen</b>	きゅうねん	九年
10	<b>juk-kagetsu</b>	じゅっかげつ	十ヶ月	10	<b>jū-nen</b>	じゅうねん	十年
11	<b>jūik-kagetsu</b>	じゅういっか げつ	十一ヶ月	11	<b>jūichi-nen</b>	じゅういち ねん	十一年
12	<b>jūni-kagetsu</b>	じゅうにか げつ	十二ヶ月	12	<b>jūni-nen</b>	じゅうに ねん	十二年

	Past		Present		Future
Day	<b>ototoi</b> おととい 一昨日 the day before yesterday	<b>kinō</b> きのう 昨日 yesterday	<b>kyō</b> きょう 今日 today	<b>ashita</b> あした 明日 tomorrow	<b>asatte</b> あさって 明後日 the day after tomorrow
Week	<b>sensenshū</b> せんせんしゅう 先々週 the week before last	<b>senshū</b> せんしゅう 先週 last week	<b>konshū</b> こんしゅう 今週 this week	<b>raishū</b> らいしゅう 来週 next week	<b>saraishū</b> さらいしゅう 再来週 the week after next
Month	<b>sensengetsu</b> せんせんげつ 先々月 the month before last	<b>sengetsu</b> せんげつ 先月 last month	<b>kongetsu</b> こんげつ 今月 this month	<b>raigetsu</b> らいげつ 来月 next month	<b>saraigetsu</b> さらいげつ 再来月 the month after next
Year	<b>ototoshi</b> おとし 一昨年 the year before last	<b>kyonen</b> きょねん 去年 last year	<b>kotoshi</b> ことし 今年 this year	<b>rainen</b> らいねん 来年 next year	<b>sarainen</b> さらいねん 再来年 the year after next

## 13 Additional vocabulary

Food		Vegetables	
<b>tabemono/たべもの</b>			
aisukurīmu	アイスクリーム	daikon	だいこん
bēkon	ベーコン	hakusai	はくさい
butaniku	ぶたにく	hōrensō	ほうれんそう
chokorēto	チョコレート	jagaimo	じゃがいも
gyūniku	ぎゅうにく	kinoko	きのこ
hamu	ハム	kyabetsu	キャベツ
karēraisu	カレーライス	kyūri	きゅうり
kēki	ケーキ	mame	まめ
pan	パン	moyashi	もやし
piza	ピザ	nasu	なす
potato chippusu	ポテトチップス	negi	ねぎ
sandoitchi	サンドイッチ	ninjin	にんじん
sōsēji	ソーセージ	retasu	レタス
supagettī	スパゲッティ	tamanegi	たまねぎ
toriniku	とりにく	tomato	トマト
		tōmorokoshi	とうもろこし
			(sweet) corn

## Fruit

## Drinks

## kudamono/くだもの

## nomimono/のみのもの

banana	バナナ	banana	bīru	ビール	beer
budō	ぶどう	grape	gyūnyū	ぎゅうにゅう	milk
gurēpufurūtsu	グレープフルーツ	grapefruit	jūsu	ジュース	juice
ichigo	いちご	strawberry	kakuteru	カクテル	cocktail
kiui	キウイ	kiwi fruit	kōcha	こうちゃ	English tea
meron	メロン	melon	kōhī	コーヒー	coffee
mikan	みかん	mandarin	kōra	コーラ	coke, cola
momo	もも	peach	mizu	みず	water
nashi	なし	pear	nihon-cha	にほんちゃ	green tea
painappuru	パイナップル	pineapple	orenji jūsu	オレンジジュース	orange juice
remon	レモン	lemon	(o)sake	おさけ	Jap. rice wine
ringo	りんご	apple	ringo jūsu	りんごジュース	apple juice
sakuranbo	さくらんぼ	cherry	uisukī	ウイスキー	whisky
suika	すいか	watermelon	wain	ワイン	wine
sumomo	すもも	plum	wokka	ウォッカ	vodka

## Buildings

## Occupations

## tatemono/たてもの

## shigoto/しごと

depāto	デパート	department store	bengoshi	べんごし	lawyer
eki	えき	station	chōrishi	ちょうりし	cook
jinja	じんじや	shrine	dezainā	デザイナー	designer
kēsatsusho	けいさつしよ	police station	enjinia	エンジニア	engineer
kōban	こうばん	police box	haiyū	はいゆう	actor/actress
kūkō	くこう	airport	isha	いしや	doctor
kyōkai	きょうかい	church	kaishain	かいしやいん	office worker
mosuku	モスク	mosque	kangoshi	かngoし	nurse
(o)tera	(お)てら	temple	kashu	かしゆ	singer
pūru	プール	swimming pool	kēsatsukan	けいさつかん	policeman
shōbōsho	しょうぼうしよ	fire station	kōmuin	こうむいん	civil servant
taikukan	たいいくかん	gymnasium	kyōshi	きょうし	teacher
taishikan	たいしかん	embassy	sakka	さつか	author/writer
yūenchi	ゆうえんち	amusement park	sējika	せいじか	politician
			shufu	しゆふ	housewife
			ten'in	てんいん	shop assistant

## Sports

## supōtsu/スポーツ

badminton	バドミントン	badminton
barēbōru	バレーボール	volleyball
basukettobōru	バスケットボール	basketball
bodībiru	ボディビル	body-building
bokushingu	ボクシング	boxing
bōringu	ボウリング	bowling
gorufu	ゴルフ	golf
kakutōgi	かくとうぎ	martial arts
marason	マラソン	marathon
ragubī	ラグビー	rugby football
resuringu	レスリング	wrestling
sakkā	サッカー	football/soccer
suiē	すいえい	swimming
takkyū	たっきゅう	table tennis
yakyū	やきゅう	baseball

## Music and film

## ongaku to ēga/おんがくとえいが

jazu	ジャズ	jazz
kurashikku	クラシック	classical
myūjīkaru	ミュージカル	musical
opera	オペラ	opera
poppusu	ポップス	pop
rokku	ロック	rock and roll
akushon	アクション	action film
dokumentarī	ドキュメンタリー	documentary film
esuefu	SF	SF film
horā	ホラー	horror film
iyashi	いやし	soothing film
komedī	コメディ	comedy film
misuterī	ミステリー	mystery film
ren'ai	れんあい	romance film

# Appendix

## i-adjectives

	<i>non-past affirmative</i>	<i>non-past negative</i>	<i>past affirmative</i>	<i>past negative</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Unit</i>
<i>akai</i>	<b>akai desu</b>	<b>akakunai desu</b>	<b>akakatta desu</b>	<b>akakunakatta desu</b>	red	12
<i>akarui</i>	<b>akarui desu</b>	<b>akarukunai desu</b>	<b>akarukatta desu</b>	<b>akarukunakatta desu</b>	bright	11
<i>amai</i>	<b>amai desu</b>	<b>amakunai desu</b>	<b>amakatta desu</b>	<b>amakunakatta desu</b>	sweet	11
<i>atarashī</i>	<b>atarashī desu</b>	<b>atarashikunai desu</b>	<b>atarashikatta desu</b>	<b>atarashikunakatta desu</b>	new	5
<i>ataatakai</i>	<b>ataatakai desu</b>	<b>ataatakakunai desu</b>	<b>ataatakakatta desu</b>	<b>ataatakakunakatta desu</b>	warm	11
<i>atsui</i>	<b>atsui desu</b>	<b>atsukunai desu</b>	<b>atsukatta desu</b>	<b>atsukunakatta desu</b>	hot	5
<i>chikai</i>	<b>chikai desu</b>	<b>chikakunai desu</b>	<b>chikakatta desu</b>	<b>chikakunakatta desu</b>	near	11
<i>chīsai</i>	<b>chīsai desu</b>	<b>chīsakunai desu</b>	<b>chīsakatta desu</b>	<b>chīsakunakatta desu</b>	small	5
<i>furui</i>	<b>furui desu</b>	<b>furukunai desu</b>	<b>furukatta desu</b>	<b>furukunakatta desu</b>	old	5
<i>hayai</i>	<b>hayai desu</b>	<b>hayakunai desu</b>	<b>hayakatta desu</b>	<b>hayakunakatta desu</b>	fast	10
<i>hikui</i>	<b>hikui desu</b>	<b>hikukunai desu</b>	<b>hikukatta desu</b>	<b>hikukunakatta desu</b>	low	5
<i>hiroī</i>	<b>hiroī desu</b>	<b>hirokunai desu</b>	<b>hirokatta desu</b>	<b>hirokunakatta desu</b>	spacious	11
<i>hoshī</i>	<b>hoshī desu</b>	<b>hoshikunai desu</b>	<b>hoshikatta desu</b>	<b>hoshikunakatta desu</b>	want	10
<i>t̄/yoī</i>	<b>t̄/yoī desu</b>	<b>yokunai desu</b>	<b>yokatta desu</b>	<b>yokunakatta desu</b>	good	5
<i>isogashī</i>	<b>isogashī desu</b>	<b>isogashikunai desu</b>	<b>isogashikatta desu</b>	<b>isogashikunakatta desu</b>	busy	9
<i>itai</i>	<b>itai desu</b>	<b>itakunai desu</b>	<b>itakatta desu</b>	<b>itakunakatta desu</b>	painful	10
<i>karai</i>	<b>karai desu</b>	<b>karakunai desu</b>	<b>karakatta desu</b>	<b>karakunakatta desu</b>	spicy, hot	11
<i>karui</i>	<b>karui desu</b>	<b>karukunai desu</b>	<b>karukatta desu</b>	<b>karukunakatta desu</b>	light	11
<i>kawai</i>	<b>kawai desu</b>	<b>kawaiikunai desu</b>	<b>kawaiikatta desu</b>	<b>kawaiikunakatta desu</b>	pretty	10
<i>kowai</i>	<b>kowai desu</b>	<b>kowakunai desu</b>	<b>kowakatta desu</b>	<b>kowakunakatta desu</b>	scary	11
<i>kurai</i>	<b>kurai desu</b>	<b>kurakunai desu</b>	<b>kurakatta desu</b>	<b>kurakunakatta desu</b>	dark	11

## i-adjectives (cont'd)

<i>i</i> -adjective	non-past affirmative	non-past negative	past affirmative	past negative	English	Unit
<i>kuroi</i>	<i>kuroi desu</i>	<i>kurokunai desu</i>	<i>kurokatta desu</i>	<i>kurokunakatta desu</i>	black	12
<i>mazui</i>	<i>mazui desu</i>	<i>mazukunai desu</i>	<i>mazukatta desu</i>	<i>mazukunakatta desu</i>	tasteless	5
<i>muzukashī</i>	<i>muzukashī desu</i>	<i>muzukashikunai desu</i>	<i>muzukashikatta desu</i>	<i>muzukashikunakatta desu</i>	difficult	5
<i>ōi</i>	<i>ōi desu</i>	<i>ōkunai desu</i>	<i>ōkatta desu</i>	<i>ōkunakatta desu</i>	many	11
<i>oishī</i>	<i>oishī desu</i>	<i>oishikunai desu</i>	<i>oishikatta desu</i>	<i>oishikunakatta desu</i>	delicious	5
<i>ōkī</i>	<i>ōkī desu</i>	<i>ōkikunai desu</i>	<i>ōkikatta desu</i>	<i>ōkikunakatta desu</i>	big	5
<i>omoi</i>	<i>omoi desu</i>	<i>omokunai desu</i>	<i>omokatta desu</i>	<i>omokunakatta desu</i>	heavy	11
<i>omoshiroi</i>	<i>omoshiroi desu</i>	<i>omoshirokunai desu</i>	<i>omoshirokatta desu</i>	<i>omoshirokunakatta desu</i>	interesting	5
<i>osoi</i>	<i>osoi desu</i>	<i>osokunai desu</i>	<i>osokatta desu</i>	<i>osokunakatta desu</i>	slow, late	10
<i>samui</i>	<i>samui desu</i>	<i>samukunai desu</i>	<i>samukatta desu</i>	<i>samukunakatta desu</i>	cold (temperature)	5
<i>semai</i>	<i>semai desu</i>	<i>semakunai desu</i>	<i>semakatta desu</i>	<i>semakunakatta desu</i>	narrow	11
<i>shiroi</i>	<i>shiroi desu</i>	<i>shirokunai desu</i>	<i>shirokatta desu</i>	<i>shirokunakatta desu</i>	white	12
<i>sugoi</i>	<i>sugoi desu</i>	<i>sugokunai desu</i>	<i>sugokatta desu</i>	<i>sugokunakatta desu</i>	great	14
<i>sukunai</i>	<i>sukunai desu</i>	<i>sukunakunai desu</i>	<i>sukunakatta desu</i>	<i>sukunakunakatta desu</i>	few, a little	11
<i>takai</i>	<i>takai desu</i>	<i>takakunai desu</i>	<i>takakatta desu</i>	<i>takakunakatta desu</i>	expensive/high	5
<i>tanoshī</i>	<i>tanoshī desu</i>	<i>tanoshikunai desu</i>	<i>tanoshikatta desu</i>	<i>tanoshikunakatta desu</i>	enjoyable	5
<i>tōi</i>	<i>tōi desu</i>	<i>tōkunai desu</i>	<i>tōkatta desu</i>	<i>tōkunakatta desu</i>	far	6
<i>tsumaranai</i>	<i>tsumaranai desu</i>	<i>tsumaranakunai desu</i>	<i>tsumaranakatta desu</i>	<i>tsumaranakunakatta desu</i>	boring	5
<i>tsumetai</i>	<i>tsumetai desu</i>	<i>tsumetakunai desu</i>	<i>tsumetakatta desu</i>	<i>tsumetakunakatta desu</i>	cold (touch)	5
<i>ureshī</i>	<i>ureshī desu</i>	<i>ureshikunai desu</i>	<i>ureshikatta desu</i>	<i>ureshikunakatta desu</i>	happy	9
<i>urusai</i>	<i>urusai desu</i>	<i>urusakunai desu</i>	<i>urusakatta desu</i>	<i>urusakunakatta desu</i>	noisy	11
<i>utsukushī</i>	<i>utsukushī desu</i>	<i>utsukushikunai desu</i>	<i>utsukushikatta desu</i>	<i>utsukushikunakatta desu</i>	beautiful	11
<i>wakai</i>	<i>wakai desu</i>	<i>wakakunai desu</i>	<i>wakakatta desu</i>	<i>wakakunakatta desu</i>	young	12
<i>warui</i>	<i>warui desu</i>	<i>warukunai desu</i>	<i>warukatta desu</i>	<i>warukunakatta desu</i>	bad	5
<i>yasashī</i>	<i>yasashī desu</i>	<i>yasashikunai desu</i>	<i>yasashikatta desu</i>	<i>yasashikunakatta desu</i>	easy	5
<i>yasui</i>	<i>yasui desu</i>	<i>yasukunai desu</i>	<i>yasukatta desu</i>	<i>yasukunakatta desu</i>	cheap	5
<i>yawarakai</i>	<i>yawarakai desu</i>	<i>yawarakunai desu</i>	<i>yawarakatta desu</i>	<i>yawarakunakatta desu</i>	soft	11



## na-adjectives

<i>na</i> -adjective	non-past affirmative	non-past negative	past affirmative	past negative	English	Unit
<i>anzen</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>anzen desu</b>	<b>anzen dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>anzen deshita</b>	<b>anzen dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	safe	11
<i>benri</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>benri desu</b>	<b>benri dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>benri deshita</b>	<b>benri dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	convenient	5
<i>daijōbu</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>daijōbu desu</b>	<b>daijōbu dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>daijōbu deshita</b>	<b>daijōbu dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	all right, OK	10
<i>daisuki</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>daisuki desu</b>	<b>daisuki dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>daisuki deshita</b>	<b>daisuki dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	like very much	5
<i>fuben</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>fuben desu</b>	<b>fuben dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>fuben deshita</b>	<b>fuben dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	inconvenient	5
<i>genki</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>genki desu</b>	<b>genki dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>genki deshita</b>	<b>genki dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	vigorous, active	5
<i>hade</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>hade desu</b>	<b>hade dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>hade deshita</b>	<b>hade dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	showy, gaudy	12
<i>heta</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>heta desu</b>	<b>heta dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>heta deshita</b>	<b>heta dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	poor at	5
<i>hima</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>hima desu</b>	<b>hima dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>hima deshita</b>	<b>hima dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	free (time)	5
<i>iroiro</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>iroiro desu</b>	<b>iroiro dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>iroiro deshita</b>	<b>iroiro dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	various	8
<i>jiyū</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>jiyū desu</b>	<b>jiyū dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>jiyū deshita</b>	<b>jiyū dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	free (freedom)	11
<i>jōzu</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>jōzu desu</b>	<b>jōzu dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>jōzu deshita</b>	<b>jōzu dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	good at	5
<i>kantan</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>kantan desu</b>	<b>kantan dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>kantan deshita</b>	<b>kantan dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	easy (for, to/of)	15
<i>kenkō</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>kenkō desu</b>	<b>kenkō dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>kenkō deshita</b>	<b>kenkō dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	healthy	11
<i>kirai</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>kirai desu</b>	<b>kirai dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>kirai deshita</b>	<b>kirai dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	dislike	5
<i>kirē</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>kirē desu</b>	<b>kirē dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>kirē deshita</b>	<b>kirē dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	beautiful/clean	5
<i>nigiyaka</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>nigiyaka desu</b>	<b>nigiyaka dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>nigiyaka deshita</b>	<b>nigiyaka dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	lively	5
<i>shinsetsu</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>shinsetsu desu</b>	<b>shinsetsu dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>shinsetsu deshita</b>	<b>shinsetsu dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	kind	5
<i>shizuka</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>shizuka desu</b>	<b>shizuka dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>shizuka deshita</b>	<b>shizuka dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	quiet	5
<i>suki</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>suki desu</b>	<b>suki dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>suki deshita</b>	<b>suki dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	like	5
<i>suteki</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>suteki desu</b>	<b>suteki dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>suteki deshita</b>	<b>suteki dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	wonderful	12
<i>tanoshimi</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>tanoshimi desu</b>	<b>tanoshimi dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>tanoshimi deshita</b>	<b>tanoshimi dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	look forward to	5
<i>yūmē</i> ( <i>na</i> )	<b>yūmē desu</b>	<b>yūmē dewa/ja arimasen</b>	<b>yūmē deshita</b>	<b>yūmē dewa/ja arimasen deshita</b>	famous	5

## Verb conjugation: Group 1 verbs

<i>masu</i> -form	dictionary form	<i>te</i> -form	<i>ta</i> -form	<i>nai</i> -form	English	Unit
aimasu	au	atte	atta	awanai	to meet	9
araimasu	arau	aratte	aratta	arawanai	to wash	16
arimasu	aru	atte	atta	* <b>nai</b>	to be/there's something (exist)	8
arimasu	aru	atte	atta	* <b>nai</b>	to have/own	10
asobimasu	asobu	asonde	asonda	asobanai	to play	13
ganbarimasu	ganbaru	ganbatte	ganbatta	ganbaranai	to do (try) one's best	13
hairimasu	hairu	haitte	haitta	hairanai	to enter	9
hakimasu	haku	haite	kaita	hakanai	to wear (shoes, trousers, etc.)	13
hanashimasu	hanasu	hanashite	hanashita	hanasanai	to talk/speak	9
haraimasu	harau	haratte	haratta	harawanai	to pay	13
hashirimasu	hashiru	hashitte	hashitta	hashiranai	to run	9
hatarakimasu	hataraku	hataraitte	hataraita	hatarakanai	to work	14
hikimasu	hiku	hīte	hīta	hikanai	to play (keyboard and stringed instruments)	16
ikimasu	iku	itte	itta	ikanai	to go	6
isogimasu	isogu	isoide	isoida	isoganai	to hurry	10
kaburimasu	kaburu	kabutte	kabutta	kaburanai	to wear (hat, cap, etc.)	15
kaerimasu	kaeru	kaette	kaetta	kaeranai	to go back/return	6
kaimasu	kau	katte	katta	kawanai	to buy	7

An explanation of how to make the **nai**-form and its usages can be found in the additional chapters which are downloadable at [www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/](http://www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415593304/)

## Verb conjugation: Group 1 verbs (cont'd)

<i>masu-form</i>	<i>dictionary form</i>	<i>te-form</i>	<i>ta-form</i>	<i>nai-form</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Unit</i>
kakarimasu	kakaru	kakatte	kakatta	kakaranai	to take (time, cost)	6
kakimasu	kaku	kaite	kaita	kakanai	to write	7
kikimasu	kiku	kīte	kīta	kikanai	to listen (to), hear	7
kirimasu	kiru	kitte	kitta	kiranai	to cut	16
machimasu	matsu	matte	matta	matanai	to wait	13
magarimasu	magaru	magatte	magatta	magaranai	to turn	14
migakimasu	migaku	migaite	migaita	migakanai	to polish/brush	14
mochimasu	motsu	motte	motta	motanai	to have/own/hold	14
moraimasu	morau	moratte	moratta	morawanai	to receive	10
motte ikimasu	motte iku	motte itte	motte itta	motte ikanai	to take (something to somewhere)	13
narimasu	naruru	natte	natta	naranai	to become	11
noborimasu	noboru	nobotte	nobotta	noboranai	to climb	14
nomimasu	nomu	nonde	nonda	nomanai	to drink	7
norimasu	noru	notte	notta	noranai	to get on/ride	14
odorimasu	odoru	odotte	odotta	odoranai	to dance	15
okimasu	oku	oite	oita	okanai	to put (something)	13
okurimasu	okuru	okutte	okutta	okuranai	to send (e.g. an email)	13
omoidashimasu	omoidasu	omoidashite	omoidashita	omoidasanai	to recall, remember	13
oyogimasu	oyogu	oyoide	oyoida	oyoganai	to swim	15
shirimasu	shiru	shitte	shitta	shiranai	to get to know	14
sumimasu	sumu	sunde	sunda	sumanai	to live	14
suwarimasu	suwaru	suwatte	suwatta	suwaranai	to sit down	14
tabako o suimasu	tabako o sū	tabako o sutte	tabako o sutta	tabako o suwanai	to smoke a cigarette	13
tachimasu	tatsu	tatte	tatta	tatanai	to stand up	14

## Verb conjugation: Group 1 verbs (cont'd)

<i>masu-form</i>	<i>dictionary form</i>	<i>te-form</i>	<i>ta-form</i>	<i>nai-form</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Unit</i>
tomarimasu	tomaru	tomatte	tomatta	tomaranai	to stay overnight	9
torimasu	toru	totte	totta	toranai	to take (a photo)	9
tsukurimasu	tsukuru	tsukutte	tsukutta	tsukuranai	to make, cook	15
tsurete ikimasu	tsurete iku	tsurete itte	tsurete itta	tsurete ikanai	to take (someone to somewhere)	13
utaimasu	utau	utatte	utatta	utawanai	to sing	11
watarimasu	wataru	watatte	watatta	wataranai	to cross	14
yasumimasu	yasumu	yasunde	yasunda	yasumanai	to rest	9
yobimasu	yobu	yonde	yonda	yobanai	to call (e.g. a taxi)	13
yomimasu	yomu	yonde	yonda	yomanai	to read	7

## Verb conjugation: Group 2 verbs

<i>masu-form</i>	<i>dictionary form</i>	<i>te-form</i>	<i>ta-form</i>	<i>nai-form</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Unit</i>
abimasu	abiru	abite	abita	abinai	to take	14
agemasu	ageru	agete	ageta	agenai	to give	11
akemasu	akeru	akete	aketa	akenai	to open (transitive verb)	13
atsumemasu	atsumeru	atsumete	atsumeta	atsumenai	to collect	16
dekimasu	dekiru	dekite	dekita	dekinai	can (do)	16
demasu	deru	dete	deta	denai	to leave/get out	14
denwa o kakemasu	denwa o kakeru	denwa o kakete	denwa o kaketa	denwa o kakenai	to make a phone call	15

Verb conjugation: Group 2 verbs (*cont'd*)

<i>masu-form</i>	<i>dictionary form</i>	<i>te-form</i>	<i>ta-form</i>	<i>nai-form</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Unit</i>
imasu	iru	ite	ita	inai	to be/there is someone (exist)	8
iremasu	ireru	irete	ireta	irenai	to put (something) in	14
kaemasu	kaeru	kaete	kaeta	kaenai	to change	9
kakemasu	kakeru	kakete	kaketa	kakenai	to wear (glasses)	15
karimasu	kariru	karite	karita	karinai	to borrow	13
ki o tsukemasu	ki o tsukeru	ki o tsukete	ki o tsuketa	ki o tsukenai	to be careful	13
kimasu	kiru	kite	kita	kinai	to wear (clothes)	15
mimasu	miru	mite	mita	minai	to watch/see	7
misemasu	miseru	misete	miseta	misenai	to show	13
motte imasu	motte iru	motte ite	motte ita	motte inai	to own, possess	14
nemasu	neru	nete	neta	nenai	to go to bed/sleep	7
norikaemasu	norikaeru	norikaete	norikaeta	norikaenai	to change/transfer	14
oboemasu	oboeru	oboete	oboeta	oboenai	to remember, memorize	13
okimasu	okiru	okite	okita	okinai	to wake up. get up	7
orimasu	oriru	orite	orita	orinai	to get off	13
oshiemasu	oshieru	oshiete	oshieta	oshienai	to teach, tell	13
shimemasu	shimeru	shimete	shimeta	shimenai	to close, to shut	13
shirabemasu	shiraberu	shirabete	shirabeta	shirabenai	to investigate/examine/ check/study	16
tabemasu	taberu	tabete	tabeta	tabenai	to eat	7
tasukemasu	tasukeru	tasukete	tasuketa	tasukenai	to help/rescue	13
tatemasu	tateru	tatete	tateta	tatenai	to build	16
todokemasu	todokeru	todokete	todoketa	todokenai	to deliver	13
tomemasu	tomeru	tomete	tometa	tomenai	to pull up (a car)/stop	13
tsukemasu	tsukeru	tsukete	tsuketa	tsukenai	to turn on/switch on	16

<i>masu-form</i>	<i>dictionary form</i>	<i>te-form</i>	<i>ta-form</i>	<i>nai-form</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Unit</i>
kimasu	kuru	kite	kita	konai	to come	6
shimasu	suru	shite	shita	shinai	to do	7
benkyō shimasu	benkyō suru	benkyō shite	benkyō shita	benkyō shinai	to study	7
chūmon shimasu	chūmon suru	chūmon shite	chūmon shita	chūmon shinai	to order	9
jogingu shimasu	jogingu suru	jogingu shite	jogingu shita	jogingu shinai	to jog	14
kaimono shimasu	kaimono suru	kaimono shite	kaimono shita	kaimono shinai	to go shopping	7
kankō shimasu	kankō suru	kankō shite	kankō shita	kankō shinai	to go sightseeing	9
kekkon shimasu	kekkon suru	kekkon shite	kekkon shita	kekkon shinai	to get married	14
kurikku shimasu	kurikku suru	kurikku shite	kurikku shita	kurikku shinai	to click	13
kyanseru shimasu	kyanseru suru	kyanseru shite	kyanseru shita	kyanseru shinai	to cancel	9
motte kimasu	motte kuru	motte kite	motte kita	motte konai	to bring (something to somewhere)	13
ryōri shimasu	ryōri suru	ryōri shite	ryōri shita	ryōri shinai	to cook	7
sanpo shimasu	sanpo suru	sanpo shite	sanpo shita	sanpo shinai	to go for a walk	11
sentaku shimasu	sentaku suru	sentaku shite	sentaku shita	sentaku shinai	to wash (clothes)	14
shigoto shimasu	shigoto suru	shigoto shite	shigoto shita	shigoto shinai	to work	7
shokuji shimasu	shokuji suru	shokuji shite	shokuji shita	shokuji shinai	to have a meal	14
sōji shimasu	sōji suru	sōji shite	sōji shita	sōji shinai	to clean (a room, house, park, etc.)	14
sotsugyō shimasu	sotsugyō suru	sotsugyō shite	sotsugyō shita	sotsugyō shinai	to graduate	15
tsuretekimasu	tsuretekuru	tsuretekite	tsuretekita	tsuretekonai	to bring (someone to somewhere)	13
undō shimasu	undō suru	undō shite	undō shita	undō shinai	to exercise	9
unten shimasu	unten suru	unten shite	unten shita	unten shinai	to drive	7
urusaku shimasu	urusaku suru	urusaku shite	urusaku shita	urusaku shinai	to make noise	13
yoyaku shimasu	yoyaku suru	yoyaku shite	yoyaku shita	yoyaku shinai	to reserve/book	9

# Key to exercises

## Unit 1

### Exercise 1

1 (*Watashi wa*) Ijirisu-jin desu. 2 *Watashi wa* gakusē desu.  
3 *Watashi wa* kaishain desu. 4 *Watashi wa* Nihon-jin dewa arimasen.  
(*Watashi wa*) Chūgoku-jin desu.

### Exercise 2

1 e.g. Tanaka Tokiko 2 e.g. Nihon 3 e.g. gakusē 4 e.g. yoroshiku  
(onagai shimasu)

### Exercise 3

1 *watashi no namae* 2 *anata no (o)shigoto* 3 *Sasaki-san no (o)shigoto*  
4 *sensē no (o)namae*

### Exercise 4

1 *Yamada-san wa* kaishain desu ka. 2 *Sasaki-san no (o)shigoto wa*  
*nan desu ka.* 3 *(o)namae wa nan desu ka.* 4 *Teirā-san no sensē wa*  
*Nihon-jin desu ka.*

### Exercise 5

1 e.g. *Watashi (no namae) wa* Tanaka Masae desu. 2 e.g. *Watashi wa*  
*Nihon-jin desu.* 3 e.g. *Watashi (no shigoto) wa* kaishain desu.

### Exercise 6

1 a 2 b 3 b

### Exercise 7

1 e.g. *Watashi no denwa-bangō wa* 012-345-6789 desu. 2 Hai,  
*sō desu. / Hai, Howaito-san no denwa-bangō wa* 784-0394 desu.  
3 *Katō-san no denwa-bangō wa* 021-6658 desu.

## Exercise 8

1 ✗ 2 ✓ 3 ✗

## Exercise 9

2 a i 3 i ke 4 u e 5 a go 6 ka o 7 ki i (ro) 8 o ka (ne) 9 ko (mu) gi ko

**Unit 2**

## Exercise 1

1 32 2 14 3 17 4 85 5 60 6 99

## Exercise 2

1 e.g. Watashi wa nijūhas-sai desu. 2 e.g. Watashi no haha wa gojū-roku-sai desu. 3 e.g. Watashi no otōto wa nijū-go-sai desu.

## Exercise 3

1 Satoshi-san no otōsan wa nan-sai desu ka. (59) 2 Satoshi-san no okāsan wa nan-sai desu ka. (56) 3 Satoshi-san no onēsan wa nan-sai desu ka. (30) 4 Satoshi-san no otōtosan wa nan-sai desu ka. (25)

## Exercise 4

1 e.g. Watashi no tanjōbi wa jūni-gatsu jūsan-nichi desu. 2 e.g. Watashi no haha/chichi no tanjōbi wa ni-gatsu yokka desu. 3 Jon-san no imōtosan no tanjōbi wa jūni-gatsu nijūku-nichi desu. 4 Jon-san no otōsan no tanjōbi wa jūichi-gatsu tōka desu. 5 Īe, sō dewa arimasen. (Jon-san no onīsan no tanjōbi wa) shi-gatsu jūhachi-nichi desu.

## Exercise 5

1 21st July 2 10th April

## Exercise 6

1 ✓ 2 ✗ 3 ✓ 4 ✗ 5 ✓



## Exercise 7

1 kotoshi 2 ashita 3 moku-yōbi 4 kinō

## Exercise 8

1 ✕ 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 ✕

## Exercise 9

1 su shi 2 sa shi (mi) 3 to (mo) da chi 4 a shi ta 5 chi zu 6 su i e i  
7 chi ka te tsu 8 ka ze 9 so u de su ka

**Unit 3**

## Exercise 1

1 koko 2 soko, Asoko 3 doko 4 achira 5 dochira

## Exercise 2

1 Ueda-san wa byōin desu. 2 Kimura-san wa eki desu. 3 Otearai wa asoko desu.

## Exercise 3

1 konbini 2 depāto

## Exercise 4

1 ichi-ji nijup-pun 2 yo-ji sanjūgo-fun 3 hachi-ji gojup-pun 4 roku-ji han 5 gogo ni-ji yonjup-pun/gogo san-ji nijup-pun mae 6 gozen ku-ji go-fun 7 gogo jūichi-ji jūgo-fun 8 gogo go-ji gojūgo-fun/gogo roku-ji go-fun mae

## Exercise 5

1 3:30 2 10:25 3 4:00 a.m. 4 5:50 p.m.

## Exercise 6

1 Chūgoku wa ima gozen 7-ji 50-pun (shichi-ji gojup-pun) desu.  
2 Nihon wa ima gogo 8-ji 25-fun (hachi-ji nijūgo-fun) desu. 3 Amerika

wa ima gozen 6-ji 10-pun (roku-ji jup-pun) desu. 4 Ōsutoraria wa ima gogo 3-ji (san-ji) desu. 5 Indo wa ima gozen 5-ji 40-pun (go-ji yonjup-pun) desu./Indo wa ima gozen 6-ji 20-pun (roku-ji nijup-pun) mae desu.

### Exercise 7

1 (Café in the hotel) 6:00 a.m. – 9:00 p.m. 2 (Sakura library) 9:30 a.m. – 6:30 p.m. 3 (Sakura supermarket) 8:00 a.m. – 11:30 p.m.

### Exercise 8

1 doko 2 itsu 3 nan-ji 4 nani-jin 5 nan-ji 6 nan-sai

### Exercise 9

1 na ni 2 ha ne 3 ni ku 4 ne ko 5 hi no de 6 ho u se ki 7 se i fu ku  
8 bo u shi 9 he bi

## Unit 4

### Exercise 1

1 Kore wa watashi no saifu desu. 2 Are wa Jōnzu-san no Nihon (or Nihon-go) no hon desu. 3 Anata no jisho wa dochira desu ka. 4 Are wa nan desu ka. 5 Kore wa watashi no kasa dewa arimasen.

### Exercise 2

1 Ano 2 Sore 3 dono 4 Kore

### Exercise 3

1 (*Kore*) wa dare no jūsu desu ka. 2 Sono hito wa dare desu ka.  
3 Ano jisho wa watashi no desu.

### Exercise 4

1 denchi [a] Sumisu-san 2 megane [d] Honda-san 3 tokē  
[b] Yamamoto-san

## Exercise 5

1 hyaku gojū kyū 2 sanbyaku hachijū ni 3 nanahyaku kyūjū 4 sen  
 roppyaku gojū yon 5 sanzen nanahyaku nijū go 6 kyūman hassen  
 kyūhyaku

## Exercise 6

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| 1 YOU      | Sumimasen. Kono kaban wa ikura desu ka.       |
| SHOP CLERK | Sono kaban wa niman nisen kyūhyaku-en desu.   |
| YOU        | Sō desu ka. Jā, kono kaban o kudasai.         |
| 2 YOU      | Sumimasen. Sono kētai denwa wa ikura desu ka. |
| SHOP CLERK | Kono kētai denwa wa sanman gosen-en desu.     |
| YOU        | Sō desu ka. Jā, sore o kudasai.               |

## Exercise 7

1 nan 2 dore 3 dare 4 doko no 5 dochira 6 doko 7 ikura

## Exercise 8

1 Personal computer 2 Mr/Mrs/Miss Kimura 3 120,000 yen 4 Mr/Mrs/  
 Miss Johnson's mobile phone 5 UK 6 27,000 yen

## Exercise 9

1 mo ya shi 2 yu mi 3 wa ni 4 wa ta shi 5 yo zo ra 6 ya ma 7 mu ka  
 shi 8 yu u me i 9 ho u re n so u 10 wa ta shi wa ni ho n go no ga  
 ku se i de su

**Unit 5**

## Exercise 1

1 na 2 i 3 i 4 na 5 i 6 i 7 na 8 na 9 na 10 i 11 na 12 i

## Exercise 2

1 atarashikunai desu 2 atarashikatta desu 3 atarashikunakatta desu  
 4 takakunai desu 5 takakatta desu 6 takakunakatta desu 7 samukunai  
 desu 8 samukatta desu 9 samukunakatta desu 10 hima dewa arimasen

11 hima deshita 12 hima dewa arimasendeshita 13 genki dewa arimasen 14 genki deshita 15 genki dewa arimasendeshita 16 benri dewa arimasen 17 benri deshita 18 benri dewa arimasendeshita

### Exercise 3

1 samukatta desu 2 yokunai desu 3 yasukunai desu 4 nigiyaka deshita 5 takakunakatta desu

### Exercise 4

1 Īe, (kinō no tenki wa) zenzen yokunakatta desu. 2 Hiragana wa amari muzukashikunai desu. 3 Nihon no tabemono wa chotto takai desu.

### Exercise 5

1 a 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b

### Exercise 6

1 Karen-san wa ongaku ga suki desu. 2 Karen-san wa terebi ga kirai desu. 3 Karen-san wa piano ga jōzu desu. 4 Karen-san wa supōtsu ga heta desu.

### Exercise 7

1 Tarō likes Friday but dislikes Saturday. 2 Mariko is good at English but poor at French.

### Exercise 8

1 ✓ 2 ✗ 3 ✗

### Exercise 9

1 ka shu 2 kyo u 3 sha cho u 4 gyū u nyū u 5 kyo u ka sho 6 chu u sha jo u

## Unit 6

### Exercise 1

1 kimashita 2 ikimasendeshita 3 kaerimashita 4 kimasu 5 kimasen 6 kaerimasu

## Exercise 2

1 Watashi wa maitoshi Nihon e ikimasu. 2 Watashi no tomodachi wa kinō (watashi no) uchi e kimasendeshita. 3 Suzuki-san wa (konshū no) shūmatsu, hakubutsukan e ikimasu. 4 Akita-san wa mainichi gakkō e ikimasu ka.

## Exercise 3

1 a) New York (USA) b) Spring next year 2 a) London, Birmingham and Oxford (UK) b) Summer this year

## Exercise 4

1 Densha de ikimasu. 2 Tomodachi to ikimasu. 3 Natsu-yasumi ikimasu. 4 Hikōki de ikimasu. 5 Kazoku to ikimasu.

## Exercise 5

1 I went to the post office on my own on foot yesterday. 2 Mr Tanaka goes to school with friends by train every day.

## Exercise 6

1 doko 2 dare 3 itsu 4 nani 5 donokurai

## Exercise 7

1 to (or no) 2 to, de 3 de 4 × 5 to, e

## Exercise 8

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 a

# Unit 7

## Exercise 1

1 yomimasu, kakimasu 2 nomimasu, kaimasu 3 yomimasu, kakimasu 4 kikimasu, kaimasu 5 kaimasu, unten shimasu 6 yomimasu, kikimasu, kakimasu, benkyō shimasu

## Exercise 2

1 Yamada-san wa ashita terebi o mimasu. 2 Yamada-san wa ashita gozen 9-ji kara gogo 5-ji made shigoto shimasu. 3 Yamada-san wa ashita tomodachi to hiru-gohan o tabemasu. 4 Yamada-san wa ashita ongaku o kikimasu. 5 Yamada-san wa ashita gogo 10-ji han ni nemasu.

## Exercise 3

1 ✗ 2 ✗ 3 ✓

## Exercise 4

1 hashi 2 Watashi wa te de hanbāgā o tabemasu. 3 Shinkansen wa ēgo de “bullet train/super express” desu. 4 “Family” wa Nihon-go de “kazoku” desu.

## Exercise 5

1 Watashi wa kissaten de kōhī o nomimasu. 2 Pākā-san wa uchi de terebi o mimasen. 3 Anata wa doko de kaimono shimasu ka.

## Exercise 6

1 de 2 a ✗ b o 3 de 4 ni 5 mo

## Exercise 7

1 last month 2 ate Japanese ramen noodle soup 3 bought (a) beautiful (pair of) chopsticks 4 Japanese (language)

## Exercise 8

1 a i su 2 ko i 3 ka ki 4 su i ka 5 ki u i 6 ku i zu 7 a sa ga o 8 ji gu za gu

**Unit 8**

## Exercise 1

1 a 2 b 3 a 4 b

## Exercise 2

1 Resutoran, onna no hito, imasu 2 niwa, ga 3 Daidokoro, daremo  
4 Genkan, nani, ka

## Exercise 3

1 go-ko 2 yo-nin 3 ip-pon 4 ni-mai 5 yon-dai 6 nana-hon

## Exercise 4

1 Kyōto no chizu o 3-mai (san-mai) kudasai. 2 Watashi wa mainichi  
Nihon-go o 2-jikan (ni-jikan) benkyō shimasu. 3 Watashi no uchi ni  
otoko no hito ga 3-nin (san-nin) imasu.

## Exercise 5

1 4tsu (yottsu) 2 5-nin (go-nin) 3 2-dai (ni-dai) 4 8-pon (hap-pon)

## Exercise 6

1 (Hito) no ushiro ni otoko no ko ga futari imasu. 2 (Kaban) no naka  
ni kētai denwa ga ichi-dai arimasu. 3 (Biru) no tonari ni ōkī uchi ga  
arimasu.

## Exercise 7

1 (Watashi wa) eki no naka ni imasu. 2 (Hon-ya wa) ginkō no hidari  
ni arimasu. 3 (Kōen wa) konbini to hoteru no aida ni arimasu. 4 (Takushī  
noriba wa) toshokan no chikaku ni arimasu.

## Exercise 8

1 ✓ 2 ✗ 3 ✓

## Exercise 9

1 i nu 2 ne ko 3 do i tsu 4 te ni su 5 po te to 6 ka na da 7 ne ku ta i  
8 pi a ni su to

## Unit 9

### Dialogue 1 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✗

### Exercise 1

1 Hai, mō (kippu o) kaimashita. 2 Īe, mada desu. 3 Īe, mada desu.

### Exercise 2

1 yasumitai desu 2 yasumitakunai desu 3 yasumitakunakatta desu  
4 (shashin o) torimasu 5 toritakunai desu 6 toritakatta desu 7 hairimasu  
8 hairitai desu 9 hairitakatta desu 10 hairitakunakatta desu

### Exercise 3

1 Watashi wa tomodachi to hanashitai desu. 2 Watashi wa kazoku ni aitai desu. 3 Watashi wa kōen de undō shitai desu.

### Dialogue 2 exercise

1 ✗ 2 ✓

### Exercise 4

1 Watashi wa asa (ni) toshokan e hon o yomi ni ikimasu. 2 Watashi wa hiru (ni) kōen e hashiri ni ikimasu. 3 Watashi wa ban/yoru (ni) ēgakan e ēga o mi ni ikimasu.

### Dialogue 3 exercise

1 ✗ 2 ✓

### Exercise 5

1 Masako-san, watashi no uchi de issho ni DVD o mimasen ka.  
2 Masako-san, raigetsu issho ni onsen e ikimasen ka. 3 Masako-san, maiasa issho ni hashirimasen ka.

### Exercise 6

1 d 2 e



## Exercise 7

- 1 Because this person wants to see Yuki matsuri (the snow festival).  
2 Yuki matsuri is a very famous snow festival in Hokkaido. 3 She wants to take a lot of photos of Yuki matsuri and eat delicious food.

## Exercise 8

- 1 wa i n 2 me da ru 3 a me ri ka 4 ro n do n 5 pa so ko n 6 ra i o n  
7 de ji ta ru ka me ra 8 re su to ra n

**Unit 10**

## Dialogue 1 exercise

1 ✗ 2 ✓

## Exercise 1

- 1 Watashi wa tanjōbi ni Nihon-go no jisho ga hoshī desu. 2 Watashi wa hayai kuruma ga hoshī desu. 3 Watashi wa (kekkon iwai ni) kawai shashin tate ga hoshī desu.

## Exercise 2

- 1 Watashi wa kinō no ban/yoru byōki deshita kara. 2 Watashi wa furui (o)tera ga/o mitai desu kara. 3 Watashi no kazoku wa Rondon ni imasu kara.

## Dialogue 2 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✗

## Exercise 3

1 d 2 a 3 e 4 c

## Dialogue 3 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✗

## Exercise 4

1 a 2 b 3 b, c 4 a

## Exercise 5

1 b 2 e 3 a

## Exercise 6

1 ga 2 kara 3 ni 4 de 5 a) ga b) ✗

## Exercise 7

1 ✓ 2 ✗

## Exercise 8

A) 1 e 2 a 3 f 4 c 5 b B) 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 d

**Unit 11**

## Dialogue 1 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✗

## Exercise 1

1 b 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a

## Exercise 2

1 chikakute 2 chikakunakute 3 yokute 4 yokunakute 5 suki de 6 suki dewanakute 7 kenkō de 8 kenkō dewanakute 9 kaisha de 10 kaisha dewanakute

## Exercise 3

1 omoshirokute 2 yokute 3 nigiyaka de 4 jōzu de 5 watashi no tokē de

## Dialogue 2 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✕

## Exercise 4

1 samuku 2 suki ni 3 25-sai (nijū go-sai) ni 4 hima ni

## Exercise 5

1 hayaku 2 jōzu ni 3 osoku 4 jiyū ni

## Exercise 6

1 ✓ 2 ✕

## Exercise 7

1 K 2 O 3 O 4 K 5 K 6 O 7 K 8 O

## Exercise 8

1 ひゃくえん 2 さんじゅう きゅう 3 せんよんひゃく ごじゅう えん  
 4 じゅうなな 5 いちまん はっせん えん 6 にじゅうまん えん  
 7 ろっぴゃく にじゅう えん 8 ひと(つ) 9 ふた(つ) 10 やっ(つ)

**Unit 12**

## Dialogue 1 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✕

## Exercise 1

1 (kami) nagai desu. 2 (me) kuroi desu. 3 (te) chīsai desu. 4 (atama)  
 ī desu.

## Exercise 2

1 Nihon wa Fujisan ga yūmē desu. 2 Kyōto wa furui (o)tera ga ōi desu.  
 3 Nihon (no tabemono) wa (o)sushi ga oishī desu. 4 e.g. Watashi no  
 kuni wa Rondon ai (London Eye) ga yūmē desu.

## Exercise 3

1 Ichi-nen no naka de 8-gatsu (hachi-gatsu) ga ichi-ban atsui desu.  
 2 Is-shūkan no naka de sui-yōbi ga ichi-ban isogashī desu. 3 Supein-go  
 to Nihon-go to Furansu-go no naka de Furansu-go ga ichi-ban jōzu desu.

## Dialogue 2 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✗

## Exercise 4

1 a 2 a 3 b 4 a

## Exercise 5

1 Getsu-yōbi no hō ga hima desu. 2 katakana no hō ga muzukashī  
 desu. 3 (Umi mo yama mo) dochira mo suki desu.

## Exercise 6

1 c 2 b 3 a

## Exercise 7

1 a. de b. ga 2 yori 3 a. wa b. ga 4 a. to b. to c. ga d. ga 5 a. to  
 b. to c. ga d. mo

## Exercise 8

1 おんな、ひと、くち 2 さん、やま 3 ちい 4 うえ、した  
 5 ひと、じん、じん 6 ひとり、おお 7 かわ

**Unit 13**

## Dialogue 1 exercise

1 ✗ 2 ✓

## Exercise 1

1 [2] 2 [1] 3 [1] 4 [3] 5 [1] 6 [3] 7 [3] 8 [2]

## Exercise 2

1 あそんで (asonde) 2 つれてきて (tsurete kite) 3 行って (itte) 4 がんばって (ganbatte) 5 おぼえて (oboete) 6 みせて (misete) 7 もって行って (motte itte) 8 いそいで (isoide) 9 おくって (okutte) 10 クリックして (kurikku shite)

## Exercise 3

1 kaite kudasai (please write) かいてください 2 kyanseru shite kudasai (please cancel) キャンセルしてください 3 ki o tsukete kudasai (please be careful) きをつけてください 4 oshiete kudasai (please teach/tell) おしえてください 5 okite kudasai おきてください 6 oite kudasai おいてください

## Exercise 4

1 a 2 b

## Exercise 5

1 Sumimasen ga, (o)hashi no tsukaikata o oshiete kudasai. 2 Sumimasen ga, Fuji hoteru no ikikata o oshiete kudasai.

## Dialogue 2 exercise

1 × 2 ✓

## Exercise 6

1 (Kurejitto) Kādo de haratte mo ī desu ka. 2 Kono pen o tsukatte mo ī desu ka. 3 Koko de (o)sake o nonde wa ikemasen.

## Exercise 7

1 a 2 d 3 b

## Exercise 8

Hikōki (no naka)/In an aeroplane

## Exercise 9

1 きょう、か(よう)び、げつ(よう)び 2 すこ、みず 3 き、した、とも(だち) 4 ど(よう)び 5 わ 6 にほん、いま、ふん 7 こんげつ

## Unit 14

### Dialogue 1 exercise

1 ✕ 2 ✓

### Exercise 1

1 f 2 b

### Exercise 2

1 Watashi wa kinō toshokan e itte, hon o karimashita. 2 Watashi wa kyō 7-ji (shichi-ji) ni okite, shawā o abite, terebi o mimashita. 3 Watashi wa rainen Nihon e itte, Fujisan ni noboritai desu.

### Exercise 3

1 Watashi wa shokuji shite kara, shawā o abimasu. 2 Watashi wa heya o sōji shite kara, yasumimashita. 3 Watashi wa Nihon ni tsuite kara, Mori-san ni denwa shimashita.

### Dialogue 2 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✕

### Exercise 4

1 ha o migaite imasu. 2 mēru o kaite imasu. 3 shigoto shite imashita. 4 shawā o abite imashita.

### Exercise 5

1 Mori-san wa kuruma no naka ni suwatte imasu. 2 Okada-san wa pasokon o 2-dai (ni-dai) motte imasu. 3 Takeda-san wa kekkon shite imasu. 4 Watashi wa kono uta o shirimasen ga, sono uta wa shitte imasu.

### Dialogue 3 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✕

## Exercise 6

1 Kimu-san wa mainichi Nihon no ongaku o kīte imasu. 2 Kimu-san wa mainichi (Nihon no) kotoba o oboete imasu. 3 Kimu-san wa mainichi Nihon no terebi o mite imasu. 4 Kimu-san wa mainichi (ichi-ban) sukina Nihon no uta o utatte imasu.

## Exercise 7

1 ちち、はは、がい(こく) 2 やまだ、め 3 たなか、とう、なか 4 じょうず  
5 て 6 ぶん、7 みぎ、ひだり

**Unit 15**

## Dialogue 1 exercise

1 × 2 ✓

## Exercise 1

1 きた 2 きた 3 した 4 かけた 5 はなした 6 いった 7 およいだ 8 かりた  
9 はいた 10 かぶった

## Exercise 2

1 a) sōji shita b) sentaku shita 2 a) katta b) karita 3 a) itta b) odotta  
4 a) chekku shita b) kaketa

## Exercise 3

a × b ✓ c ✓ d × e ✓ f ✓

## Dialogue 2 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ×

## Exercise 4

1 (Inoue-san wa) yasunda ato de, shawā o abimasu. 2 (Inoue-san wa) kōcha o nonda ato de, asa-gohan o tsukurimasu. 3 (Inoue-san wa) asa-gohan o tabeta ato de, ha o migakimasu. 4 (Inoue-san wa) ha o migaita ato de, fuku o kimasu.

## Dialogue 3 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✓

## Exercise 5

1 Watashi wa Fujisan ni nobotta koto ga arimasu. 2 Watashi no imōto wa kimono o kita koto ga arimasen. 3 Hankokku-san wa (o)sushi o tabeta koto ga arimasu ka. 4 Watashi wa (o)sushi o tsukutta koto ga arimasu.

## Exercise 6

1 ✓ 2 ✓ 3 ✕ 4 ✓ 5 ✕ 6 ✓

## Exercise 7

1 にほん(ご)、せんせい 2 にほん(ご)、がくせい、(かん)じ 3 なに  
4 いちねん、にほん 5 にほんじん、ほん 6 にほん、くるま す(き)  
7 まいにち、(でん)しゃ

**Unit 16**

## Dialogue 1 exercise

1 ✕ 2 ✓

## Exercise 1

1 よむ yomu 2 する suru 3 いく iku 4 ひく hiku 5 もってくる motte kuru  
6 しらべる shiraberu

## Exercise 2

1 ひくこと playing (keyboard or stringed) instruments 2 およぐこと swimming  
3 すること doing, playing 4 テレビを みること watching TV 5 しゃしんを  
とること taking photographs 6 ほんを よむこと reading books 7 きつてを  
あつめること collecting (postage) stamps

## Exercise 3

1 Honda-san no shumi wa ryōri (o) suru koto desu. 2 Howaito-san no yume wa ēga o tsukuru koto desu. 3 Watashi no tomodachi no shumi



wa shashin o toru koto desu. 4 Watashi no otōto no yume wa yakyū senshu ni naru koto desu. 5 e.g. Watashi no shumi wa hon o yondari, e o kaitari suru koto desu.

#### Exercise 4

1 b 2 a 3 a

#### Exercise 5

1 Watashi wa Nihon no ēga o miru koto ga suki desu. 2 Watashi no tomodachi wa gitā o hiku koto ga jōzu desu. 3 Watashi wa kuruma o unten suru koto ga amari suki dewa arimasen. 4 Watashi no imōto wa e o kaku koto ga jōzu desu.

#### Dialogue 2 exercise

1 ✓ 2 ✗

#### Exercise 6

1 kekkon suru mae ni 2 yomu mae ni 3 kiru mae ni 4 neru mae ni  
5 5-nen (go-nen) mae ni

#### Exercise 7

1 Tomu-san wa Furansu-go o hanasu koto ga dekimasu ka. 2 Tomu-san wa Nihon no uta o utau koto ga dekimasu ka. 3 Tomu-san wa sukī o suru koto ga dekimasu ka. 4 Tomu-san wa kanji o kaku koto ga dekimasu ka.

#### Exercise 8

1 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 ✓

#### Exercise 9

1 ✓ 2 ✗ 3 ✓

#### Exercise 10

1 いもうと、まえ 2 おとうと 3 まいしゅう、きんようび 4 おとこ、あに  
5 かね 6 あと 7 きょうだい、しまい

# Japanese-English glossary

## A

<b>ā</b>	ah, oh	<b>anzen(na)</b> (na-adj.)	safe
<b>abimasu</b>	to shower, bathe, saturate	<b>ao</b>	blue (n.)
<b>abunai</b> (i-adj.)	dangerous	<b>aoi</b> (i-adj.)	blue (adj.)
<b>achira</b> (Unit 3)	that place over there (polite equivalent of <b>asoko</b> )	<b>araimasu</b>	to wash
<b>achira</b> (Unit 4)	that one over there (polite equivalent of <b>are</b> )	<b>are</b> (Unit 4)	that one (thing) over there
<b>agemasu</b>	to give	<b>are</b> (Unit 13)	Look!, Oh no!
<b>aida</b>	between	<b>arigatō</b>	thank you
<b>aimasu</b>	to meet, see	<b>arigatō</b>	thank you very much
<b>Airurando</b>	Ireland	<b>gozaimasu</b>	
<b>Ajia</b>	Asia	<b>arimasu</b> (Unit 8)	to be, exist, there is something
<b>aka</b>	red (n.)	<b>arimasu</b> (Unit 10)	have, own
<b>akai</b> (i-adj.)	red (adj.)	<b>asa</b>	morning
<b>akarui</b> (i-adj.)	bright	<b>asagohan</b>	breakfast
<b>akemasu</b>	to open	<b>Asakusa</b>	Asakusa district in Tokyo
<b>aki</b>	autumn, fall	<b>ashi</b>	leg, foot
<b>amai</b> (i-adj.)	sweet	<b>ashita</b>	tomorrow
<b>amari</b>	not so much (used with negatives)	<b>asobimasu</b>	to play, enjoy doing something
<b>ame</b>	rain	<b>asoko</b>	that place over there
<b>Amerika</b>	USA	<b>atama</b>	head
<b>Amerika-jin</b>	American (nationality)	<b>atama ga itai</b>	have a headache
<b>anata</b>	you	<b>atarashī</b> (i-adj.)	new
<b>ane</b>	(one's own) elder sister	<b>atatakai</b> (i-adj.)	warm
<b>ani</b>	(one's own) elder brother	<b>ato</b>	after, behind
<b>annaijo</b>	information (desk, agency, office)	<b>... ato de</b>	after ...
<b>ano</b> (Unit 4)	that one over there	<b>atsui</b> (i-adj.)	hot
<b>anō</b> (Unit 3)	ah, er, uh, um, etc.	<b>atsumemasu</b>	to collect
		<b>atsumeru koto</b>	collecting (n.)
		<b>B</b>	
		<b>ban</b>	evening, night
		<b>ban-gohan</b>	supper, dinner, evening meal
		<b>bangō</b>	number

<b>basho</b>	place	<b>D</b>	
<b>basu</b>	bus	<b>-dai</b> (counter suffix)	counter for machinery object
<b>basukettobōru</b>	basketball	<b>daidokoro</b>	kitchen
<b>basutē</b>	bus stop	<b>daigaku</b>	university
<b>beddo</b>	bed	<b>daigakusē</b>	university student
<b>benkyō</b>	study, studying (n.)	<b>daijōbu</b>	all right, ok
<b>benkyō shimasu</b>	to study	<b>daisuki(na)</b> (na-adj.)	like . . . very much
<b>benri(na)</b> (na-adj.)	convenient	<b>dake</b>	only
<b>bijutsukan</b>	art gallery, art museum	<b>dare</b>	who
<b>biru</b>	building	<b>dare no</b>	whose (+ noun)
<b>bīru</b>	beer	<b>dare to</b>	with whom
<b>-bon</b> (counter suffix)	counter for long, slender objects	<b>daremo</b>	no one
<b>bōnasu-bi</b>	bonus day	<b>de</b> (particle, Units 6 and 7)	by means of transportation, with (tool), in (language)
<b>bōrupen</b>	ball-point pen	<b>de</b> (particle, Unit 7)	at (indicating location)
<b>bōshi</b>	hat, cap	<b>dejikame</b>	digital camera
<b>Burajiru</b>	Brazil	<b>dekimasu</b>	can
<b>byōin</b>	hospital	<b>demasu</b>	to leave, get out
<b>byōki</b>	sickness, illness	<b>demo</b>	but, however
<b>C</b>		<b>denchi</b>	battery
<b>chairo</b>	brown (n.)	<b>denki</b>	electricity, light
<b>chairoi</b> (i-adj.)	brown (adj.)	<b>densha</b>	electric train
<b>chichi</b>	(one's own) father	<b>denwa</b>	telephone
<b>chikai</b> (i-adj.)	near, close	<b>denwa-bangō</b>	telephone number
<b>chikaku</b>	near	<b>depāto</b>	department store
<b>chikaku no</b> (+ noun)	nearby (+ noun)	<b>deshita</b>	was, were
<b>chikatetsu</b>	underground, subway	<b>desu</b>	am, are, is
<b>chīsai</b> (i-adj.)	small	<b>dewa arimasen</b>	am not, aren't, isn't
<b>chizu</b>	map	<b>DVD (dībuidī)</b>	DVD
<b>chōjō</b>	top, summit (of a mountain)	<b>dō</b>	how
<b>chokorēto</b>	chocolate	<b>dō itashimashite</b>	you are welcome, my pleasure
<b>chotto . . .</b> (Unit 9)	a little, a bit (inconvenient)	<b>dōbutsuen</b>	zoo
<b>chotto</b> (Unit 12)	a little, slightly	<b>dochira</b> (Unit 3)	where, which way (polite equivalent of <b>doko</b> )
<b>chūgakusē</b>	secondary/junior high school student	<b>dochira</b> (Unit 4)	which one (out of two)
<b>Chūgoku</b>	China	<b>Doitsu</b>	Germany
<b>Chūgoku-go</b>	Chinese (language)	<b>doko</b>	where
<b>Chūgoku-jin</b>	Chinese (nationality)	<b>doko de</b>	(at) where
<b>chūmon shimasu</b>	to order		

<b>doko no</b>	from where? (e.g. which company's/ country's)	<b>F</b>	
<b>doko(e)mo</b>	(to) nowhere, (to) anywhere	<b>fōku</b>	fork
<b>dokusho</b>	reading books (n.)	<b>fuben(na) (na-adj.)</b>	inconvenient
<b>dōmo</b>	thanks	<b>Fujisan</b>	Mt. Fuji
<b>donata</b>	who (polite equivalent of <b>dare</b> )	<b>fuku</b>	clothes
<b>donata no</b>	whose (polite equivalent of <b>dare no</b> )	<b>-fun (suffix)</b>	minute
<b>donna</b>	what kind of? (+ noun)	<b>-fun(kan) (suffix)</b>	minute(s)
<b>dono</b>	which? (+ noun)	<b>Furansu</b>	France
<b>donokurai</b>	how long?	<b>Furansu-go</b>	French (language)
<b>dore</b>	which one? (out of more than two things)	<b>furui (i-adj.)</b>	old (things)
<b>dōshite</b>	why?	<b>futari</b>	two people
<b>do-yōbi</b>	Saturday	<b>futatsu</b>	two (small things)
<b>dōzo</b>	please, here you are, if you please	<b>futsū</b>	usually, normally
<b>dōzo yoroshiku</b>	pleased to meet you	<b>futsuka</b>	2nd of the month
<b>E</b>		<b>fuyu</b>	winter
<b>e (Unit 5)</b>	dear, to (used for letters, emails, etc.)	<b>G</b>	
<b>e (particle, Unit 6)</b>	to (direction marker)	<b>ga (conjunction,</b>	but, however
<b>e</b>	picture	Unit 5)	
<b>eakon</b>	air conditioning	<b>ga (particle,</b>	subject marker
<b>ēga</b>	film, movie	Unit 5)	(used with <b>suki</b> , <b>kirai</b> , <b>jōzu</b> , etc.)
<b>ēgakan</b>	cinema	<b>gaikoku</b>	foreign country
<b>Ē-go</b>	English (language)	<b>gakusē</b>	student
<b>eki</b>	station	<b>ganbarimasu</b>	to work hard to do, do/try one's best
<b>-en</b>	yen (Japanese currency)	<b>-gatsu (suffix)</b>	month
<b>enjinia</b>	engineer	<b>geki</b>	theatre play
<b>enpitsu</b>	pencil	<b>gēmu</b>	game
<b>ēto</b>	let me see . . . , well . . .	<b>genkan</b>	entrance hall
		<b>genki desu ka</b>	How are you?
		<b>genki(na) (na-adj.)</b>	vigorous, active
		<b>getsu-yōbi</b>	Monday
		<b>ginkō</b>	bank
		<b>ginkōin</b>	bank clerk
		<b>Girisha</b>	Greece
		<b>gitā</b>	guitar
		<b>go</b>	five
		<b>-go (suffix)</b>	language
		<b>go-gatsu</b>	May
		<b>gogo</b>	p.m., in the afternoon
		<b>gohan</b>	meal, cooked rice
		<b>go-ji</b>	five o'clock
		<b>gokazoku</b>	(someone's) family
		<b>goro</b>	about, around

<b>gorufu</b>	golf	<b>hayai</b> (i-adj.)	fast, early
<b>goryōshin</b>	(someone's) parents	<b>heta(na)</b> (na-adj.)	poor at
<b>gozen</b>	a.m., in the morning	<b>heya</b>	room
<b>-guchi</b>	exit, entrance, doorway (e.g. south exit)	<b>hidari</b>	left
<b>gyūnyū</b>	milk	<b>hikimasu</b>	to play (keyboard and string instruments)
<b>H</b>		<b>hikōki</b>	plane, aeroplane
<b>ha</b>	teeth	<b>hiku koto</b>	playing (keyboard and string instruments) (n.)
<b>ha ga itai</b>	have a toothache	<b>hikui</b> (i-adj.)	low
<b>hachi</b>	eight	<b>hima(na)</b> (na-adj.)	free (time), have time
<b>hachi-gatsu</b>	August	<b>hiragana</b>	the Japanese cursive syllabary
<b>hachi-ji</b>	eight o'clock	<b>hiro</b> (i-adj.)	spacious, wide
<b>hade(na)</b> (na-adj.)	showy, gaudy, loud	<b>hiru</b>	noon, day
<b>haha</b>	(one's own) mother	<b>hiru-gohan</b>	lunch
<b>hai</b>	yes	<b>hito</b>	person
<b>hairimasu</b>	to enter, come in, go in, go into, get in	<b>hitori</b>	one person
<b>haite mo ī desu</b>	(one) may wear (e.g. shoes, slippers)	<b>hitori de</b>	on one's own, by oneself
<b>hajimemashite</b>	how do you do?	<b>hitotsu</b>	one (small item)
<b>hajimete</b>	for the first time	<b>Hokkaidō</b>	Hokkaido prefecture
<b>hakimasu</b>	to wear (shoes, trousers, socks, etc.)	<b>hon</b>	book
<b>hakubutsukan</b>	museum	<b>-hon, -pon, -bon</b>	counter for long, slender objects
<b>han</b>	half	<b>Honkon</b>	Hong Kong
<b>hana</b> (Unit 5)	flower	<b>hontō</b>	true, really, sure
<b>hana</b> (Unit 12)	nose	<b>hontō desu ka</b>	really, is that true?
<b>hanashimasu</b>	to talk, speak, chat	<b>hon-ya</b>	bookshop, bookstore
<b>hanasu koto ga dekimasu</b>	can speak	<b>hoshī</b> (i-adj.)	want (an object)
<b>hanbāgā</b>	hamburger	<b>hoteru</b>	hotel
<b>haraimasu</b>	to pay	<b>hyaku</b>	(one) hundred
<b>hare</b>	sunny, fair weather	<b>hyaku-man</b>	one million
<b>haru</b>	spring	<b>I</b>	
<b>hashi</b> (Units 1 and 7)	chopsticks	<b>ī</b> (i-adj.)	good
<b>hashi</b> (Unit 14)	bridge	<b>ichi</b>	one
<b>hashirimasu</b>	to run, to jog	<b>ichi-ban</b>	best, first, top, most
<b>hatarakimasu</b>	to work, labour	<b>ichi-gatsu</b>	January
<b>hatsuka</b>	20th of the month	<b>ichi-ji</b>	one o'clock
		<b>ichi-nen</b>	a year
		<b>īe</b>	no

<b>Igirisu</b>	UK	<b>J</b>	
<b>Igirisu-jin</b>	British (nationality)	<b>jā</b>	then, well then
<b>ikebana</b>	(Japanese) flower arrangement	<b>-ji</b> (suffix)	o'clock
<b>ikimassen</b>	do not go, does not go	<b>-jikan</b> (suffix, Unit 6)	hour(s)
<b>ikimassen ka</b>	won't you go?	<b>jikan</b> (Unit 10)	time
<b>ikimasu</b>	to go	<b>jikoshōkai</b>	self-introduction
<b>ikitai desu</b>	want to go	<b>-jin</b> (suffix)	-ese, -ian, -sh, etc. (nationality)
<b>ikura</b>	how much?	<b>jisho</b>	dictionary
<b>ikutsu</b>	how many? (small objects)	<b>jitensha</b>	bicycle
<b>ikutsume</b>	how many?	<b>jiyū(na)</b> (na-adj.)	liberty, free
<b>ima</b> (Unit 3)	now	<b>jogingu shimasu</b>	to jog
<b>ima</b> (Unit 8)	living room	<b>jōzu(na)</b> (na-adj.)	good at
<b>imasu</b>	to be, exist, there is someone	<b>jū</b>	ten
<b>īmēru</b>	email	<b>jūdō</b>	Judo (Japanese martial art)
<b>imōto</b>	(one's own) younger sister	<b>jū-gatsu</b>	October
<b>imōtosan</b>	(someone else's) younger sister	<b>jūichi-gatsu</b>	November
<b>Indo</b>	India	<b>jūichi-ji</b>	eleven o'clock
<b>intānetto</b>	Internet	<b>jū-ji</b>	ten o'clock
<b>inu</b>	dog	<b>jū-man</b>	one hundred thousand
<b>irasshaimase</b>	welcome, may I help you? (at a shop or restaurant)	<b>jūni-gatsu</b>	December
<b>iremasu</b>	to put (something) in	<b>jūni-ji</b>	twelve o'clock
<b>iro</b>	colour	<b>jūsu</b>	juice
<b>iroiro na</b>	various (+ noun)	<b>jūyokka</b>	14th of the month
<b>isha</b>	doctor	<b>K</b>	
<b>isogashī</b> (i-adj.)	busy	<b>ka</b> (particle)	question marking particle
<b>isogimasu</b>	to hurry	<b>kaban</b>	bag
<b>issho ni</b>	together	<b>kabin</b>	vase
<b>is-shūkan</b>	a week	<b>kabuki</b>	classical Japanese dance-drama
<b>isu</b>	chair	<b>kaburimasu</b>	to wear (hat, cap, helmet, etc.)
<b>itai</b> (i-adj.)	sore, painful	<b>kado</b>	corner
<b>Itaria</b>	Italy	<b>kādo</b>	card
<b>itsu</b>	when	<b>kādo de</b>	by card
<b>itsuka</b> (Unit 2)	5th of the month	<b>kaemasu</b>	to change
<b>itsuka</b> (Unit 14)	some time, some day, one day	<b>kaerimasu</b>	to go back, return
<b>itsumo</b>	always	<b>-kagetsu(kan)</b> (suffix)	month(s)
<b>itsutsu</b>	five (small items)	<b>-kai</b> (counter suffix, Unit 8)	counter for times

<b>kaimasu</b>	to buy	<b>kashu</b>	singer
<b>kaimono</b>	shopping	<b>~kata</b>	how to ~
<b>kaimono shimasu</b>	to go shopping	<b>katakana</b>	katakana script
<b>kaisha</b>	company	<b>kawai</b> (i-adj.)	pretty, cute, lovely
<b>kaishain</b>	office worker, company employee	<b>ka-yōbi</b>	Tuesday
<b>kakarimasu</b>	to take (time, cost)	<b>kaze</b>	wind
<b>(denwa o)</b>	to make a phone call	<b>kazoku</b>	family
<b>kakemasu</b>		<b>kekkon iwai</b>	celebration or gift for one's wedding
(Unit 15)		<b>kekkon shimasu</b>	to get married
<b>kakemasu</b>	wear (glasses)	<b>kenchō</b>	prefectural office
(Unit 15)		<b>kenkō(na)</b> (na-adj.)	healthy
<b>kakimasu</b>	to write	<b>kesa</b>	this morning
<b>kami</b>	hair	<b>keshiki</b>	view, scenery
<b>Kanada</b>	Canada	<b>kētai denwa</b>	mobile phone
<b>Kanada-jin</b>	Canadian (nationality)	<b>ki o tsukemasu</b>	to be careful
<b>kanji</b>	Japanese Chinese characters	<b>kikimasu</b>	to listen to
<b>kankō</b>	sightseeing	<b>kimasu</b> (Unit 6)	to come
<b>kankō annaijo</b>	tourist information	<b>kimasu</b> (Unit 15)	to wear (clothes)
<b>kankō shimasu</b>	to go sightseeing	<b>kimochi ga warui</b>	feel unwell, feel sick
<b>Kankoku</b>	South Korea	<b>kimono</b>	Japanese traditional clothes
<b>kankōkyaku</b>	tourist	<b>kin'en</b>	non-smoking
<b>kantan(na)</b>	easy	<b>kinō</b>	yesterday
(na-adj.)		<b>kin-yōbi</b>	Friday
<b>kao</b>	face	<b>kippu</b>	ticket
<b>kappu-rāmen</b>	instant (cup) noodles	<b>kirai(na)</b> (na-adj.)	dislike
<b>kara</b> (Unit 10)	because	<b>kirē(na)</b> (na-adj.)	beautiful, clean
<b>kara</b> (particle, Unit 3)	from	<b>kirimasu</b>	to cut
<b>karada</b>	body, health	<b>kīro</b>	yellow (n.)
<b>karada ni ī</b>	healthy ( <i>lit.</i> "good for one's body")	<b>kīroi</b> (i-adj.)	yellow
<b>karai</b> (i-adj.)	hot, spicy	<b>kissaten</b>	coffee shop, café
<b>karaoke</b>	karaoke	<b>kitte</b>	(postage) stamp counter for small objects
<b>karate</b>	karate (Japanese martial art)	<b>-ko</b> (counter suffix)	
<b>karita koto ga</b>	have borrowed	<b>kōban</b>	police box, koban (neighbourhood police station)
<b>arimasu</b>		<b>kōcha</b>	black tea, English tea
<b>karui</b> (i-adj.)	light	<b>kochira</b> (Unit 3)	this place, this way (polite equivalent of <b>koko</b> )
<b>kasa</b>	umbrella	<b>kochira</b> (Unit 4)	this, this one (polite equivalent of <b>kore</b> )
<b>kashikoma-</b>	certainly	<b>kodomo</b>	child, children, kid(s)
<b>rimashita</b>			

<b>kōen</b>	park	<b>kusuri</b>	medicine, drug
<b>kōhī</b>	coffee	<b>kutsu</b>	(a pair of) shoes
<b>koko</b>	here, this place	<b>kutsushita</b>	sock, a pair of socks
<b>kokonoka</b>	9th of the month	<b>kyanseru</b>	to cancel
<b>kokonotsu</b>	nine	<b>shimasu</b>	
<b>kōkōsē</b>	high school student	<b>kyō</b>	today
<b>konbanwa</b>	good evening	<b>kyonen</b>	last year
<b>konbini</b>	convenience store	<b>kyōshi</b>	teacher
<b>kondo</b>	next time	<b>Kyōto</b>	Kyoto prefecture
<b>kongetsu</b>	this month	<b>kyū</b>	nine
<b>konnichiwa</b>	good afternoon, hello	<b>kyūjitsu</b>	off-duty day, day off
<b>kono</b>	this (precedes noun)		
<b>konsāto</b>	concert	<b>M</b>	
<b>konshū</b>	this week	<b>machi</b>	town, city
<b>kore</b>	this, this one (thing)	<b>machimasu</b>	to wait
<b>kōsaten</b>	crossroads, intersection	<b>mada</b>	not yet
<b>-koto ga arimasu</b> (Unit 15)	have done (expressing one's experience)	<b>-made</b> (particle)	until, to, up to
<b>-koto ga</b> <b>dekimasu</b> (Unit 16)	can	<b>mado</b>	window
<b>kōto</b>	coat	<b>mae</b> (Unit 3)	before, front
<b>kotoba</b>	word	<b>mae</b> (Unit 8)	in front of
<b>kotoshi</b>	this year	<b>-mae ni</b> (Unit 16)	before doing
<b>kowai</b> (i-adj.)	scary, afraid, frightening	<b>magarimasu</b>	to turn
<b>kubi</b>	neck	<b>mai-</b> (prefix, Unit 6)	every . . .
<b>kuchi</b>	mouth	<b>-mai</b> (counter suffix, Unit 8)	counter for thin, flat objects
<b>kudamono</b>	fruit	<b>maiasa</b>	every morning
<b>ku-gatsu</b>	September	<b>maiban</b>	every evening, every night
<b>ku-ji</b>	nine o'clock	<b>mainichi</b>	every day
<b>kūkō</b>	airport	<b>maishū</b>	every week
<b>kumori</b>	cloudy	<b>maishūmatsu</b>	every weekend
<b>kuni</b>	country	<b>maitoshi</b>	every year
<b>-kurai</b> (Unit 6)	about, around	<b>maitsuki</b>	every month
<b>kurai</b> (i-adj, Unit 12)	dark	<b>māmā</b>	quite, so-so, reasonably
<b>kurikku shimasu</b>	to click	<b>-man</b>	ten thousand
<b>kurisumasu</b>	Christmas	<b>-masen ka</b>	won't you?, would you like to?
<b>kuro</b>	black (n.)	<b>-mashō</b>	let's
<b>kuroi</b> (i-adj.)	black (adj.)	<b>massugu</b>	straight
<b>kuru mae ni</b>	before coming	<b>mata</b>	again
<b>kuruma</b>	car, vehicle	<b>matsuri</b>	festival
		<b>mazui</b> (i-adj.)	tasteless



<b>me</b> (Unit 12)	eye	<b>N</b>	
<b>~me</b> (counter suffix, Unit 14)	order in numbers	<b>nagai</b> (i-adj.)	long
<b>megane</b>	(a pair of) glasses	<b>-nagara</b>	while doing
<b>Mekishiko</b>	Mexico	<b>naifu</b>	knife
<b>mēru</b>	email	<b>naitokurabu</b>	nightclub
<b>michi</b>	street, road	<b>naka</b>	inside
<b>midori</b>	green (n.)	<b>namae</b>	name
<b>migakimasu</b>	to polish, brush	<b>nan</b>	what
<b>migi</b>	right	<b>nan de</b>	by what, how, why
<b>mikka</b>	3rd of the month	<b>nana</b>	seven
<b>mimasu</b>	to watch, look at, see	<b>nanatsu</b>	seven (small items)
<b>mimi</b>	ear	<b>nan-ban</b>	what number
<b>minagara</b>	while watching/ seeing	<b>nan-gatsu</b>	what month
<b>minami</b>	south	<b>nani</b>	what
<b>minami-guchi</b>	south exit	<b>nani de</b>	by what, how to
<b>minna</b>	everybody, everyone	<b>nani-jin</b>	what nationality
<b>mise</b>	shop, store	<b>nanimo</b>	nothing
<b>misemasu</b>	to show	<b>nan-ji</b>	what time
<b>mittsu</b>	three (small items)	<b>nan-nichi</b>	what day
<b>mizu</b>	water	<b>nanoka</b>	7th of the month
<b>mo</b> (particle)	also, too	<b>nan-pun</b>	what (time)
<b>mō</b>	already	<b>nan-sai</b>	how old
<b>mō ichido</b>	once more	<b>nan-yōbi</b>	what day (of the week)
<b>mochimasu</b>	to have, hold, carry, own, possess	<b>narimasu</b>	to become
<b>mochiron</b>	of course	<b>natsu</b>	summer
<b>moku-yōbi</b>	Thursday	<b>natsu yasumi</b>	summer holiday
<b>mono</b>	thing(s)	<b>ne</b> (particle)	isn't it?, aren't they?, aren't you?, etc.
<b>moraimashita</b>	received	<b>nekkuresu</b>	necklace
<b>moraimasu</b>	to receive	<b>neko</b>	cat
<b>motte imasu</b>	to own, possess	<b>nekutai</b>	tie, necktie
<b>motte ikimasu</b>	to take (something to somewhere)	<b>nemasu</b>	to go to bed, sleep
<b>motte kimasu</b>	to bring (something to somewhere)	<b>-nen(kan)</b> (suffix)	year(s)
<b>motte kite</b>	please bring	<b>nettsu</b>	fever
<b>kudasai</b>	(something)	<b>nettsu ga arimasu</b>	have a fever
<b>motto</b>	more	<b>ni</b>	two
<b>muika</b>	6th of the month	<b>ni</b> (particle, Unit 7)	at, on, in (particle indicating time)
<b>musuko</b>	son	<b>ni</b> (particle, Unit 8)	at, in (location in/at which something exists)
<b>muttsu</b>	six (small items)	<b>ni</b> (particle, Unit 9)	(particle indicating purpose)
<b>muzukashī</b> (i-adj.)	difficult		

<b>ni</b> (particle, Unit 10)	to, for (indirect object marker; <i>receiver</i> of the action)	<b>... o kudasai</b>	please give me . . . , I will have . . .
<b>-nichi</b> (suffix)	day (of the month)	<b>... o tabemashita</b>	(I/you/she/he) ate . . .
<b>-nichi(kan)</b> (suffix)	day(s)	<b>obāsan</b>	(someone else's) grandmother
<b>nichi-yōbi</b>	Sunday	<b>oboemasu</b>	to remember, memorize
<b>ni-gatsu</b>	February	<b>ocha</b>	Japanese tea, green tea
<b>nigiyaka(na)</b> (na-adj.)	lively	<b>odorimasu</b>	to dance
<b>Nihon</b>	Japan	<b>ohashi</b> (Units 1 and 7)	chopsticks (polite equivalent of <b>hashi</b> )
<b>Nihon-go</b>	Japanese (language)	<b>ohayō</b> ( <b>gozaimasu</b> )	good morning
<b>Nihon-jin</b>	Japanese (nationality)	<b>ōi</b> (i-adj.)	many
<b>ni-ji</b>	two o'clock	<b>oisha-san</b>	(medical) doctor
<b>nijūyokka</b>	24th of the month	<b>oishī</b> (i-adj.)	delicious, tasty
<b>nikki</b>	diary	<b>ojisan</b>	(someone else's) grandfather
<b>niku</b>	meat	<b>okāsan</b>	(someone else's) mother
<b>-nin</b> (counter suffix)	counter for people	<b>okashi</b>	confectionery
<b>ninki</b>	popularity	<b>ōkī</b> (i-adj.)	big
<b>... ni shimasu</b>	I will take . . .	<b>okimasu</b> (Unit 7)	to wake up
<b>nite imasu</b>	be similar, alike	<b>okimasu</b> (Unit 13)	to put (something)
<b>niwa</b>	garden	<b>okonomiyaki</b>	Japanese pizza
<b>no</b> (particle)	of, 's (possessive marker)	<b>okuni</b>	country (polite equivalent of <b>kuni</b> )
<b>noborimasu</b>	to climb, go up	<b>okurimasu</b>	to send
<b>nodo ga itai</b>	have a sore throat	<b>okyakusan</b>	visitor, customer
<b>... no hō ga ...</b> <b>  yori</b>	be more (adjective) than . . .	<b>omatsuri</b>	festival
<b>nomimasu</b>	to drink	<b>omedetō</b> ( <b>gozaimasu</b> )	congratulations
<b>nomimono</b>	(something to) drink, beverage	<b>omise</b>	shop, store (polite equivalent of <b>mise</b> )
<b>no naka de</b>	among	<b>omiyage</b>	souvenir, gift
<b>-noriba</b>	stop, stand, rank, station, etc.	<b>omizu</b>	water (polite equivalent of <b>mizu</b> )
<b>norikaemasu</b>	to change, transfer	<b>omoi</b> (i-adj.)	heavy
<b>norimasu</b>	to get on, ride	<b>omoidashimasu</b>	to recollect, recall, remember
<b>... no tame ni</b>	for the benefit of . . .	<b>omoshiroi</b> (i-adj.)	interesting, funny
<b>Nyūjirando</b>	New Zealand		
<b>Nyūyōku</b>	New York		
<b>O</b>			
<b>o</b> (particle)	object marker (indicating object)		

<b>onaka ga itai</b>	have a stomachache	<b>otoko no ko</b>	boy
<b>onamae</b>	name (polite equivalent of <b>namae</b> )	<b>otōsan</b>	(someone else's) father
<b>onagai shimasu</b>	please	<b>otōto</b>	(one's own) younger brother
<b>onēsan</b>	(someone's) elder sister	<b>otōtosan</b>	(someone else's) younger brother
<b>ongaku</b>	music	<b>oyogimasu</b>	to swim
<b>onīsan</b>	(someone else's) elder brother	<b>P</b>	
<b>onna</b>	female	<b>pasokon</b>	personal computer
<b>onna no hito</b>	woman	<b>pasupōto</b>	passport
<b>onna no ko</b>	girl	<b>pātī</b>	party
<b>onsen</b>	hot spring, spa	<b>piano</b>	piano
<b>Oranda</b>	The Netherlands	<b>pinku</b>	pink (n.)
<b>orimasu</b>	to get off	<b>-pon</b> (counter suffix)	counter for long, slender objects
<b>Ōsaka</b>	Osaka, second city of Japan	<b>Porutogaru</b>	Portugal
<b>osake</b>	alcoholic drink, liquor, Japanese rice wine	<b>-pun</b> (suffix)	minute (see <b>-fun</b> )
<b>oshiemasu</b>	to teach	<b>-pun(kan)</b> (suffix)	minute(s) (see <b>-fun(kan)</b> )
<b>oshiete kudasai</b>	please tell (me), please teach (me)	<b>purezento</b>	present
<b>oshigoto</b>	work, job, occupation (polite equivalent of <b>shigoto</b> )	<b>R</b>	
<b>oshiro</b>	castle (polite equivalent of <b>shiro</b> )	<b>raigetsu</b>	next month
<b>osoi (i-adj.)</b>	slow, late	<b>rainen</b>	next year
<b>osushi</b>	Japanese sushi (polite equivalent of <b>sushi</b> )	<b>raishū</b>	next week
<b>Ōsutoraria</b>	Australia	<b>rāmen</b>	Japanese noodle soup
<b>otearai</b>	toilet	<b>resutoran</b>	restaurant
<b>otera</b>	temple (polite equivalent of <b>tera</b> )	<b>rimokon</b>	remote control
<b>ōtobai</b>	motorcycle, motorbike	<b>ringo</b>	apple
<b>otoko</b>	male	<b>robī</b>	lobby
<b>otoko no hito</b>	man	<b>roku</b>	six
		<b>roku-gatsu</b>	June
		<b>roku-ji</b>	six o'clock
		<b>rōmaji</b>	Roman alphabet
		<b>Rondon</b>	London, capital of the UK
		<b>Roshia</b>	Russia
		<b>ryokan</b>	Japanese style inn/ hotel
		<b>ryokō</b>	travel, trip
		<b>ryōri</b>	cooking (n.)
		<b>ryōri shimasu</b>	to cook
		<b>ryōshin</b>	(one's own) parents

<b>S</b>		<b>shimasu</b>	to do
<b>sadō</b>	(Japanese) tea ceremony	<b>shimemasu</b>	to close, shut
<b>-sai</b>	years old (suffix)	<b>shinbun</b>	newspaper
<b>saifu</b>	wallet	<b>shingō</b>	traffic lights, signal
<b>saikin</b>	recently, lately	<b>Shinjuku Gyoen</b>	Shinjuku Gyoen, one of the parks in Tokyo
<b>sakana</b>	fish	<b>shinkansen</b>	Japanese bullet train, super express train
<b>sake</b>	alcoholic drink, liquor, Japanese rice wine	<b>shinsetsu(na)</b>	kind
<b>sakkā</b>	football, soccer	<b>(na-adj.)</b>	
<b>samui (i-adj.)</b>	cold (temperature)	<b>shinshitsu</b>	bedroom
<b>san</b>	three	<b>shirabemasu</b>	to investigate, examine, check, study
<b>-san</b>	Mr, Miss, Mrs, Ms (title)	<b>shirimasu</b>	to get to know
<b>san-gatsu</b>	March	<b>shiro (Unit 8)</b>	castle
<b>san-ji</b>	three o'clock	<b>shiro (Unit 12)</b>	white (n.)
<b>sanpo</b>	walk, stroll (n.)	<b>shiroi (i-adj.)</b>	white (adj.)
<b>sanpo shimasu</b>	to go for a walk	<b>shita</b>	under, below
<b>se</b>	stature, height	<b>shitagi</b>	underwear, underclothes
<b>se ga takai</b>	tall	<b>shite imashita</b>	was/were doing
<b>sēkatsu</b>	life, living	<b>shiyakusho</b>	city hall, town hall
<b>semai (i-adj.)</b>	narrow	<b>shizuka(na)</b>	quiet
<b>sen</b>	(one) thousand	<b>(na-adj.)</b>	
<b>senchi</b>	centimetre	<b>shodō</b>	calligraphy
<b>sengetsu</b>	last month	<b>shōgakusē</b>	primary school student
<b>sensē</b>	teacher	<b>shokuji shimasu</b>	to have a meal
<b>-sensē (Unit 1)</b>	title for teacher, doctor, professor, lawyer etc.	<b>-shū(kan) (suffix)</b>	week(s)
<b>senshū</b>	last week	<b>shufu</b>	housewife
<b>sentaku shimasu</b>	to wash (laundry)	<b>shukudai</b>	homework
<b>sētā</b>	sweater	<b>shūmatsu</b>	weekend
<b>shashin</b>	photograph	<b>shumi</b>	hobby
<b>shashin tate</b>	photo frame	<b>sō desu ne</b>	that is true, I agree with you
<b>shatsu</b>	shirt(s)	<b>sō desu ka</b>	really?, is that so?, I see
<b>shawā</b>	shower	<b>sobo</b>	(one's own) grandmother
<b>shi</b>	four	<b>sochira (Unit 3)</b>	that place near you, that way (polite equivalent of <b>soko</b> )
<b>shichi</b>	seven		
<b>shichi-gatsu</b>	July		
<b>shichi-ji</b>	seven o'clock		
<b>shi-gatsu</b>	April		
<b>shigoto</b>	work, job, occupation		
<b>shikashi</b>	but, however		
<b>shimashita</b>	did (something)		

<b>sochira</b> (Unit 4)	that, that one (polite equivalent of <b>sore</b> )	<b>supūn</b>	spoon
<b>sofu</b>	(one's own) grandfather	<b>surippa</b>	(a pair of) slippers
<b>sōji shimasu</b>	to clean (a room, house, park, etc.)	<b>sushi</b>	Japanese sushi
<b>sokkuri(na)</b> (na-adj.)	to closely resemble someone	<b>suteki(na)</b> (na-adj.)	wonderful, splendid
<b>soko</b>	that place, there	<b>sūtsu</b>	suit
<b>sono</b>	that (+ noun)	<b>suwarimasu</b>	to sit down
<b>sore</b>	that, that one (thing)	<b>T</b>	
<b>sore wa</b> <b>ikemasen</b>	that is bad	<b>tabako</b>	tobacco, cigarette
<b>sorekara</b>	also, in addition, and then	<b>tabemashita</b>	ate
<b>soreni</b>	besides	<b>tabemasu</b>	to eat
<b>soshite</b>	and (sentence link)	<b>tabemono</b>	food
<b>soto</b>	outside	<b>tabun</b>	maybe, probably
<b>sotsugyō</b> <b>shimasu</b>	to graduate	<b>tachimasu</b>	to stand up
<b>sugoi</b> (i-adj.)	great	<b>-tai desu</b>	to want to do
<b>suiē</b>	swimming (n.)	<b>taishikan</b>	embassy
<b>(tabako o)</b> <b>suimasu</b>	to smoke a cigarette	<b>takai</b> (i-adj.)	expensive, high (in height), tall
<b>Suisu</b>	Switzerland	<b>takusan</b>	a lot of, many
<b>sui-yōbi</b>	Wednesday	<b>takushī</b>	taxi
<b>suizokukan</b>	aquarium	<b>takushī noriba</b>	taxi rank
<b>sukāto</b>	skirt	<b>tamani</b>	not so often, occasionally
<b>sukēto</b>	ice skating	<b>tanjōbi</b>	birthday
<b>sukī</b>	skiing	<b>tanoshī</b> (i-adj.)	enjoyable, pleasant, delightful
<b>suki(na)</b> (na-adj.)	like	<b>tanoshimi(na)</b> (na-adj.)	look forward to
<b>sukoshi</b>	a little, few	<b>tanoshimini</b> <b>shimasu</b>	to look forward to
<b>sukunai</b> (i-adj.)	few	<b>tasukemasu</b>	to help, rescue
<b>sumimasen</b>	excuse me, I am sorry	<b>tatemasu</b>	to build
<b>sumimasu</b>	to live, reside	<b>te</b>	hand(s)
<b>sumō</b>	Japanese sumo wrestling	<b>-te imasu</b> (Unit 14)	be (verb)-ing (present progressive), a state of someone or something, be (verb)-ing (habitual action)
<b>sūpā</b>	supermarket	<b>-te kudasai</b>	please (do)
<b>Supein</b>	Spain	<b>tegami</b>	letter
<b>Supein-go</b>	Spanish (language)	<b>-te mo ī desu</b>	may
<b>supōtsu</b>	sports	<b>ten'in</b>	shop clerk, shop assistant
<b>sūpu</b>	soup		

<b>tenisu</b>	tennis	<b>tsukue</b>	desk
<b>tenki</b>	weather	<b>tsukurimasu</b>	to make, produce, create
<b>tempura</b>	tempura (Japanese food)	<b>tsumaranai (i-adj.)</b>	boring, uninteresting
<b>tera</b>	temple	<b>tsumetai (i-adj.)</b>	cold (touch)
<b>terebi</b>	television	<b>tsurete ikimasu</b>	to take (someone to somewhere)
<b>-te wa ikemasen</b>	must not	<b>tsuretekimasu</b>	to bring (someone to somewhere)
<b>tō</b>	ten (small items)		
<b>to (conjunction, Unit 2)</b>	and (connecting nouns)	<b>U</b>	
<b>-to (particle, Unit 6)</b>	with, together with	<b>uchi</b>	home, house
<b>todokemasu</b>	to deliver	<b>udedokē</b>	wristwatch
<b>tōi (i-adj.)</b>	far	<b>udon</b>	Japanese noodles made from (wheat) flour
<b>tōka</b>	10th of the month	<b>ue</b>	on, above, top
<b>tokē</b>	clock, watch	<b>umi</b>	sea, ocean
<b>tokidoki</b>	sometimes	<b>undō shimasu</b>	to exercise
<b>tokorode</b>	by the way	<b>untan</b>	drive (n.)
<b>Tōkyō</b>	Tokyo, capital of Japan	<b>untan shimasu</b>	to drive
<b>Tōkyō sukai tsurī</b>	Tokyo Sky Tree (new Tokyo tower)	<b>ureshī (i-adj.)</b>	happy, glad, grateful
<b>tomarimasu</b>	to stay overnight	<b>urusai (i-adj.)</b>	noisy, loud
<b>tomemasu</b>	to pull up (a car), stop	<b>usagi</b>	rabbit
<b>tomodachi</b>	friend	<b>ushiro</b>	behind, back
<b>tonari</b>	next to	<b>uta</b>	song
<b>torimasu</b>	to take (a photograph)	<b>utaimasu</b>	to sing
<b>Toruko</b>	Turkey	<b>utsukushī (i-adj.)</b>	beautiful
<b>toshokan</b>	library	<b>V</b>	
<b>toshokan kādo</b>	library card	[V-dic.] <b>mae ni</b>	before doing
<b>totemo</b>	very (much)	[V-stem] <b>nagara</b>	while doing
<b>-tsu (counter suffix)</b>	counter for material things in general	[V-ta] <b>koto ga arimasu</b>	have done
<b>tsugi</b>	next	[V-te] <b>imasu 1</b>	be (verb)-ing (present progressive)
<b>tsugō ga warui desu</b>	(time/schedule) is inconvenient for me	[V-te] <b>imasu 2</b>	a state of someone or something
<b>tsuitachi</b>	the first (of the month)	[V-te] <b>imasu 3</b>	habitual action
<b>tsukaimasu</b>	to use	[V-te] <b>kudasai</b>	Please (verb) . . .
<b>tsukemasu</b>	to turn on, switch on	[V-te] <b>mo ī desu</b>	may
<b>tsukimasu</b>	to arrive	[V-te] <b>wa ikemasen</b>	must not
<b>tsūkōnin</b>	passer-by		

[V-stem] <b>masen</b>	won't you (do something)	<b>yoi</b> (i-adj.)	good
<b>ka</b>		<b>yo-ji</b>	four o'clock
[V-stem] <b>mashō</b>	let's (do something)	<b>yōka</b>	8th of the month
[V-stem] <b>tai desu</b>	want to (do something)	<b>yokka</b>	4th of the month
		<b>yoku</b>	often, frequently
		<b>yomikata</b>	how to read
<b>W</b>		<b>yomimashita</b>	read (past tense)
<b>wa</b> (particle)	topic marker particle	<b>yomimasu</b>	to read
<b>wain</b>	wine	<b>yon</b>	four
<b>wakai</b> (i-adj.)	young	<b>yori</b> (Unit 12)	than, rather . . . than . . . , more . . . than . . .
<b>wakarimashita</b>	understood		
<b>wakarimasu</b>	to understand	<b>yori</b> (Unit 5)	from (used for letters, emails, etc.)
<b>warui</b> (i-adj.)	bad		
<b>washitsu</b>	Japanese-style room	<b>yōroppa</b>	Europe
		<b>yoru</b>	evening, night
<b>watarimasu</b>	to cross	<b>yōshitsu</b>	Western-style room
<b>watashi</b>	I	<b>yottsu</b>	four (small items)
		<b>yoyaku shimasu</b>	to reserve, book
<b>Y</b>		<b>yubi</b>	finger
<b>ya</b> (particle, Unit 8)	and (among other things)	<b>yūbinkyoku</b>	post office
<b>-ya</b> (suffix, Unit 8)	shop, store	<b>yuki</b>	snow
<b>yakyū senshu</b>	baseball player	<b>yukkuri</b>	slowly
<b>yama</b>	mountain	<b>yume</b>	dream
<b>yasai</b>	vegetable	<b>yūmē(na)</b> (na-adj.)	famous
<b>yasashī</b> (i-adj.)	easy (to do), kind, gentle (personality)	<b>Z</b>	
		<b>zannen desu ga</b>	it is regrettable/ unfortunate but
<b>yasui</b> (i-adj.)	inexpensive, cheap	<b>zasshi</b>	magazine
		<b>zehi</b>	by all means, please, definitely
<b>yasumi</b>	holiday, rest (n.)	<b>zenbu de</b>	in total, all together
<b>yasumimasu</b>	to rest	<b>zenzen</b>	(not) at all
<b>yattsu</b>	eight (small items)	<b>zero</b>	zero
<b>yawarakai</b> (i-adj.)	soft	<b>zō</b>	statue
<b>-yōbi</b> (suffix)	day (of the week)	<b>zubon</b>	(a pair of) trousers
<b>yobimasu</b>	to call (e.g. a taxi)		

# English-Japanese glossary

You can find a full list of particles, counters, time phrases, interrogatives and months/dates in the Grammar Summary. You can also find a full list of verb conjugations and adjective inflections in the Appendix.

## A

a little	<b>chotto . . .</b>	bank clerk	<b>ginkōin</b>
about	<b>goro</b> (for time), <b>kurai/gurai</b> (duration of time, etc.)	baseball player	<b>yakyū senshu</b>
again	<b>mata</b>	basketball	<b>basukettobōru</b>
air conditioning	<b>eakon</b>	battery	<b>denchi</b>
airport	<b>kūkō</b>	be	<b>arimasu, imasu, desu</b>
alcoholic drink	<b>(o)sake</b>	be careful	<b>ki o tsukemasu</b>
all right	<b>daijōbu</b>	be similar	<b>nite imasu</b>
alone	<b>hitori de</b>	beautiful	<b>utsukushī, kirē(na)</b>
already	<b>mō</b>	because	<b>kara</b>
also	<b>mo</b> (particle)	become	<b>narimasu</b>
always	<b>itsumo</b>	bed	<b>beddo</b>
a.m.	<b>gozen</b>	bedroom	<b>shinshitsu</b>
and	<b>to</b> (for nouns), <b>ya</b> (for nouns), <b>soshite</b> (for sentences)	beer	<b>bīru</b>
and then	<b>sorekara</b>	before (verb)	<b>mae, mae ni</b>
apple	<b>ringo</b>	behind	<b>ushiro</b>
aquarium	<b>suizokukan</b>	besides	<b>soreni</b>
arrive	<b>tsukimasu</b>	best	<b>ichi-ban</b>
art gallery	<b>bijutsukan</b>	between	<b>aida</b>
at	<b>de</b> (for places), <b>ni</b> (for items and places)	bicycle	<b>jitensha</b>
autumn	<b>aki</b>	big	<b>ōkī</b>
		birthday	<b>tanjōbi</b>
		black	<b>kuro</b> (n.), <b>kuroi</b> (adj.)
		black tea	<b>kōcha</b>
		blue	<b>ao</b> (n.), <b>aoi</b> (adj.)
		body	<b>karada</b>
		bonus day	<b>bōnasu-bi</b>
		book	<b>hon</b>
		bookshop	<b>hon-ya</b>
		boring	<b>tsumaranai</b>
		boy	<b>otoko no ko</b>
		breakfast	<b>asagohan</b>
		bridge	<b>hashi</b>
		bright	<b>akarui</b>



bring	<b>tsurete kimasu</b> (someone), <b>motte kimasu</b> (something)	clothes	<b>fuku</b>
brown	<b>chairo</b> (n.), <b>chairoi</b> (adj.)	cloudy	<b>kumori</b>
brush	<b>migakimasu</b>	coat	<b>kōto</b>
build	<b>tatemasu</b>	coffee	<b>kōhī</b>
building	<b>biru</b>	coffee shop	<b>kissaten</b>
bus	<b>basu</b>	cold	<b>samui</b> (for temperature), <b>tsumetai</b> (for touch)
bus stop	<b>basutē</b>	collect	<b>atsumemasu</b>
busy	<b>isogashī</b>	colour	<b>iro</b>
but	<b>demo, ga, shikashi</b>	come	<b>kimasu</b>
buy	<b>kaimasu</b>	company	<b>kaisha</b>
by	<b>de</b>	concert	<b>konsāto</b>
by all means	<b>zahi</b>	confectionery	<b>okashi</b>
by the way	<b>tokorode</b>	congratulations	<b>omedetō (gozaimasu)</b>
		convenience store	<b>konbini</b>
<b>C</b>		convenient	<b>benri(na)</b>
call	<b>yobimasu</b>	cook	<b>ryōri shimasu</b>
calligraphy	<b>shodō</b>	cooking	<b>ryōri</b>
can	<b>dekimasu</b>	corner	<b>kado</b>
cancel	<b>kyanseru shimasu</b>	country	<b>(o)kuni</b>
car	<b>kuruma</b>	cross	<b>watarimasu</b>
card	<b>kādo</b>	crossroads	<b>kōsaten</b>
castle	<b>(o)shiro</b>	cut	<b>kirimasu</b>
cat	<b>neko</b>		
centimetre	<b>senchi</b>	<b>D</b>	
certainly	<b>kashikomarimashita</b>	dance	<b>odorimasu</b>
chair	<b>isu</b>	dangerous	<b>abunai</b>
change	<b>kaemasu,</b> <b>norikaemasu</b>	dark	<b>kurai</b>
cheap	<b>yasui</b>	dear	<b>e</b> (used for letters)
child	<b>kodomo</b>	December	<b>jūni-gatsu</b>
chocolate	<b>chokorēto</b>	definitely	<b>zahi</b>
chopsticks	<b>(o)hashi</b>	delicious	<b>oishī</b>
Christmas	<b>kurisumasu</b>	deliver	<b>todokemasu</b>
cigarette	<b>tabako</b>	department store	<b>depāto</b>
cinema	<b>ēgakan</b>	desk	<b>tsukue</b>
city	<b>machi</b>	diary	<b>nikki</b>
city hall	<b>shiyakusho</b>	dictionary	<b>jisho</b>
clean	<b>kirē(na)</b> (adj.), <b>sōji shimasu</b> (v.)	difficult	<b>muzukashī</b>
click	<b>kurikku shimasu</b>	digital camera	<b>dejikame</b>
climb	<b>noborimasu</b>	dinner	<b>ban-gohan</b>
clock	<b>tokē</b>	dislike	<b>kirai(na)</b>
close	<b>shimemasu</b>	do	<b>shimasu</b>

doctor	<b>(o)isha(-san)</b>	<b>F</b>	
dog	<b>inu</b>	face	<b>kao</b>
dream	<b>yume</b>	family	<b>kazoku</b>
drink	<b>nomimasu</b>	famous	<b>yūmē(na)</b>
(something to)	<b>nomimono</b>	far	<b>tōi</b>
drink		fast	<b>hayai</b>
drive	<b>untēn shimasu</b>	father	<b>chichi</b> (one's own), <b>otōsan</b> (someone else's)
driving	<b>untēn</b> (n.)		
DVD	<b>DVD</b> (read as <b>dībuidī</b> )	February	<b>ni-gatsu</b>
<b>E</b>		feel unwell	<b>kimochi ga warui</b>
ear	<b>mimi</b>	female	<b>onna</b>
early	<b>hayai</b>	festival	<b>(o)matsuri</b>
easy	<b>kantan(na), yasashī</b>	fever	<b>netsu</b>
eat	<b>tabemasu, shokuji</b> <b>shimasu</b>	few	<b>sukunai, chotto</b>
		film	<b>ēga</b>
eight	<b>hachi</b>	finger	<b>yubi</b>
elder brother	<b>ani</b> (one's own), <b>onīsan</b> (someone else's)	fish	<b>sakana</b>
		five	<b>go</b>
elder sister	<b>ane</b> (one's own), <b>onēsan</b> (someone else's)	flower (Japanese) flower arrangement	<b>hana</b> <b>ikebana</b>
electric train	<b>densha</b>	food	<b>tabemono</b>
electricity	<b>denki</b>	football	<b>sakkā</b>
email	<b>īmēru</b>	for the first time	<b>hajimete</b>
embassy	<b>taishikan</b>	foreign country	<b>gaikoku</b>
engineer	<b>enjīnia</b>	fork	<b>fōku</b>
English	<b>Ē-go</b>	four	<b>shi, yon</b>
(language)		free (time)	<b>hima(na), jiyū(na)</b>
enjoyable	<b>tanoshī</b>	Friday	<b>kin-yōbi</b>
enter	<b>hairimasu</b>	friend	<b>tomodachi</b>
entrance hall	<b>genkan</b>	from	<b>kara, yori</b> (used for letters)
evening	<b>ban, yoru</b>		
every day	<b>mainichi</b>	fruit	<b>kudamono</b>
every evening	<b>maiban</b>		
every month	<b>maitzuki</b>	<b>G</b>	
every morning	<b>maiasa</b>	game	<b>gēmu</b>
every week	<b>maishū</b>	garden	<b>niwa</b>
every weekend	<b>maishūmatsu</b>	get off	<b>orimasu</b>
every year	<b>maitoshi</b>	get on	<b>norimasu</b>
everyone	<b>minna</b>	girl	<b>onna no ko</b>
excuse me	<b>sumimasen</b>	give	<b>agemasu</b>
exercise	<b>undō shimasu</b>	glad	<b>ureshī</b>
expensive	<b>takai</b>	(a pair of)	<b>megane</b>
eye	<b>me</b>	glasses	

go	<b>ikimasu</b>	hot spring	<b>onsen</b>
go back	<b>kaerimasu</b>	hotel	<b>hoteru, ryokan</b> (Japanese-style inn)
go for a walk	<b>sanpo shimasu</b>	housewife	<b>shufu</b>
go to bed	<b>nemasu</b>	how?	<b>dō</b>
golf	<b>gorufu</b>	how long?	<b>donokurai</b> (time)
good	<b>ī, yoi</b>	how many?	<b>ikutsu</b> (small objects), <b>ikutsume</b> (bus/train stops), <b>nan-dai</b> (machines), <b>nan-ko</b> (small objects), <b>nan-mai</b> (long objects), <b>nan-nin</b> (people)
good afternoon	<b>konnichiwa</b>	how much?	<b>ikura</b>
good at	<b>jōzu(na)</b>	how old?	<b>nan-sai</b>
good evening	<b>konbanwa</b>	how to . . .	<b>-kata</b>
good morning	<b>ohayō (gozaimasu)</b>	hundred	<b>hyaku</b>
graduate	<b>sotsugyō shimasu</b>	hundred	<b>-jū-man</b>
grandfather	<b>sofu</b> (one's own), <b>ojīsan</b> (someone else's)	thousand	<b>isogimasu</b>
grandmother	<b>sobo</b> (one's own), <b>obāsan</b> (someone else's)	hurry	
great	<b>sugoi</b>		
green	<b>midori</b> (n.)		
guitar	<b>gitā</b>		
<b>H</b>			
hair	<b>kami</b>	<b>I</b>	
half	<b>han</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>watashi</b>
hamburger	<b>hanbāgā</b>	ice skating	<b>sukēto</b>
hand(s)	<b>te</b>	in front of	<b>mae</b>
happy	<b>ureshī</b>	in total	<b>zenbu de</b>
hat	<b>bōshi</b>	inconvenient	<b>fuben(na)</b>
have	<b>arimasu, mochimasu,</b> <b>motte imasu</b>	information (desk, agency, office)	<b>annaijo</b>
head	<b>atama</b>	inside	<b>naka</b>
healthy	<b>kenkō(na), karada</b> <b>ni ī</b>	instant (cup) noodles	<b>kappu-rāmen</b>
heavy	<b>omoi</b>	interesting	<b>omoshiroi</b>
help	<b>tasukemasu</b>	Internet	<b>intānetto</b>
here	<b>koko</b>	investigate	<b>shirabemasu</b>
high school student	<b>kōkōsē</b>		
hobby	<b>shumi</b>	<b>J</b>	
holiday	<b>yasumi</b>	January	<b>ichi-gatsu</b>
home	<b>uchi</b>	Japan	<b>Nihon</b>
homework	<b>shukudai</b>	jog	<b>jogingu shimasu</b>
hospital	<b>byōin</b>	juice	<b>jūsu</b>
hot	<b>atsui</b> (temperature), <b>karai</b> (spicy)	July	<b>shichi-gatsu</b>
		June	<b>roku-gatsu</b>

**K**

kind	<b>shinsetsu(na), yasashī</b>
kitchen	<b>daidokoro</b>
knife	<b>naifu</b>
know	<b>shirimasu, shitte imasu</b>

**I**

last month	<b>sengetsu</b>
last week	<b>senshū</b>
last year	<b>kyonen</b>
leave	<b>demasu</b>
left	<b>hidari</b>
leg	<b>ashi</b>
let me see . . .	<b>ēto</b>
letter	<b>tegami</b>
library	<b>toshokan</b>
life	<b>sēkatsu</b>
light	<b>denki (n.), karui (adj.)</b>
like	<b>suki(na), daisuki(na)</b>
liquor	<b>(o)sake</b>
listen to	<b>kikimasu</b>
(a) little	<b>sukoshi</b>
live	<b>sumimasu, sunde imasu</b>
lively	<b>nigiyaka(na)</b>
living room	<b>ima</b>
lobby	<b>robī</b>
long	<b>nagai</b>
look	<b>mimasu</b>
look forward to	<b>tanoshimi(na) (adj.), tanoshimi ni shimasu (v.)</b>
low	<b>hikui</b>
lunch	<b>hiru-gohan</b>

**M**

magazine	<b>zasshi</b>
make	<b>tsukurimasu</b>
man	<b>otoko, otoko no hito</b>
many	<b>ōi, takusan</b>
map	<b>chizu</b>
March	<b>san-gatsu</b>
marry	<b>kekkon shimasu</b>
May	<b>go-gatsu</b>

maybe	<b>tabun</b>
meal	<b>gohan</b>
meat	<b>niku</b>
medicine	<b>kusuri</b>
meet	<b>aimasu</b>
milk	<b>gyūnyū</b>
million	<b>hyaku-man</b>
minute(s)	<b>-fun(kan), -pun(kan)</b>
Miss	<b>-san</b>
mobile phone	<b>kētai denwa</b>
Monday	<b>getsu-yōbi</b>
month(s)	<b>-gatsu, -kagetsu(kan)</b>
more	<b>motto</b>
morning	<b>asa</b>
most	<b>ichiban</b>
mother	<b>haha (one's own), okāsan (someone else's)</b>
motorcycle, motorbike	<b>ōtobai</b>
mountain	<b>yama</b>
mouth	<b>kuchi</b>
movie	<b>ēga</b>
Mr, Mrs, Ms	<b>-san</b>
Mt. Fuji	<b>Fujisan</b>
museum	<b>hakubutsukan</b>
music	<b>ongaku</b>

**N**

name	<b>(o)namae</b>
narrow	<b>semai</b>
near	<b>chikai (adj.), chikaku no (+ noun)</b>
neck	<b>kubi</b>
necklace	<b>nekkuresu</b>
new	<b>atarashī</b>
newspaper	<b>shinbun</b>
next	<b>tsugi</b>
next month	<b>raigetsu</b>
next time	<b>kondo</b>
next to	<b>tonari</b>
next week	<b>raishū</b>
next year	<b>rainen</b>
night	<b>ban, yoru</b>
nine	<b>kyū</b>
no	<b>īe</b>

no one	<b>daremo</b>	photograph	<b>shashin</b>
noisy	<b>urusai</b>	piano	<b>piano</b>
non-smoking	<b>kin'en</b>	picture	<b>e</b>
noon	<b>hiru</b>	pink	<b>pinku</b> (n.)
nose	<b>hana</b>	place	<b>basho</b> (n.), <b>iremasu</b> (v.), <b>okimasu</b> (v.)
not at all	<b>zenzen</b>	plane	<b>hikōki</b>
not so much	<b>amari</b>	play (v.)	<b>asobimasu, hikimasu</b> (stringed instrument), <b>shimasu</b> (game, sport)
not so often	<b>tamani</b>	please	<b>onegai shimasu,</b> <b>[V-te] kudasai</b>
not yet	<b>mada</b>	p.m.	<b>gogo</b>
nothing	<b>nanimō</b>	(neighbourhood)	<b>kōban</b>
November	<b>jūichi-gatsu</b>	police station	
now	<b>ima</b>	poor at	<b>heta(na)</b>
nowhere	<b>dokomo</b>	popularity	<b>ninki</b>
number	<b>bangō</b>	post office	<b>yūbinkyoku</b>
		present	<b>purezento</b>
<b>O</b>		pretty	<b>kawai</b>
October	<b>jū-gatsu</b>	primary school	<b>shōgakusē</b>
of course	<b>mochiron</b>	pupil	
off-duty day	<b>kyūjitsu, yasumi</b>		
office worker	<b>kaishain</b>	<b>Q</b>	
often	<b>yoku</b>	quiet	<b>shizuka(na)</b>
OK	<b>daijōbu, ī</b>	quite	<b>māmā</b>
old (things)	<b>furui</b>		
on	<b>ue</b>	<b>R</b>	
once more	<b>mō ichido</b>	rabbit	<b>usagi</b>
one	<b>ichi</b>	rain	<b>ame</b>
only	<b>dake</b>	read	<b>yomimasu</b>
open	<b>akemasu</b>	reading books	<b>dokusho</b>
order	<b>chūmon shimasu</b>	really?	<b>sō desu ka, hontō</b> <b>desu ka</b>
outside	<b>soto</b>	recall	<b>omoidashimasu</b>
		receive	<b>moraimasu</b>
<b>P</b>		recently	<b>saikin</b>
painful	<b>itai</b>	red	<b>aka</b> (n.), <b>akai</b> (adj.)
parents	<b>ryōshin</b> (one's own), <b>goryōshin</b> (someone else's)	remember	<b>oboemasu</b>
park	<b>kōen</b>	remote control	<b>rimokon</b>
party	<b>pātī</b>	reserve	<b>yoyaku shimasu</b>
passer-by	<b>tsūkōnin</b>	rest	<b>yasumimasu</b>
passport	<b>pasupōto</b>	restaurant	<b>resutoran</b>
pay	<b>haraimasu</b>	right	<b>migi</b>
pencil	<b>enpitsu</b>		
person	<b>hito</b>		
personal	<b>pasokon</b>		
computer			
photo frame	<b>shashin tate</b>		

ring	<b>kakemasu</b>	soft	<b>yawarakai</b>
room	<b>heya, washitsu</b> (Japanese-style), <b>yōshitsu</b> (Western-style)	some day	<b>itsuka</b>
		sometimes	<b>tokidoki</b>
		son	<b>musuko</b>
run	<b>hashirimasu</b>	song	<b>uta</b>
		sore	<b>itai</b>
		soup	<b>sūpu</b>
<b>S</b>		south	<b>minami</b>
safe	<b>anzen(na)</b>	souvenir	<b>omiyage</b>
Saturday	<b>do-yōbi</b>	spacious	<b>hiroi</b>
scary	<b>kowai</b>	spoon	<b>supūn</b>
sea	<b>umi</b>	sports	<b>supōtsu</b>
secondary	<b>chūgakusē</b>	spring	<b>haru</b>
school		(postage) stamp	<b>kitte</b>
student		stand	<b>tachimasu, tatte</b> <b>imasu</b>
send	<b>okurimasu</b>	station	<b>eki</b>
September	<b>ku-gatsu</b>	statue	<b>zō</b>
seven	<b>nana, shichi</b>	stature	<b>se</b>
shirt(s)	<b>shatsu</b>	stay overnight	<b>tomarimasu</b>
(a pair of) shoes	<b>kutsu</b>	stop	<b>-noriba (n.),</b> <b>tomemasu (v.)</b>
shop	<b>(o)mise, -ya</b>		
shop clerk/ assistant	<b>ten'in</b>	straight	<b>massugu</b>
shopping	<b>kaimono</b>	street	<b>michi</b>
go shopping	<b>kaimono shimasu</b>	student	<b>gakusē</b>
show	<b>misemasu</b>	study	<b>benkyō (n.), benkyō</b> <b>shimasu (v.)</b>
shower (n.)	<b>shawā</b>	suit	<b>sūtsu</b>
shower (v.)	<b>abimasu</b>	summer	<b>natsu</b>
showy	<b>hade(na)</b>	Sunday	<b>nichi-yōbi</b>
sickness	<b>byōki</b>	sunny	<b>hare</b>
sightseeing	<b>kankō</b>	supermarket	<b>sūpā</b>
go sightseeing	<b>kankō shimasu</b>	supper	<b>ban-gohan</b>
sing	<b>utaimasu</b>	sweater	<b>sētā</b>
singer	<b>kashu</b>	sweet	<b>amai</b>
sit down	<b>suwarimasu</b>	swim	<b>oyogimasu</b>
six	<b>roku</b>	swimming	<b>suiē</b>
skiing	<b>sukī</b>		
skirt	<b>sukāto</b>	<b>T</b>	
slipper	<b>surippa</b>	take	<b>torimasu (a photo),</b> <b>kakarimasu</b> (time, cost), <b>tsurete</b> <b>ikimasu (someone),</b> <b>motte ikimasu</b> (thing)
slow	<b>osoi</b>		
slowly	<b>yukkuri</b>	talk	<b>hanashimasu</b>
small	<b>chīsai</b>		
smoke	<b>(tabako o) suimasu</b>		
snow	<b>yuki (n.), yuki ga</b> <b>furimasu (v.)</b>		
socks	<b>kutsushita</b>		

tall	<b>takai, se ga takai</b>	tobacco	<b>tabako</b>
tasteless	<b>mazui</b>	today	<b>kyō</b>
tasty	<b>oishī</b>	together	<b>issho ni</b>
taxi	<b>takushī</b>	toilet	<b>otearai</b>
tea	<b>kōcha</b> (black tea), <b>ocha</b> (green tea)	tomorrow	<b>ashita</b>
teach	<b>oshiemasu</b>	too	<b>-mo</b> (particle)
teacher	<b>kyōshi, sensē</b>	tourist	<b>kankōkyaku</b>
teeth	<b>ha</b>	tourist information	<b>kankō annaijo</b>
telephone	<b>denwa</b>	town	<b>machi</b>
telephone number	<b>denwa-bangō</b>	traffic lights	<b>shingō</b>
television	<b>terebi</b>	transfer	<b>norikaemasu</b>
temple	<b>(o)tera</b>	travel	<b>ryokō</b>
ten	<b>jū</b>	trousers	<b>zubon</b>
ten thousand	<b>-man</b>	true	<b>hontō</b>
tennis	<b>tenisu</b>	Tuesday	<b>ka-yōbi</b>
thank you	<b>(dōmo) arigatō</b> <b>(gozaimasu)</b>	turn	<b>magarimasu</b>
that	<b>sore, sochira</b> (polite version)	turn on	<b>tsukemasu</b>
that (+ noun)	<b>sono</b>	two	<b>ni</b>
that over there	<b>are, achira</b> (polite version)	two people	<b>futari</b>
that (+ noun) over there	<b>ano</b>	<b>U</b>	
that place	<b>soko, sochira</b> (polite version)	umbrella	<b>kasa</b>
that place over there	<b>asoko, achira</b> (polite version)	under	<b>shita</b>
theatre play	<b>geki</b>	underground	<b>chikatetsu</b>
then, well then	<b>jā</b>	underwear	<b>shitagi</b>
thing(s)	<b>mono</b>	university	<b>daigaku</b>
this (+ noun)	<b>kono-</b>	university student	<b>daigakusē</b>
this month	<b>kongetsu</b>	until	<b>made</b> (time)
this morning	<b>kesa</b>	(to feel) unwell	<b>kimochi ga warui</b>
this week	<b>konshū</b>	use	<b>tsukaimasu</b>
this year	<b>kotoshi</b>	usually	<b>futsū</b>
thousand	<b>-sen</b>	<b>V</b>	
three	<b>san</b>	various	<b>iroiro na</b>
Thursday	<b>moku-yōbi</b>	vase	<b>kabin</b>
ticket	<b>kippu</b>	vegetable	<b>yasai</b>
tie	<b>nekutai</b>	very (much)	<b>totemo</b>
time	<b>jikan</b>	view	<b>keshiki</b> (n.)
to	<b>e</b> (particle), <b>made</b> (particle)	vigorous	<b>genki(na)</b>
		visitor	<b>okyakusan</b>
		<b>W</b>	
		wait	<b>machimasu</b>
		wake up	<b>okimasu</b>

walk, stroll	<b>sanpo</b> (n.), <b>sanpo shimasu</b> (v.)	who?	<b>dare, donate</b> (polite version)
wallet	<b>saifu</b>	whose?	<b>dare no, donate no</b> (polite version)
want	<b>hoshī, -tai desu</b>	why?	<b>dōshite</b>
warm	<b>atatakai</b>	wind	<b>kaze</b>
was, were	<b>deshita</b>	window	<b>mado</b>
wash	<b>araimasu, sentaku shimasu</b> (laundry)	wine	<b>wain</b>
watch	<b>tokē</b> (n.), <b>mimasu</b> (v.)	winter	<b>fuyu</b>
water	<b>(o)mizu</b>	with	<b>to</b> (particle)
wear	<b>kimasu</b> (clothes), <b>hakimasu</b> (shoes), <b>kakemasu</b> (glasses), <b>kaburimasu</b> (hat)	woman	<b>onna no hito</b>
weather	<b>tenki</b>	wonderful	<b>suteki(na)</b>
Wednesday	<b>sui-yōbi</b>	word	<b>kotoba</b>
week(s)	<b>-shū(kan)</b>	work	<b>(o)shigoto</b> (n.), <b>hatarakimasu</b> (v.)
weekend	<b>shūmatsu</b>	work hard	<b>ganbarimasu</b>
what?	<b>nan, nani</b>	wristwatch	<b>udedokē</b>
what day?	<b>nan-nichi</b>	write	<b>kakimasu</b>
what day (of the week)?	<b>nan-yōbi</b>	<b>Y</b>	
what kind of . . . ?	<b>donna</b>	year(s)	<b>-nen(kan)</b>
what? (time)	<b>nan-pun</b>	. . . years old	<b>-sai</b>
what month?	<b>nan-gatsu</b>	yellow	<b>kīro</b> (n.), <b>kīroi</b> (adj.)
what nationality?	<b>nani-jin</b>	yen	<b>-en</b>
what number?	<b>nan-ban</b>	yes	<b>hai</b>
what time?	<b>nan-ji</b>	yesterday	<b>kinō</b>
when?	<b>itsu</b>	you	<b>anata</b>
where?	<b>doko, dochira</b> (polite version)	young	<b>wakai</b>
which?	<b>dore</b> (out of more than two), <b>dochira</b> (out of two)	younger brother	<b>otōto</b> (one's own), <b>otōto-san</b> (someone else's)
which (+noun)?	<b>dono, dochira no</b>	younger sister	<b>imōto</b> (one's own), <b>imōto-san</b> (someone else's)
white	<b>shiro</b> (n.), <b>shiroi</b> (adj.)	<b>Z</b>	
		zero	<b>zero</b>
		zoo	<b>dōbutsuen</b>

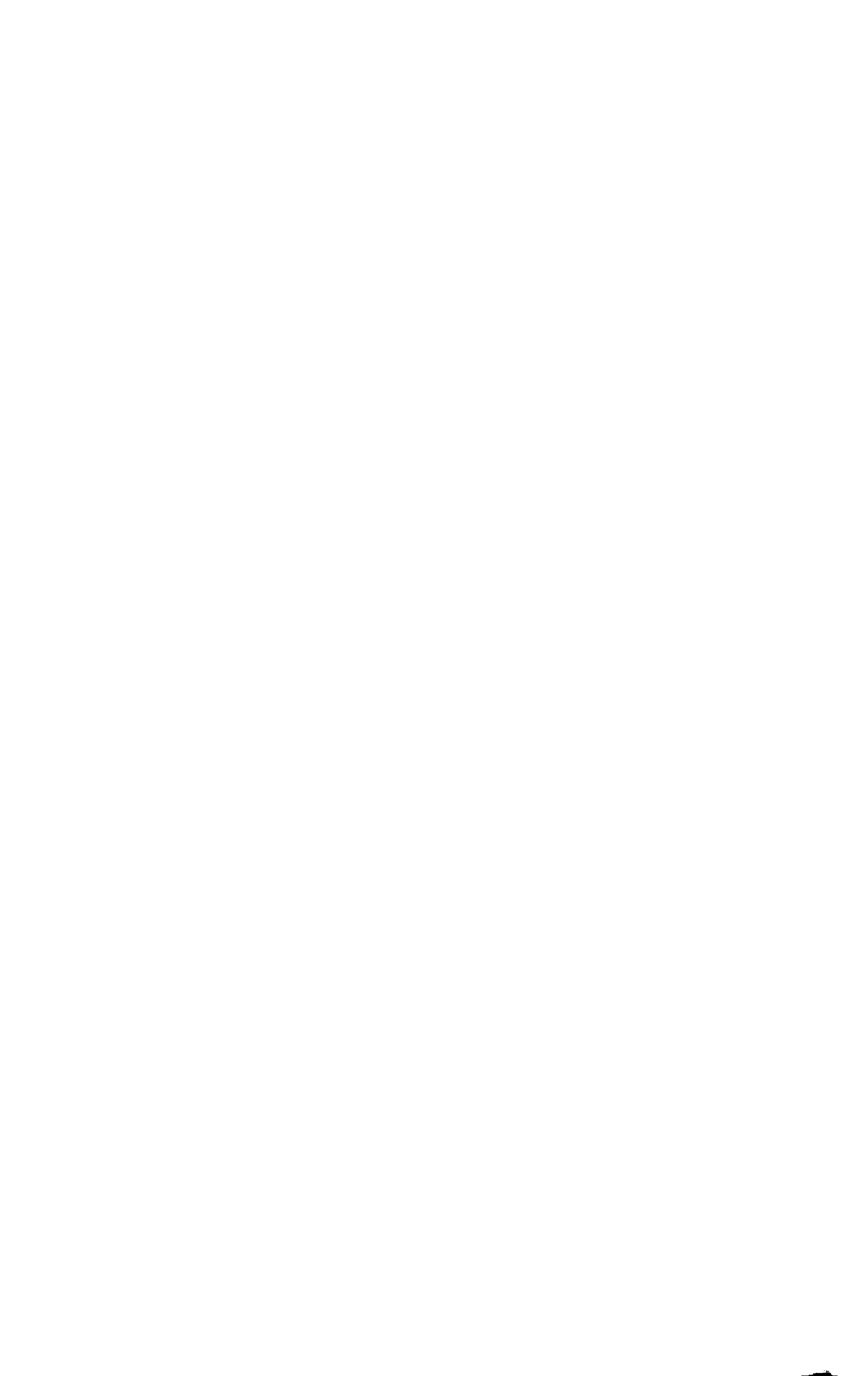


# Index of language points

- abbreviation (katakana) 47
- ability (can do) 197
- about Japan 11
- action in progress 172
- actions in succession 168
- additional vocabulary 227–230
- adjectives 56–58, 61–62, 64, 120, 130–131, 135–137, 147–148, 210–211
  - inflection table 231–233
  - te-form 131
  - “-wa -ga” structure 64, 116, 143, 197
- adverbs 220–221
  - degree 59–60, 220
  - frequency 89, 221
  - quantity 220
  - others 136, 221
- after 183
- age 24
- already 106
- am/are/is 10–11
- asking and answering questions 16
- asking permission 156, 212
  
- because 118, 121, 218
- become 135
- before 196, 218
- body parts 143
- building 69, 224
- by 73, 86
  
- clothes and accessories 178–179
- colours 147–148
- comparison 148, 217
- conjunction 63, 217
- conjuncture 218
- conjuncture: -ga 63
- counter suffix: chart 223–224
- counter 97, 196
- county 12
  
- daily activity 81
- day of the month 28
- day of the week 31
- degree 59–60, 220
- desire 106–107
- directions 167
- drinks 47, 82, 228
  
- every 71
- experience in the past 185, 214
  
- family terms 24
- foods 47, 82, 227
- frequency 89, 221
- fruits 228
  
- giving and receiving 123
- go, come, return 70, 109, 213
- gratitude: thank you 123
  
- habitual action 175, 213
- here, there, that place over there 35, 45

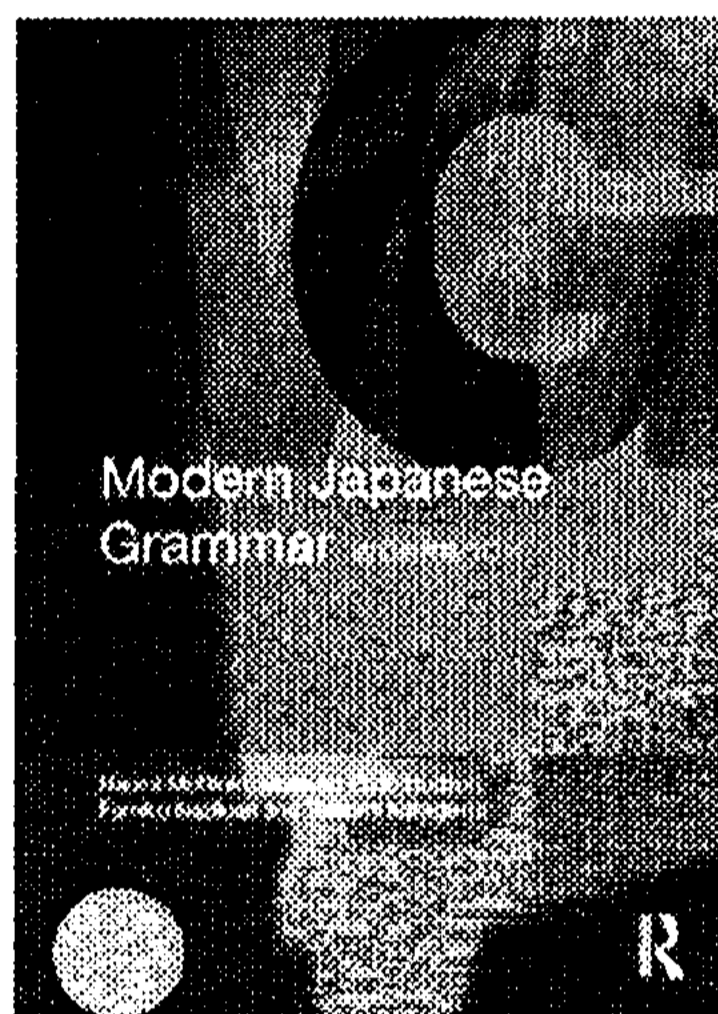
- hiragana 3–5, 7, 21, 33, 43, 54, 66, 78  
 basic 46 hiragana 3, 21, 33, 43, 54  
 combined sound 4, 66  
 double consonant sound 5, 78  
 long vowel sound 7, 78
- hobby 190
- holiday 71, 105
- how 45, 58, 219
- how long 76, 219
- how much 52, 219
- how to 73, 159, 219, 263
- illness 120
- in the house 94
- in town/nature 94
- indoor activity 190
- interrogatives 16–17, 29, 46, 49, 85, 218–219
- invitation 113, 271
- item 46
- Japanese language 3–4
- Japanese script 4–9
- kanji 140, 151
- kanji history 138
- katakana 3–7, 90, 103, 114, 125, 126  
 basic 46 katakana 3, 90, 103, 114  
 combined sound 4, 125–126  
 double consonant sound 5–6  
 long vowel sound 7
- ko-so-a-do indicative words 35, 215
- leisure activity 190
- let's 112
- likes and dislikes 64
- location 100
- month 27–28, 31, 226
- more than 148, 217
- music 230
- nationality 11–12
- nominalizing verb 194–195, 197
- not yet 106, 221
- noun + copula 210
- numbers 18–19, 24, 51, 140, 222  
 summary table 222  
 from 1 to 10 18–19  
 from 11 to 99 24  
 from 100 to 10,000,000  
 51
- occupation 11–13, 229
- omitting the topic 11
- opening hours 41
- ownership 121
- particle 209, 215–216  
 also 23, 26, 215  
 and (connecting nouns) 32, 23, 93, 95, 215, 217  
 at, in 81, 88, 93, 216  
 by 73, 86, 216  
 emphasis 217  
 from 76, 41, 215  
 isn't it?/don't you, etc. 27, 56, 217  
 location 93, 98, 107, 216  
 means 73, 216  
 method 73, 86, 216  
 object marker 3, 81–82, 211, 216  
 of 15, 215  
 only 196, 217  
 purpose 109, 216  
 possessive 15, 215  
 subject marker 64, 216  
 till 41, 76, 215  
 time 83, 216  
 tool 86, 88, 216  
 topic marker 10, 209, 215  
 verbal question marker 14, 16, 19, 24, 107  
 with 73–74, 217

- people 74, 93  
 places xii, 13, 212  
 plain style 35–36  
 polite style xiii, 13  
 polite request: please 156–157  
 possibility 197  
 preferences 148  
 price 52  
 pronunciation 2–8  
 purpose 109, 213  
  
 quantity 220  
  
 reasons 118, 121  
 receiving 123  
 rejecting an invitation 112–113  
  
 seasons 71  
 sentence pattern 209  
 state 135, 165, 171  
 superlative 144–145  
  
 telephone number 19  
 there is/are 93  
 till 41  
 time 30, 39, 40, 71  
 time and period: chart 225  
 title (Mr, Mrs, Ms, Miss, Doctor, etc.)  
     15  
 tools 86  
 traffic and transportation 73–74  
 travel 105  
  
 verbs 211  
     changing verbs into nouns  
         174–195, 197  
     conjugation table 234–238  
     dictionary form 191–192, 214  
     grouping 153–155  
     ta-form 179–180, 214  
     te-form 156–157, 213  
     verb stem 70, 106–107, 112,  
         213  
     verb: daily activity 81  
     verb: dictionary form + koto ga  
         dekimasu 197–198  
     verb: dictionary form + koto 185,  
         192–193, 194–195, 197, 214  
     verb: dictionary form + mae ni . . .  
         196, 214  
     verb: masu-form 70  
     verb: ta-form + atode . . . 183, 214  
     verb: ta-form + kotoga arimasu 185,  
         214  
     verb: ta-form+ri, ta-form + ri, . . .  
         181, 214  
     verb: te-form + imasu 172–173,  
         175, 214  
     verb: te-form + kara . . . 169, 218  
     verb: te-form + kudasai 196, 214  
     verb: te-form + mo ī desu 161, 214  
     verb: te-form, te-form, . . . 168, 213  
     verb: V + masenka 113, 171, 213  
     verb: V + mashō 112, 213  
  
 want to do 106–107, 183  
 was/were 57  
 weather 134  
 what kind of 61–62  
 when 28–29  
 where 36  
 which (one) 46, 48  
 whose 49  
 why 118  
 with whom 74  
 word order 10, 25, 84, 116–117



[www.routledge.com/languages](http://www.routledge.com/languages)

**Also available...**



**Modern Japanese  
Grammar Workbook**

By Naomi McGloin, M. Endo Hudson, Fumiko Nazikian and Tomomi Kakegawa

*Series: Modern Grammar Workbooks*

The *Modern Japanese Grammar Workbook* is an innovative book of exercises and language tasks for all learners of Japanese. The book is divided into two parts:

- Section A provides exercises based on essential grammatical structures
- Section B practices everyday functions (e.g. making introductions, apologizing, expressing needs).

All sentences are written both in Romanization and in the Japanese script and a comprehensive answer key at the back enables the learner to check on their progress.

Key features of the book include:

- Exercises graded on a 3-point scale according to their level of difficulty
- Cross-referencing to the related *Modern Japanese Grammar*
- Topical exercises to help learners develop their vocabulary

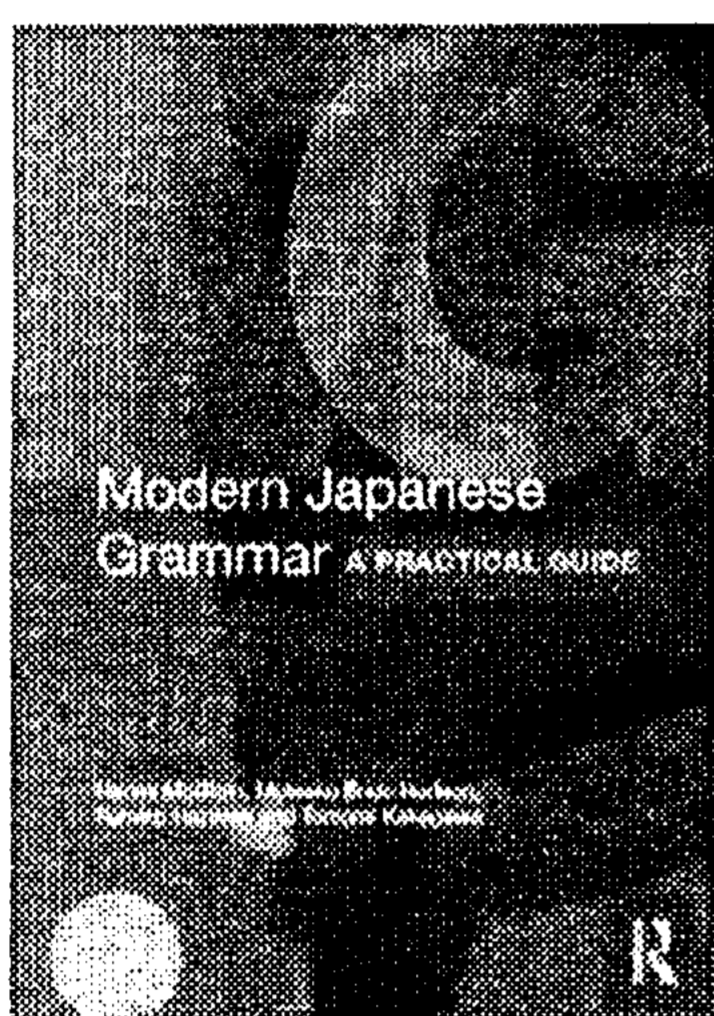
*Modern Japanese Grammar Workbook* is an ideal practice tool for learners of Japanese at all levels. No prior knowledge of grammatical terminology is assumed and it can be used both independently and alongside the *Modern Japanese Grammar* (ISBN 978-0-415-57201-9), which is also published by Routledge.

2014 | 200 Pages | HB: 978-0-415-60864-0 | PB: 978-0-415-27093-9  
Learn more at: [www.routledge.com/9780415270939](http://www.routledge.com/9780415270939)

Available from all good bookshops

[www.routledge.com/languages](http://www.routledge.com/languages)

**Also available...**



**Modern Japanese  
Grammar**

A Practical Guide

By Naomi McGloin, M. Endo Hudson, Fumiko  
Nazikian and Tomomi Kakegawa

*Series: Modern Grammars*

This reference guide to Japanese combines traditional and function-based grammar in a single volume. It covers grammatical categories, such as nouns, verbs and adjectives, and also language functions covering major communication situations.

Features include: clear, jargon-free explanations; extensive cross-referencing; a detailed index of forms and topics; grammar points and functions selected on frequency and usefulness; examples given in Romanization and Japanese script; glossary of grammatical terms.

Both reference grammar and practical usage manual, this will be essential for learners of Japanese at all levels. No prior knowledge of grammatical terminology or Japanese script is required.

This *Grammar* is accompanied by the *Modern Japanese Grammar Workbook* (ISBN 978-0-415-27093-9) which features related exercises and activities.

2013 | 432 Pages | HB: 978-0-415-57199-9 | PB: 978-0-415-57201-9  
Learn more at: [www.routledge.com/9780415572019](http://www.routledge.com/9780415572019)

Available from all good bookshops

Taylor & Francis

# eBooks

## FOR LIBRARIES

ORDER YOUR  
FREE 30 DAY  
INSTITUTIONAL  
TRIAL TODAY!

Over 23,000 eBook titles in the Humanities, Social Sciences, STM and Law from some of the world's leading imprints.

Choose from a range of subject packages or create your own!

Benefits for  
**YOU**

- ▶ Free MARC records
- ▶ COUNTER-compliant usage statistics
- ▶ Flexible purchase and pricing options

Benefits  
for your  
**USER**

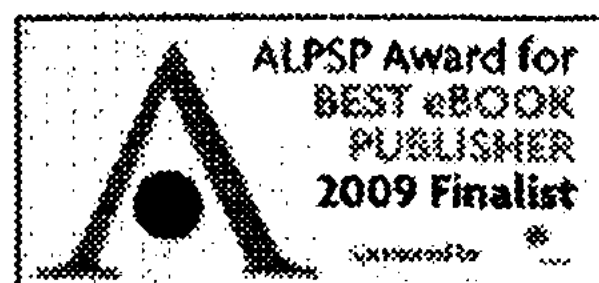
- ▶ Off-site, anytime access via Athens or referring URL
- ▶ Print or copy pages or chapters
- ▶ Full content search
- ▶ Bookmark, highlight and annotate text
- ▶ Access to thousands of pages of quality research at the click of a button

For more information, pricing enquiries or to order a free trial, contact your local online sales team.

UK and Rest of World: [online.sales@tandf.co.uk](mailto:online.sales@tandf.co.uk)

US, Canada and Latin America:  
[e-reference@taylorandfrancis.com](mailto:e-reference@taylorandfrancis.com)

[www.ebooksubscriptions.com](http://www.ebooksubscriptions.com)



Taylor & Francis **eBooks**  
Taylor & Francis Group



A flexible and dynamic resource for teaching, learning and research.

## CD TWO

### Unit 8

1. Dialogue 1
2. Dialogue 2
3. Exercise 5
4. Dialogue 3
5. Exercise 8

### Unit 9

6. Dialogue 1
7. Dialogue 2
8. Dialogue 3
9. Exercise 6
10. Exercise 7

### Unit 10

11. Dialogue 1
12. Dialogue 2
13. Dialogue 3
14. Exercise 5
15. Exercise 7

### Unit 11

16. Dialogue 1
17. Dialogue 2
18. Exercise 6

### Unit 12

19. Dialogue 1
20. Dialogue 2
21. Exercise 4
22. Exercise 6

### Unit 13

23. Dialogue 1
24. Exercise 4
25. Dialogue 2
26. Exercise 8

### Unit 14

27. Dialogue 1
28. Exercise 1
29. Dialogue 2
30. Dialogue 3

### Unit 15

31. Dialogue 1
32. Exercise 3
33. Dialogue 2
34. Dialogue 3
35. Exercise 6

### Unit 16

36. Dialogue 1
37. Exercise 4
38. Dialogue 2
39. Exercise 8
40. Exercise 9
41. The end



NEW EDITION

C O L L O Q U I A L  
**J A P A N E S E**

**“COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE 3rd Edition is well stocked with ‘balanced, comprehensive and rewarding’ items – essential vocabulary lists, lucid grammar summaries, lively sample dialogues and more. With accompanying audio material, it will systematically and efficiently lead any beginners of Japanese language to build up a solid foundation at the Intermediate-Mid level on the ACTFL proficiency scales.”**

**Yoshihiro Yasuhara, Carnegie Mellon University, USA**

COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE provides a step-by-step course in Japanese as it is written and spoken today. This new edition has been completely rewritten by experienced teachers; it combines a user-friendly approach with a thorough treatment of the language, equipping learners with the essential skills needed to communicate confidently and effectively in Japanese in a broad range of situations. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

Key features include:

- progressive coverage of speaking, listening, reading and writing skills
- jargon-free explanations of grammar, with key structures presented through user-friendly diagrams
- coverage of the different writing systems of Japanese: hiragana, katakana and kanji
- an extensive range of focused and stimulating exercises
- realistic and entertaining dialogues covering a broad variety of scenarios
- useful vocabulary lists throughout the text
- additional resources available at the back of the book, including a full answer key, a grammar summary, a verb/adjective list with conjugation aid, bilingual glossaries and English translations of dialogues.

Balanced, comprehensive and rewarding, COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE is an indispensable resource both for independent learners and for students taking courses in Japanese.

Supplementary exercise sheets for hiragana, katakana and kanji and two additional units are available for free download at [www.routledge.com/9780415593304](http://www.routledge.com/9780415593304). The units cover more advanced features of Japanese and incorporate a wide assortment of supporting exercises.

This version of the paperback also contains two CDs of audio material, providing the complete COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE course. Recorded by native speakers, the audio complements the book and will help enhance learners’ listening and speaking skills.

By the end of this course, you will be at Level B1 of the Common European Framework for Languages and at the Intermediate-Mid level on the ACTFL proficiency scales.

Cover image: © Corbis

 **Routledge**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
[www.routledge.com](http://www.routledge.com)



ISBN 978-0-415-59331-1



9 780415 593311

Routledge titles are available as eBook editions in a range of digital formats

an informa business

